

UNIVERSIDADE FEDERAL DE SANTA CATARINA
PÓS-GRADUAÇÃO EM LETRAS/INGLÊS E LITERATURA CORRESPONDENTE

A STUDY OF
POWER MICROSCENES
IN
JOURNALISTIC TEXT

por

ALYSON E. R. STEELE G. WEICKERT

Tese submetida à Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina em cumprimento parcial dos
requisitos para obtenção do grau de

DOUTOR EM LETRAS

FLORIANÓPOLIS

19 de dezembro, 2007

Esta Tese de Alyson E. R. Steele G. Weickert, intitulada **A Study of Power Microscenes in Journalistic text**, foi julgada adequada e aprovada em sua forma final, pelo Programa de Pós-Graduação em Letras/Inglês e Literatura Correspondente, da Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, para fins de obtenção do grau de

DOUTOR EM LETRAS

Área de concentração: Inglês e Literatura Correspondente
Opção: Língua Inglesa e Lingüística Aplicada

Prof. Dr. José Luiz Meurer
Coordenador

BANCA EXAMINADORA:

Prof. Dr. Apóstolo Theodoro Nicolacópulos
Orientador e Presidente

Prof^a. Dr^a. Maria da Graça Albino de Oliveira
Examinadora

Prof^a. Dr^a. Suzana A. Dias de Oliveira da Rocha
Examinadora

Prof^a. Dr^a. Viviane Maria Heberle
Examinadora

Prof. Dr. Lincoln P. Fernandes
Examinador

Florianópolis, 19 de dezembro, 2007

PRAYER OF THE POWERLESS

O god of governance,
disarm for us
those who blind voting rights
with hardened cash,
or plan public budgets
for private pockets,
or who regard barrack guns
as golden geese,
or who turn contract awards
into wayward gains,
or who crucify services
on civil crosses,
or who inter the truth
in technical graves,
or who impregnate banks
with bastard wads,
or who constipate young minds
with chronic notes.

We also pray you
to empower for us
only those who act counter
to all the above.

*I dedicate this thesis to **Mum and Dad**
with my heart and soul
for empowering me with
love,
life
and
education*

and to

*Jorge,
Jessyca and Marcello,
Lizzy and Tiago,
John and Fylipe
for their roles in loving and supporting me in spite of the pressures*

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

First and foremost, Dr. Apóstolo Nicolacópulos thank you, for giving me the **power Benefactive**, and professional knowledge to defend its proposal, not forgetting the professional advice and encouragement, whenever called upon. Dr. Viviane M. Heberle for accepting to be my co-supervisor, I shall always remember the time you spent reorganising my open seminar.

I would like to thank CAPES for the much appreciated doctoral grant here in Brazil and also for my flight to England and living allowance in 2005 while I was a visiting research fellow at the University of Birmingham. Most importantly I thank CARE¹ for *giving* me my own room to carry out personal research under the supervision of Dr Carmen Rosa Caldas Coulthard, along with permission to attend postgraduate classes, staff and postgraduate seminars and conferences held at Birmingham University.

Carmen, thank you for not only being my mentor while I was a CARE visitor, but opening up your home to me, giving me the opportunity of experiencing BAAL SIGmeetings², and similar events, and introducing me to other professional researchers. Special thanks go to Dr. Murray Knowles, the director and Michelle Devereux, the caring secretary, along with all the research staff who gave suggestions for my research among them: Dr. Alison Sealey, Dr. Andrea Mayr, Dr. Geoff Barnbrook, Dr. Murray Knowles, Dr. Nicholas Groom, Dr. Pernilla Danielsson, Dr. Rosamund Moon, Dr. Susan Hunston, Dr. Wolfgang Teubert and Prof. Ramesh Krishnamurthy, from the University of Aston. Dr. Peter Redgrave, University of Sheffield, for his advice and encouragement. A special thanks to Juliet Herring for our conversations, her help and suggestions on the power Benefactive, there and now, and

¹ Centre for Advanced Research in English

² Special Interest Group

all the other PhD students and visiting researchers who welcomed me with open arms at Birmingham Uni. Fiona Robson Singh thank you for your support and ideas too. Juliet and Fiona, thank you for not only proof reading but being close friends and always on call in my hours of need. Prof. Andre Fabiano Moraes (MA), from CAC, UFSC, thank you for introducing me to Databases and for your constant encouragement and enthusiasm for this research along with Dr. Nildo and the other teaching staff, thank you for your support. Paloma and Marlise thank you for bringing me safely through the difficult moments with your compassion, affection and care. Dr. Maria Elizabeth da Costa Gama, Beth, thank you for helping me with the presentation and trips to Florianópolis, you are real friend, there when I most needed you. Last but not least Luzinete in memorium, no longer on Earth, yet present in my heart, thank you for all the force we sought together. May the Lord be always with you.

ABSTRACT

A STUDY OF POWER MICROSCENES IN JOURNALISTIC TEXT

ALYSON E. R. STEELE G. WEICKERT

UNIVERSIDADE DE SANTA CATARINA
2007

Supervising professor: Prof. Dr. Apóstolo Theodoro Nicolacópulos

This thesis proposes a new semantic category – **the power Benefactive** (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a) as a refinement of the Nicolacópulos *et al* model, a *semantic-pragmatic approach*, for localising and registering **linguistic marks of power**. The marks encompass (i) referential lexical items that may, or may not, generate power microscenes; (ii) relational lexical items (predicators) which compose power microscenes. A microscene is a unit of analysis that represents, and is represented by, a set of factors: a predicator and one or more accompanying participants/semantic roles aligned with the **context**. The power Benefactive concept comprehends both the positive and negative power Benefactive, along with the quasi-power Benefactive. The BBC, Telegraph and Washington Post online sites served as the source of real *language in use* to build a corpus containing 200 ‘hard news’ reports. The Nicolacópulos *et al* framework was implemented to analyse texts, identifying and logging the power predicators, representing ‘in-power’, not-in-power’, and ‘competing for power’ in their microscenes. WordSmith4 (Scott, 2004), Corpus Linguistics software, facilitates the organisation and analysis of the results. In a random sample of 100 power Benefactive microscenes (i) 41% of the relationally power lexical items emerge in their basic power sense and (ii) 59% appear as power Benefactive metaphors which have taken on the sense of power Benefactive, originating in another (sub)domain and displacing to the power Benefactive subdomain. This research highlights that the family of power predicators are abundant in language in use demonstrating the importance of the **power Benefactive** concept to register *marks of power linguistically*.

Keywords: power Benefactive; linguistic marks of power; semantic-pragmatic; polysemy; metaphor; Corpus Linguistics.

Nº of pages: 256

Nº of words: 72,469

RESUMO

A STUDY OF POWER MICROSCENES IN JOURNALISTIC TEXT

ALYSON E. R. STEELE G. WEICKERT

UNIVERSIDADE DE SANTA CATARINA
2007

Professor orientador: Prof. Dr. Apóstolo Theodoro Nicolacópulos

Essa tese propõe uma nova categoria semântica - o **Benefactivo de poder** (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a) como refinamento do modelo Nicolacópulos *et al*, uma abordagem semântico-pragmática, para localizar e registrar **marcas lingüísticas** de poder. As marcas abarcam (i) itens lexicais referenciais que podem, ou não, gerar microcenas de poder; (ii) itens lexicais relacionais (predicadores) que compõem microcenas de poder. Uma microcena é a unidade de análise que representa, e está representado por, um conjunto de fatores: um predicador e um ou mais participantes/papéis semânticos acompanhantes alinhados com o *contexto*. O conceito Benefactivo de poder compreende o Benefactivo de poder positivo e negativo, assim como o quase-Benefactivo de poder. Os sites online da BBC, Telegraph e Washington Post serviram como fontes de *língua em uso* para construção de um corpus com 200 artigos de *'hard news'*. O modelo Nicolacópulos *et al* foi utilizado como ferramenta para analisar os textos, identificando e registrando os predicadores de poder, representando *'no poder'*, *'não no poder'* ou *'na disputa pelo poder'* em suas microcenas. O software de Lingüística de Corpus WordSmith4 (Scott, 2004) facilita a organização e análise dos resultados. Em uma amostra aleatória de 100 microcenas Benefactivas de poder (i) 41% dos itens lexicais de poder emergem em seu sentido básico de poder, e (ii) 59% são metáforas Benefactivas de poder que assumiram o sentido de poder, tendo se originado em outro (sub)domínio semântico e se deslocado para o (sub)domínio Benefactivo de poder. Essa pesquisa aponta que essa família de predicadores de poder ocorre em abundância na língua em uso demonstrando a importância do conceito **Benefactivo de poder** para registrar **lingüísticamente** *marcas de poder*.

Palavras chaves: Benefactivo de poder; marcas lingüísticas de poder; semântico-pragmático; polissemia; metáfora; Lingüística de Corpus.

Nº de páginas: 256

Nº de palavras: 72.469

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	v
ABSTRACT	vii
RESUMO	viii
TABLE OF CONTENTS	ix
LIST OF THE POWER BENEFACTIVE PREDICATORS ANALYSED	xii
LIST OF FIGURES	xiv
LIST OF GRAPHS	xv
LIST OF TABLES	xv
CHAPTER 1	1
INTRODUCTION	1
1.1. Background to the source of my research	5
1.2. Objectives and research questions	8
1.2.1. RESEARCH QUESTIONS.....	9
1.3. Context of the Research	10
FRAMEWORK OF THE THESIS	21
1.4. Meta-Linguistic Operational Terms.....	22
1.5. The organisation of the chapters.	34
CHAPTER 2	36
THE REVIEW OF LITERATURE.....	36
2.1. ‘The Notion of Power.....	36
2.2. A power cline	49
2.2.1. Criteria for hierarchical power Benefactive predicators.	51
2.2.2. Criteria for interpersonal power Benefactive predicators	52
2.3. A power scene analysis of an article on Forensic linguistics.....	55

2.4.	Corpus linguistics.....	61
2.5.	Relational semantics.....	62
2.6.	Referential power items	64
2.7.	Cohesive chains.....	67
2.8.	Anaphoric references	68
2.9.	Systemic Functional Linguistics (SFL).....	69
2.10.	Pragmatics	72
2.11.	Metaphor and polysemy.....	72
2.12.	Polysemous metaphors.....	73
2.13.	Context of situation	82
2.14.	CASE GRAMMAR	85
2.15.	Cook's Matrix Model (1979, 1989)	88
2.15.1.	Deep structure / semantic representation	89
2.15.2.	State, Process and Action.....	93
2.15.3.	The theory of covert roles	95
2.16.	The UFSC model (Nicolacópulos et al, 1995).....	97
2.16.1.	Differences between Cook's Matrix model and the UFSC 1995 model....	98
2.17.	Visualising metaphorisation.....	101
2.18.	The Benefactive according to Oliveira (1999).....	102
2.19.	Case Grammar applications	103
CHAPTER 3		108
METHODS		108
3.1.1.	The power Benefactive semantic subdomain.....	108
3.1.2.	In-power, not-in-power and quasi-power.....	109
3.1.3.	The pseudo-[domain] predicator	111

3.2.	METHODS	115
3.2.1.	Compiling the corpus	115
3.2.2.	Methods for analysing the corpus	119
3.2.2.1.	Analysing the microscene	119
3.2.2.2.	Stage one of the procedure - tagging the microscenes	120
3.2.2.2.1.	Setting up the microscenes to be analysed	121
3.2.2.2.2.	Microscenes not included for random selection	122
3.2.2.2.3.	The occurrence of the lemma BE	125
3.2.2.2.4.	An introduction to phrasal verbs	132
3.2.2.2.5.	Gerunds as predicators	133
3.2.2.3.	Stage two procedure	134
3.2.2.4.	THE TELEGRAPH CORPUS	134
3.2.2.4.1.	Randomly selecting 50 pBen predicators from the Telegraph corpus ..	136
3.2.2.5.	THE BBC CORPUS	138
CHAPTER 4	141
ANALYSIS	141
4.1.	Descriptive analysis of 100 power Benefactive microscenes	141
CHAPTER 5	212
DISCUSSION OF THE RESULTS AND CONCLUSIONS	212
5.1.	Results of the Analysis	212
5.1.1.	Tables according to the basic sense of the predicators.	212
5.2.	The pseudo-power Benefactive based on <i>detain</i> (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2006)	220
5.3.	The research questions	221
5.4.	Conclusions	224

5.5. Suggestions for future research.....	229
REFERENCES.....	235

LIST OF APPENDICES

APPENDIX 1 Twenty news reports composing the PhD corpus	257
APPENDIX 2 List of contents of the Telegraph newsreports	292
APPENDIX 3 List of contents of the BBC newsreports.....	293
APPENDIX 4 Semantic-pragmatic analysis.....	294
APPENDIX 5 COBUILD concordance lines for 'is power'	298
APPENDIX 6 Letter to the Editor of BBC	299
APPENDIX 7 Eight patterns of semantic representations.....	301

LIST OF THE POWER BENEFACTIVE PREDICATORS ANALYSED

power Benefactive predicator 1	ABDUCT (172) {ASW0009T}	144
power Benefactive predicator 2	ABOLISH (35) {ASW0002T}	144
power Benefactive predicator 3	ACHIEVE (23) {ASW0002T}	145
power Benefactive predicator 4	ACT (245) {ASW0013B}	146
power Benefactive predicator 5	APPEAR (452) {ASW0020B}	146
power Benefactive predicator 6	ARREST (232) {ASW0013B}	147
power Benefactive predicator 7	ASK (365) {ASW0018B}	147
power Benefactive predicator 8	ASSASSINATE (173) {ASW0010T}.....	148
power Benefactive predicator 9	BE (347) a "DIVISION of the work" {ASW0018B} 148	
power Benefactive predicator 10	BE (73) A MONITOR {ASW0004T}.....	149
power Benefactive predicator 11	BE (30) IN CHARGE {ASW0002T}.....	150
power Benefactive predicator 12	BE (124) REAL {ASW0007T}.....	150
power Benefactive predicator 13	BE (157) RESPONSIBLE {ASW0008T}.....	151
power Benefactive predicator 14	BE (334) an act of REVENGE {ASW0016B}....	152
power Benefactive predicator 15	BE (56) UNDER {ASW0003T}.....	152
power Benefactive predicator 16	BE (76) UNDER HOUSE ARREST	153
power Benefactive predicator 17	BE (250) UNSUSTAINABLE {ASW0019B}..	154
power Benefactive predicator 18	BEGIN (420) {ASW0019B}	155
power Benefactive predicator 19	BOYCOTT (63) {ASW0004T}.....	155
power Benefactive predicator 20	BUILD (72) {ASW0004T}	156
power Benefactive predicator 21	CAPTURE (443) {ASW0020B}	157
power Benefactive predicator 22	CARRY (19) ON {ASW0002T}.....	157
power Benefactive predicator 23	CARRY (129) OUT {ASW0007T}.....	158
power Benefactive predicator 24	COME (43) {ASW0003T}	158

power Benefactive predicator 25	CONDUCT (126) {ASW0007T}	159
power Benefactive predicator 26	CONFRONT (324) {ASW0016B}	159
power Benefactive predicator 27	CONVICT (303) {ASW0015B}	160
power Benefactive predicator 28	CURB (54) {ASW0003T}	161
power Benefactive predicator 29	DEAL (6) WITH {ASW0001T}	161
power Benefactive predicator 30	DECIDE (87) {ASW0006T}	162
power Benefactive predicator 31	DECLARE (371) {ASW0018B}	163
power Benefactive predicator 32	DEMAND (435) {ASW0020B}	163
power Benefactive predicator 33	DENY (239) ASW0013B	164
power Benefactive predicator 34	DEVELOP (188) {ASW0011B}	164
power Benefactive predicator 35	DISMANTLE (49) {ASW0003T}	165
power Benefactive predicator 36	ELECT (201) {ASW0011B}	165
power Benefactive predicator 37	EMASCULATE (153) {ASW0008T}	166
power Benefactive predicator 38	ENSHRINE (94) {ASW0006T}	167
power Benefactive predicator 39	EQUIP (274) {ASW0014B}	168
power Benefactive predicator 40	EXPRESS (374) {ASW0018B}	168
power Benefactive predicator 41	FAIL (376) {ASW0018B}	169
power Benefactive predicator 42	FIGHT (75) {ASW0004T}	170
power Benefactive predicator 43	FIRE (64) {ASW0004T}	170
power Benefactive predicator 44	FLY (363) {ASW0018B}	171
power Benefactive predicator 45	FORCE (117) {ASW0007T}	172
power Benefactive predicator 46	FREE (254) {ASW0013B}	172
power Benefactive predicator 47	FREEZE (437) {ASW0020B}	173
power Benefactive predicator 48	GET (193) BACK INTO {ASW0011B}	173
power Benefactive predicator 49	HEAD (92) {ASW0006T}	174
power Benefactive predicator 50	HOLD (34) {ASW0002T}	175
power Benefactive predicator 51	HOLD (58) UP {ASW0004T}	175
power Benefactive predicator 52	HUMILIATE (292) {ASW0015B}	176
power Benefactive predicator 53	INSIST (99) ON {ASW0006T}	177
power Benefactive predicator 54	INTERVIEW (335) ASW0016B	178
power Benefactive predicator 55	JUDGE (339) {ASW0016B}	178
power Benefactive predicator 56	JUMP (311) {ASW0015B}	179
power Benefactive predicator 57	KNEEL (122) {ASW0007T}	179
power Benefactive predicator 58	LEAD (133) TO {ASW0007T}	180
power Benefactive predicator 59	LEAVE (364) {ASW0018}	181
power Benefactive predicator 60	LOSE (12) {ASW0001T}	181
power Benefactive predicator 61	MANOEUVRE (219) {ASW0012B}	182
power Benefactive predicator 62	MOVE (52) {ASW0003T}	183
power Benefactive predicator 63	MOVE (71) TOWARDS {ASW0004T}	183
power Benefactive predicator 64	NEGOTIATE (230) {ASW0013B}	184
power Benefactive predicator 65	PERSUADE (381) {ASW0018B}	185
power Benefactive predicator 66	PRESIDE (390) OVER {ASW0018B}	185
power Benefactive predicator 67	PREVENT (81) {ASW0006T}	186
power Benefactive predicator 68	PROVIDE (288) {ASW0014B}	187
power Benefactive predicator 69	PUNISH (242) {ASW0013B}	188
power Benefactive predicator 70	QUESTION (233) {ASW0013B}	188
power Benefactive predicator 71	QUIT (20) {ASW0002T}	189
power Benefactive predicator 72	REFER (400) TO {ASW0019B}	190
power Benefactive predicator 73	REIN (42) IN {ASW0003T}	191

power Benefactive predicator 74	REINVIGORATE (198) {ASW0011B}.....	192
power Benefactive predicator 75	RELEASE (229) {ASW0013B}.....	193
power Benefactive predicator 76	REMAIN (423) {ASW0019B}.....	193
power Benefactive predicator 77	REPRESENT (244) {ASW0013B}.....	194
power Benefactive predicator 78	RESIGN (105) {ASW0097T}.....	195
power Benefactive predicator 79	RESPECT (3) {ASW0001T}.....	195
power Benefactive predicator 80	SEND (300) {ASW0015B}.....	196
power Benefactive predicator 81	SHOOT (327) {ASW0016B}.....	196
power Benefactive predicator 82	SHOOT (121) DOWN {ASW0007T}.....	197
power Benefactive predicator 83	SHUT (247) DOWN {ASW0013B}.....	198
power Benefactive predicator 84	STAND (208) ASIDE {ASW0012B}.....	198
power Benefactive predicator 85	STAND (2) UP FOR {ASW0012B}.....	199
power Benefactive predicator 86	STOP (177) {ASW0010T}.....	200
power Benefactive predicator 87	STRENGTHEN (271) {ASW0014B}.....	200
power Benefactive predicator 88	SUCCEED (203) {ASW0011B}.....	201
power Benefactive predicator 89	TAKE (310) BACK {ASW0015B}.....	202
power Benefactive predicator 90	TAKE (394) OVER {ASW0019B}.....	202
power Benefactive predicator 91	TAX (7) {ASW0001T}.....	203
power Benefactive predicator 92	THREATEN (53) {ASW0003T}.....	204
power Benefactive predicator 93	THWART (406) {ASW0019B}.....	204
power Benefactive predicator 94	TRANSFER (148) {ASW0008T}.....	206
power Benefactive predicator 95	URGE (101) {ASW0006T}.....	206
power Benefactive predicator 96	VETO (84) {ASW0006T}.....	207
power Benefactive predicator 97	VOICE (359) {ASW0017B}.....	208
power Benefactive predicator 98	VOTE (132) {ASW0007T}.....	208
power Benefactive predicator 99	WANTED (77) FOR {ASW0005T}.....	209
power Benefactive predicator 100	WIN (22) {ASW0002T}.....	210

LIST OF DIAGRAMS

Diagram 1: A prototype for a power cline.....	60
--	----

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: A visualisation of the framework of the thesis.....	21
Figure 2: Rules/resources: generating legitimation, signification, and domination (ibid).....	48
Figure 3: The “Relation of the text to the context of situation” (Halliday and Hasan, 1989:26, authors’ bold, my colour).....	83
Figure 4: Eight predicators from Chomsky’s surface sentence.....	89
Figure 5: The surface/syntactic structure of (a) represented by the semantic structure in (b/c).....	90

Figure 6: Definitions of the content of the semantic roles.....	93
Figure 7: Representation of reality (semantic representation).....	98
Figure 8: Inter-domain movement within the matrix model.....	102
Figure 9: ‘in-power’, ‘not-in-power’ and ‘quasi-power’	110
Figure 10: The Windows layout for the 2005 Corpus	116
Figure 11: A screen shot of a concordance file showing lines selected for deletion. ..	136
Figure 12: Interconnections between <i>the MICROSCENE</i> and the representation of meaning.....	226

LIST OF GRAPHS

Graph 1: Displaying 41% basically pBen predicators to 59% from other semantic domains.....	213
Graph 2: Display of percentages of the three qualities of the power Benefactive	213
Graph 3: Proportion of basic senses giving rise to power Benefactive predicators	219
Graph 4: The level of polysemy of <i>detain</i>	220

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: Concordance lines from The Bank of English.....	48
Table 2: Cohesive items in the power lexical chain from newsreport ASW0001T.....	66
Table 3: Difficult processes and number of researchers selecting a particular analysis	71
Table 4: Cook’s 1989 Matrix model (1989, p. 197)	91
Table 5: Examples of the UFSC model semantic roles.....	99
Table 6: Benefactive semantic domain verb types (Oliveira, <i>ibid</i> , p. 128, my translation).....	103
Table 7: Notions of the power Benefactive extracted from the Benefactive (Steele Weickert, 2005; Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a, 2005b, 2006)	109
Table 8: Twelve (12) elliptical microscenes with the lemma – BE.	126
Table 9: The twenty-three (23) occurrences of - “ <i>BE + a LEXICOGRAMMATICAL ITEM</i> ” - composing a power Benefactive predicator in the corpus.....	126
Table 10: The thirty-five (35) occurrences of - “ <i>BE + a lexical item</i> ” - composing a power Benefactive predicator in the corpus, in order of appearance (continued on next page).....	128
Table 11: Ten (10) examples of “ <i>BE + a prepositional phrase</i> ” comprising power Benefactive microscenes.....	130
Table 12: Seven (7) examples of “ <i>BE + a noun group which is a power role</i> ” comprising power Benefactive microscenes.....	130
Table 13: Six (6) examples of “ <i>BE + a noun group which is an event</i> ” comprising power Benefactive microscenes.....	131
Table 14: Five (5) examples of “ <i>BE + an adjective group</i> ” comprising power Benefactive microscenes.....	131
Table 15: Two microscenes with CUT and CUT DOWN.....	137

Table 16: parallel analysis predicators	137
Table 17: Microscenes for the pBen predicators considered similar, or not.....	137
Table 18: Fifty (50) randomly selected pBen predicators from the Telegraph.....	138
Table 19: 50 randomly selected pBen predicators from the BBC.....	139
Table 20: The 100 randomly selected power Benefactive predicators in alphabetical order	143
Table 21: List of basically power Benefactive predicators	214
Table 22: quasi-power Benefactive predicators	215
Table 23: power Benefactive negative predicators	215
Table 24: Seventeen (17) power Benefactive metaphors, from their basic sense of <i>Experiential</i>	216
Table 25: Sixteen (16) power Benefactive metaphors have displaced from the <i>Basic</i> semantic domain.....	217
Table 26: Fifteen (15) basic sense <i>Locative</i> predicators	217
Table 27: Ten (10) power Benefactive metaphors which have displaced from their basic sense of <i>Benefactive</i> , three (3) are of negative quality.....	218
Table 28: The power Benefactive metaphor from the basic sense of <i>Holistic</i>	218

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

This thesis proposes a new linguistic category, **the power Benefactive** semantic subdomain (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2003, 2005a, 2005b) to represent power microscenes in journalistic text, that is, to *identify* and *register* the traffic of the notion of power in language in use. The model uses the term *microscene* (Oliveira, 1999) for the *proposition* when placed in *context*, in other words a **microscene** is a tenseless set of relationships involving a single predicator and its accompanying roles (or participants), considered as part of a specific context, and *encompassing* the context, thus going beyond the proposition.

The research employs the power Benefactive to explore the presence of **linguistic marks of power** in text. The power Benefactive is a subdomain of the Benefactive³ semantic domain from the **Nicolacópulos *et al*⁴ semantic-pragmatic approach** (Nicolacópulos et al, 1995; Oliveira, M. da G. Albino, 1995; Oliveira, A. T. C. de, 1999, Rocha, 2003; Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, *ibid*). In Cook's matrix model (1979, 1989, cf. **Table 4**, p. 91 below) and the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach *semantic domain* represents the predicators and their associated semantic roles of a particular 'family' which fall within a particular category. On the other hand, Louw & Nida, (1989) and Pitts (2006) take a 'semantic domain' to be a type of category, topic, or group, for example: "supernatural beings, Powers [... such as] God, Holy Spirit, angel, devil, demon, ghost" (Louw & Nida, *ibid*, p. 135). In much the same way other

³ Although Cook (1979, 1989) does not capitalise the 'B' in *Benefactive* except when referring to semantic roles, I have chosen to capitalise the names of all the semantic domains and predicators to be consistent with the capital 'B' to distinguish between the Basic semantic domain and the basic sense.

⁴ This semantic-pragmatic model will from now on be referred to as the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach, undated to avoid repetition of all the contributors, and under development by the authors.

authors would use the term “*semantic field*” (Halliday, 2004:164) for a family of related lexical items that refer to particular subjects such as culinary terms, sports, etc, organised into fields and sub-fields, encompassing synonyms, antonyms, and associated lexical items, all related to SUBJECT categories.

The *Locative* semantic domain encompasses a predicator and a semantic role or semantic roles in a locative relationship. Thus Locative predicators are said to be in the Locative domain. Similarly, power Benefactive predicators fall within the power Benefactive subdomain which in turn falls within the Benefactive domain. For example, in

my example 1

Queen Elizabeth (pBen) reigns over England (Obj_s).

Queen Elizabeth accounts for the power Benefactive semantic role, and England the participant accounting for the stative Object role. Fillmore points out that “[t]he semantic description of the verb will do no more than identify a particular activity having a result of a particular kind on the object identified by the O[bj] element” (1968, p. 29). His modal ‘*will do no more*’ gratuitously reduces the importance of this process, in fact “[t]he central problem of semantic analysis will be to establish which concept or abstract construct is connected to and evoked by the word in question” (Violi, 2001, p. 28). The analysts’ decision on the matter is a significant one.

The present day Nicolacópulos *et al* approach to text analysis is the result of refinements to Father Cook’s Matrix model (1979, 1989) for a non-localistic Case Grammar, as opposed to a localistic one (cf. 2.14., p. 85-86 below), incorporating Fillmore’s notion of *proposition*⁵ (1968, 1971, 1975), which is a unit of semantic

⁵ Or *clause* in the Hallidayan sense. There are overlapping ideas in Case Grammar theory and Systemic functional linguistics (SFL), (cf. 2.9. below), both falling within relational semantics, and I shall make reference to SFL but not go into the perspectives in any depth. Research at the Post graduate research in English department - Pos-graduação letras/ Inglês (PGI), UFSC, is broadly speaking inclined towards Hallidayan perspectives, meriting some association between the two lines in my discussion, also for the benefit of readers from an SFL tradition.

historical, as well as *ideological* factors. At the same time the “meaning of a text segment is the history of the use of its constituents” (Teubert, 2001, p. 133)

Ashley and Sheingorn (1999) say their “interest is not only in the [...] analysis of the microscene but also in relating these small units to the historical structure of the whole text, which [they] see as having an ideological function” (p.18). Notwithstanding that “[t]he big advantage of case grammar is that it combines bottom-up parsing (constituent recognition) and top-down parsing (predicting and forbidding cases)” (Vogelenzang & de Vuyst (1991, p. 328, authors’ brackets). Fairclough’s (1992) statement that ideologies can be understood as “significations/ constructions of reality (the physical world, social relations, social identities) [...] which contribute to the production, reproduction or transformation of relations of domination” (p.86-87, author’s parentheses) reaffirms the importance of ideology in this research on linguistic marks of power. As Knowles and Moon (ibid) say

ideology is, for many, usually associated with political beliefs and it is quite true that political parties want to persuade us that their way is the right way. Ideology, however, need not necessarily be thought of in purely political terms. Ideology can be seen as a set of beliefs which provides justification for what people do and say (p.97).

The analyst employing the Nicolacópulos *et al* model will draw on his/her own ideology, in the respect that according to van Dijk (1997c)

ideologies also resemble the knowledge of a group, which is also socioculturally shared while at the same time known and usable by group members in their everyday practices. Indeed, both knowledge and ideologies are types of social belief. What is knowledge for one group may be seen as an ideology by others (p. 28).

The focus of the Nicolacópulos *et al* research is the concept of the *microscene*. This model allows us to go beyond the isolated clause. Microscenes are the divisions of an utterance analysed for power Benefactive predicators in this research. The use of the term *context* refers to “a 'pragmatic' theory of context” (van Dijk, 2001a, p. 16, author’s inverted commas), to the outstanding information not necessarily explicit

in the utterance. Context, as used in this thesis, refers to the co-text, i.e. the surrounding text, and also to information outside the text itself the “intertextual” (Meurer, 2002, 2004) information and the “contextual knowledge” (Janks, 1997, p. 331). The term context also embodies general or world knowledge shared (or not) by the producer and receiver of the text.

The principal argument of this thesis is that the *power Benefactive subdomain* (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, *ibid*) is a suitable linguistic category for representing and accounting for the notion of power at the level of the microscene, because “knowledge has to be represented in some formalism that allows its processing” (Kent & Kent, 1996, p. 43).

However, the issue of *polysemy* and *metaphor* (Oliveira, 1995) comes up throughout the analyses calling for discussion on “polysemous metaphor” (Eva Hjörne, 2006, p. 194; O’Neill, 2006, p. 144) or “polysemic metaphor” (Mansen & Weingagaart, 1995, *apud* Foster, 2005, p. 38) (*cf.* 2.12.). The next part of the thesis introduces the environment which gave birth to this research.

1.1. Background to the source of my research

I have been interested in ‘power issues’ since I started my MA at UFSC in 1999, encouraged by professors who were investigating this topic. At the same time these classes grounded me in ‘Literary genres’ (Bellei, 1999); ‘Gender and Discourse’ (Heberle, 1999a); ‘DA (Discourse analysis)’ (Meurer, 2001); ‘Translation studies’ (Vasconcellos, 2000, 2004); ‘CDA (Critical Discourse Analysis)’ (Heberle, 2001, 2002); ‘Semantics’ (Nicolacópulos, 2002); ‘Multimodality and Metaphor’ (Heberle, 1999b, Gil, 2004); ‘Polysemy’ (Nicolacópulos, 2003); ‘Social practices’ (Meurer, 2002) and ‘Applied Linguistics’ (Heberle, 2000; Paes de Almeida Filho, 2004). The fact that

these topics all incorporate studies of the relevance of power relations impressed upon me how many academics are concerned with the workings of power, control and domination. While attending events at the University of Birmingham, UK (where I was a visiting research fellow in 2005) and the University of Aston, UK, I observed an interest there too. Seminars (Baxter, 2005; Blackledge, 2005; Budach, 2005; Ehrlich, 2005; Ellice, 2005; Caldas-Coulthard, 2005a, 2005b; Cameron, 2005; Chokri, 2005; Jule, 2005; Koller, 2005; Kosetzi, 2005; Mayr, 2005; McLoughlin, 2005; Mills, 2005; Pichler, 2005; Schäffner, 2005; van Leeuwen, 2005; Wharton, 2005; and Wodak, 2005) and classes (Holland, 2005; Teubert, 2005a, 2005b, 2005c) I was present at led me to delve further into discourse on power related subjects, contributing to my reflections on the area, and the realisation of the importance of the study of power. The research presented at the events in Birmingham was from the perspective of Critical Discourse Analysis. My doctoral research, roughly speaking, focuses on the ideational level of language, in the ambit of ‘language in use’; however, there is an overlap with Critical Discourse Analysis the moment I draw on the interpersonal level to determine power relations to understand ‘what is going on’ in an utterance.

I had the opportunity to attend a NUPdiscurso⁶ research group meeting where I heard Dr. Nicolacópulos talk on, and open up an invitation to work on, the possibility of performing linguistic research on the traffic of the notion of power starting with the level of the clause. This thesis is the result of our research. When I use the terms ‘we’ or ‘our’ I am generally referring to Dr. Nicolacópulos and myself, and at times it is extended to all the UFSC researchers working on the development of Cook’s matrix model (1979, 1989).

⁶ NUPdiscurso is a research group – **N**ucleo de **P**esquisa – investigating **D**iscourse, presided over by Dr. Jose Luiz Meurer and Dr. Viviane Heberle linked to PGI, the Postgraduate English department, at UFSC. <http://www.cce.ufsc.br/~nupdiscurso/index-english.htm>.

Having had the privilege of being introduced to Corpus Linguistics (CL) in classes (Groom, 2005; Teubert, 2005a, 2005c; Hunston, 2005; Danielsson, 2005a,) and seminars (Sinclair, 2005; Sealey, 2005; Littlemore & Shorthall, 2005; Barnbrook, 2005) at the University of Birmingham, I have chosen to use Corpus Linguistics to assist in the organisation of my data revealing further evidence for the validity of my thesis proposal: the **power Benefactive semantic subdomain** I use techniques of corpus linguistic analysis to help to identify the linguistic features that define a predicator as being power Benefactive. The term *predicator* is used rather than *verb*, or “*verb-predicator*” (Oliveira, 1999, my translation) as the centrality of the microscene may be a “particular verb or other predicating word” (Fillmore, 1977, p. 74), a noun, adjective, or adverb used predicatively. That is the predicator may be pivoted around a noun, for example: BE A MONITOR in **power Benefactive microscene 10, chapter 4** below:

*Jimmy Carter, the former American president, who (pBen) WAS [BE] (73)
AN INTERNATIONAL MONITOR (Obj_s) of the first Palestinian
presidential election (Obj_s)*

or pivoted around an adjective, for example BE RESPONSIBLE in **power Benefactive microscene 13, chapter 4** below:

*Under this proposal, the Treasury civil servants (pBen) [who ARE] [BE]
(157) RESPONSIBLE FOR monitoring departmental spending plans (Obj_s)
would move to the Cabinet Office*

As there is no example in my present corpus, predicative adverbs will be investigated in future research. The predicator determines and is determined by the “quantity and quality of the semantic roles” (Rocha, 2003, p. 116, my translation) therein. The next section reiterates on the objectives of this research.

1.2. Objectives and research questions

In this thesis I attempt to determine whether it is valid to classify linguistic marks of power as belonging to the proposed new subdomain: the **power Benefactive**, abbreviated as **pBen**. My research is an attempt to offer a contribution to academic knowledge on the subject of *power issues*, concentrating primarily on authoritative, or, hierarchical power, as, to date, I have not yet found literature explicitly on the issue of power at the linguistic level of the “clause as representation” (Halliday, 1994, p. 178; Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, *ibid*).

Power as a factor of the definition for the Benefactive semantic domain was first introduced by Flores (1994), and continued in Oliveira’s (1999) research. The power Benefactive is a facet of the Benefactive semantic domain extended to a higher level of delicacy to recognize the presence, loss, or maintenance of power, and consequently

- the situation of being ‘in-power’, **power Benefactive** (pBen), or ‘not-in-power’, **power Benefactive negative** (pBen_{neg});
- alongside
- the **quasi-power Benefactive subdomain** (qpBen) proposed to register a competition, or ‘struggle for power’;
- and
- the **pseudo-power Benefactive**, when a predicator which is power Benefactive in its basic sense is used metaphorically for another sense.

I focus specifically on the following research questions, where:

A *lexicogrammatical item* refers to a word, or *token* which may or may not have more than one meaning (*type*) according to the context within which it is inserted in a particular discourse community (Teubert, 2005a).

A *lexical item* on the other hand, according to corpus linguists (ibid), can be either

- a) a node word (lexicogrammatical item), or,
- b) a node word plus a minimum number of other lexicogrammatical items collocated with that node to form a *core unit*

which has ONLY ONE MEANING, that is, A SINGLE UNAMBIGUOUS meaning.

1.2.1. RESEARCH QUESTIONS

1. Is it possible to represent power at the level of the microscene (clause as representation in context)? If so
2. Is there evidence to show power issues could be expressed linguistically by a case grammar model?
3. What lexicogrammatical items constitute power microscenes?
 - a. Can nouns or adjectives constitute power microscenes?
4. Can power microscenes be subdivided into specific groups?

Endeavouring to answer these questions I analyse the predicators in my own specially-constructed corpus of online newsreports on the subjects of 'war', 'politics' and 'law enforcement'. I classify these predicators according to relational semantics, revealing that they are

- representative of power in their *basic sense*
- and
- a large proportion of them are *metaphors*, that is they have undergone semantic moves from their basic sense, to produce new senses *foregrounding* the notion of power.

Bearing in mind that “polysemy is determined by the permutability of the semantic relations of the verb” (Oliveira, 2003:30, my translation), relational semantics assists in identifying metaphors resulting from semantic displacement of polysemic

predicators. Relational semantics refers to the study of semantics from a relational point of view, that is to say a study of how the predicator relates to the semantic roles of the participants in an utterance. The Nicolacópulos *et al* approach focuses on the “relational aspect of a case grammar analysis, where nouns stand in a particular relationship with a verb” (Nicolacópulos, 1981, p. ix). Relationally power lexical items compose power microscenes, while *referentially* power lexical items (cf. 2.6.) MAY contribute to the constitution of power microscenes. Referentially means the lexical items refer to a particular topic, for example referential *power* items refer to *power*. A lexical chain (cf. 2.7.) is a set of lexical items running through a text which refer to that particular topic, i.e. power in this research. In **Appendix 1** the referentially power lexical items in the newsreports are underlined. The relationally power lexical items are the power predicators and are capitalised, the 100 randomly selected ones are in bold, as, for example, in:

But senior Tories have told The Telegraph that Mr Howard is grooming David Cameron, 38, the shadow cabinet member [who IS] [BE] **(30) IN CHARGE** of policy co-ordination, to TAKE (31) OVER from him next year if the Tories LOST (32) the election, which is expected in May (from file ASW0002T)

The basic sense “of a predicator is the sense already recognised by the linguistic community in which the utterance is inserted, and [...] which, in most instances coincides with the first dictionary sense registered” (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a, p. 37).

The following subsection places the research in context.

1.3. Context of the Research

Malinowski (1935) suggests that analysis of isolated sentences does not necessarily lead to a correct understanding of the author’s intention, and that it is only

by being placed within a context of situation (cf. 2.13.) that full comprehension is possible. He divides the ‘experience’ of situation into three categories: “field”, “tenor” and “mode”. *Field* refers to what the text is actually about, *tenor* relates to the relationship between the participants of the communication, and *mode* refers to the way in which the communication is transmitted, i.e. spoken, written, etc. Much later, Halliday (1985), as a complement to Malinowski’s model, proposed three *semantic* metafunctions, the “ideational”, “interpersonal” and “textual” (Halliday, 2004, p. 179), which correspond to the three constituents of the context of situation; field, tenor and mode, respectively, ultimately expressed using lexicogrammatical units (Heberle, 2006, personal communication). The semantic-pragmatic analysis in this research takes place at the ideational and interpersonal level.

In the 60s, 70s and 80s, ‘Case Grammar’ was much under discussion by several authors including Anderson (1971); Borba (1987); Carvalho (1986); Chafe (1970, 1979); Cook (1979, 1989); Dahl (1987); Fillmore (1966a, 1966b, 1968, 1971, 1975, 1977); Fillmore & Langendoen (1971); Gruber (1965, 1976); Jackendoff (1972); Moskey (1977); Platt (1971); Rudanko (1989); Samlowski (1976). In 1968 Fillmore proposed the notion of *proposition* which came to be the basis for Case Grammar, followed by attempts from various authors, as mentioned above, to further refine and categorize the semantic domains into which the predicators fall. Cook (1979, 1989) proposed a Matrix model for case grammar, in which he set up a table outlining four semantic domains: the Basic, Experiential, Benefactive and the Locative, of three different verb types: State, Process and Action, incorporating five semantic roles: the Object (O), Agent (A), Experiential (E), Benefactive (B) and the Locative (L).

From 1980 onwards research on Case Grammar models was launched at UFSC by Nicolacópulos (1981), whose Ph.D was supervised by Walter Cook at the

University of Georgetown, USA. This led to research at UFSC by Viviani, 1987; Moura, 1988; Oliveira, M. da G., 1989 and Bathke, 1990; based on Case grammar theory. As Cook (1989) says:

Case grammar theory is a theory that deals with *sentence semantics*. Within a general theory of semantics case grammar is not concerned directly with the semantics of discourse nor with the componential analysis of words. Case grammar only deals with the internal structure of a single *clause*. And even within the clause case grammar does not deal with all elements of meaning; it deals only with the essential *predicate-argument* structure. Case grammar is a theory that attempts to describe the meaning of a clause in terms of a *central predicate* and the *arguments* required by that predicate (p.181, my italics).

The Nicolacópulos *et al* approach has since refined this statement to consider the context in which the microscene stands.

The lexical items *sentence semantics*, *clause*, *predicate-argument*, *central predicate* and *arguments* prompt me at this point to clarify some meta-linguistic terms (see also section 1.4.). At times terms coined by one researcher correspond to the same notion under a different label according to another researcher. As Dinneen (1968) says “descriptive categories are neither true nor false; they are either useful or useless, adequate or inadequate for some purpose” (p.64). Cook’s terminology *sentence semantics* is an alternative to *relational semantics*, while he refers to a *verb* as a *predicator*; an *argument* as accounting for a *case*, which I choose to label as a *semantic role*. “The term “semantic roles” is the most unambiguous and widely understood terminology available. Nevertheless, all field workers should be aware of the alternative terminologies” (Payne, 1997, p. 48, author’s inverted commas).

Systemic Functional Linguistics (SFL) was also under development in the 60s, 70s and 80s by authors such as Langendoen (1968); Palmer (1968); Halliday (1961, 1985); Halliday & Hasan (1976); Hasan (1967); Fawcett (1973); Berry (1975, 1977, 1981); Davidse (1987); Fries, P. H. & Fries, N. M., (1985); Fries (1985); Ventola

(1987), among others⁷, apparently coming from similar backgrounds such as Firth (1957); Searle (1969) and Austin (1961). Halliday's (1994) term "older terminology" (p.109) leads us to believe that terms are indeed changing. What is initially identified by the label 'case grammar' is now referred to as 'relational semantics' incorporating 'cases' or 'semantic roles', which in turn may be called 'thematic roles' (Dowty, 1989, p. title; Brinton, 2000, p. 266; Fromkin and Rodman, 1998, p. 175; Payne, 1997, p. 48; Rocha, 2003, my translation) "or simply **theta roles**" Payne (ibid, author's bold) accounted for by "participants" (Fillmore, 1977, p. 61; Halliday, ibid, p. 107). "[S]emantic configuration" (Halliday, ibid, p. 108) is referred to as the "thematic grid" (Brinton, 2000, p. 274; Rocha, 2003, p. 125, my translation) also referred to as "case frame" by both Fillmore (1968, p. 27) and Cook (1979, p. 56), or "semantic representation" (Fillmore, 1968, p. 31; Stampe, 1975, p. 32; Morgan, 1975, p. 290; Cook, 1979, p. 200; Nicolacópulos, 1981, p. 64) and refers to representation at the clause level (Halliday, 1994, ch.5). It is the textual representation of the semantic content of a microscene. These "semantic representations [...] give the propositional content" (Cook, 1979, p. 200) of a *microscene*, which has a single central predicate with a predetermined "propensity for a set of arguments" (Cook, 1989, p. 186). There is an overlap with various lines of researchers, for example: according to Halliday (1994) "the English language structures each experience as a semantic configuration [...] consisting of process, participants and (optionally) circumstantial elements [...] where a [...] semantic configuration [...] is a [...] meaning structure – 'semanticized' so to speak" (p.108). A *semantic role* refers to the function in the semantic representation that an

⁷ Extensive lists of references and authors can be accessed at, for example, <http://www.cels.bham.ac.uk/resources/FGbiblio.pdf> or <http://iinwww.ira.uka.de/csib/Ai/bateman> or <http://www-personal.umich.edu/~jaylemke/talksci-bib.htm> or <http://www.ling.mq.edu.au/nlp/resource/VirtuallLibrary/Bibliography/sysbibliography.htm>

argument / participant plays in relation to the central predicator in the construction of meaning in a proposition. Semantic roles belong to the “experiential [function of the] ideational [level of language, where] language [is] the expression of ... logical relations” (Halliday, 1994, p. 179).

The interrelating of the fundamentals of *Case Grammar*, *Systemic Functional Linguistics* and *Critical Discourse Analysis* seem to be valid considering that O’Donell (personal communication, 2005a) verbalised his opinion that the semantic-pragmatic Nicolacópulos *et al* approach is valid as a systemic model, albeit at a different level to transitivity. Such an endeavour would require a much deeper explanation of the three topics than would be suitable in the present research. However, it is impossible to ignore the fact that there is some overlap between the SFL and Nicolacópulos *et al* lines of relational semantics, specifically as far as Context of Situation (Malinowski, *ibid*; Eggins, 1994) is concerned. Background knowledge of Systemic Functional Linguistics has facilitated placing this research at the “ideational (clause as representation)” level, the term having been borrowed from Halliday (1994, p. 179). However, at the analysis of the *microscene* stage it was essential to draw on the “interpersonal” level (*ibid*), where the research then overlaps with Critical Discourse Analysis as mentioned above.

In the early 1990s, a semantic-pragmatic model of linguistic analysis was proposed by Nicolacópulos (1992); and Nicolacópulos, Nassib Olímpio, Oliveira, A., Oliveira, M. da G. & Zucco (1995); based on the model proposed by Cook (*ibid*). *Semantic-Pragmatic* - because of the consideration of *meaning* (semantics) not only in the local context but also in the broader context (pragmatics). This approach has been under development at UFSC since then by Nicolacópulos and Conceição (unpublished); Zucco (1992, 1994); Oliveira, M. da G. (1995); Oliveira, A. (1999); Rocha (2003);

Nicolacópulos and Steele Weickert (2003, 2005a, 2005b), and was the starting point for my participation in this research. The present research specifically brings in (i) the ideas of M. da G. Oliveira (1995, 2003) on polysemy and metaphor; and (ii) the work of A. Oliveira (ibid) on the Benefactive semantic domain; both incorporating semantic moves predicators have undertaken in journalistic language. Prior to my involvement, the researchers at UFSC analysed predicators from texts in Portuguese, alongside Souza Schissatti (2004) and Souza Schissatti & Nicolacópulos (2002a, 2002b), who investigated Italian and my contribution has been to extend this work to the English language.

The point is that in the 60s, 70s and 80s, logical semantics was in fashion, and authors exemplified their tenets by means of invented sentences, rather than utterances within a context. Halliday comments that “Aristotle took grammar out of rhetoric into logic” (1994, p. xxiii), hence the term *logical* semantics, “Rhetoric [...] being] an explanation of what it is that makes spoken discourse effective” (ibid). “The logical structure is the expression of the propositional content, i.e., the core or nuclear meaning of the sentence, which is based upon a predicate that requires a number of arguments” (Nicolacópulos, 1981, p. 64).

The relational semantic model, broadened to encompass pragmatics, became the semantic-pragmatic model the UFSC authors implement and is (as is much of Hallidayan analysis) applied to ‘real data’, a corpus composed of online newsreports, to investigate *language in use* (Sinclair, 1995; Stubbs, 2001; Thornborrow, 2002; Sealey & Carter, 2004), as opposed to invented examples. This semantic-pragmatic model is herein referred to as *the Nicolacópulos et al* approach without a date (cf. footnote 4), as there have been refinements from various authors over several years, this thesis being the latest update, the state of the art of the approach. However, credit must be given to

all the researchers mentioned above, with my apologies for any inadvertent omissions. Two fundamental refinements to Cook's Matrix model (ibid) in the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach are

i) *microscenes* – where a microscene is an element in an utterance which "encompasses one verb-predicator ... interpreted in the light of the pertinent relationship it holds with the immediate context" (Oliveira, 1999, p. 115, my translation). A *power Benefactive microscene* expresses a situation foregrounding the notion of power in utterances from a relational point of view.

and

ii) the notion of *basic sense* - The non-basic sense of a predicator is the new sense it takes on as a consequence of undergoing a metaphorical process.

In 2003 a pilot study was carried out forming the basis for an interpretation and analysis of the metaphorical process, that is, the semantic movement, or shift, or displacement, of lexicogrammatical choices from one semantic domain to another resulting in new senses of the predicators identified. In these displacements, units of meaning, not necessarily related to power, become lexical units effecting 'power Benefactive microscenes', and as such, are linguistic marks of power. Linguistic marks of power were identified in their basic sense, alongside other polysemic words which, depending on the context, would normally have a different connotation other than one representing power. The latter, non-basic power predicators having metaphorised towards the power Benefactive subdomain subsequently represent power. The substantial number of 43 variant pBen predicators in a small corpus of 10 newsreports from the Washington Post online suggested that these findings warranted further investigation justifying the research in this thesis.

In a paper presented at the SFL conference in Sao Paulo (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2006) one of the resultant basically power Benefactive predicators

investigated *–detain –* revealed the requirement of another linguistic category the *pseudo-power Benefactive*. Power Benefactive predicators lending themselves to other semantic domains, and subsequently metaphors are then *pseudo-power Benefactive* predicators in their new environment.

Considering Fairclough's (1995) position that "the finer detail of discourse representation, which on the face of it is merely a matter of technical properties of the grammar and semantics of texts, may be tuned to social determinants and social effects" (p.65), reflects the importance of placing the predicators within a context, the social background wherein they are registered. I hope to have provided some inklings in the completed thesis as to how the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach contributes to these finer details of power at the microscene level. This thesis entails an attempt to conceive an interpretation and analysis of the metaphorical process involved in the semantic movement of lexicogrammatical choices, resulting in new senses. An overview on power issues is indispensable to contextualise my work, calling in turn for a mention of 'news as social practice' (Caldas Coulthard, 1997), bearing in mind that my corpus is comprised of 'newsreports' as a source of 'language in use'. An accompanying general idea of pragmatics (Simpson, 1993; Yule, 1996; Leech, 1983, Fromkin & Rodman, 1998), or, I might say, 'meaning in context' is subsequently in order. The principal focus of the thesis is to establish the existence of a power Benefactive sub-domain, confirming through research implementing the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach, that the power Benefactive is a valid and crucial metalinguistic category to distinguish linguistic marks of power at the microscene level, and show that power Benefactive predicators are abundant in newsreports on 'war', 'politics' and 'law enforcement'.

Polysemy and metaphor take a secondary but indispensable place in the thesis, as previously mentioned, a large percentage of the power Benefactive predicators

identified are polysemous metaphors. The study takes two further directions, (i) from the way language represents a social interaction in the macrolevel, the broader context, of, for example, governmental hierarchical institutions to (ii) the microlevel, the local context, of “linguistic structures of the text [embedded within that] social, political and cultural context” (Wenden & Schäffner, 1995, p. xi). The power Benefactive, which offers a means of registering power linguistically at the ideational level of the clause, opens up possibilities for further research in the fields of, for example, metaphor, polysemy, semantics, pragmatics, lexicography, systemic functional linguistics, translation studies, machine translation, DA (Discourse analysis), CDA (Critical Discourse Analysis) and power studies.

What permeates this thesis is the notion of power portrayed in terms of microscenes, where the ‘notion of power’ is accounted for by the power Benefactive role (one which accounts for the notion of authority or hierarchy, occurring together with the ‘other’ role in opposition to the power Benefactive, which represents what is under the power Benefactive authority).

In summary, this study proposes the following:

- a) The power Benefactive subdomain as an extension to Oliveira’s (1999) tenets on the Benefactive domain;
- b) The classification of the power Benefactive into
in-power > not-in-power > quasi-power;
- c) The power Benefactive role as the one in-power or not-in power, as opposed to the ‘Object’ role, which represents what is or is not under the power Benefactive’s authority;
- d) The quasi-power Benefactive;
- e) All of the above as constituting power microscenes and therefore linguistic marks of power;

- f) The pseudo-power Benefactive.

Figure 1. below shows a diagram visualising how the ideas put forward in this thesis are linked together. The corpus is built from **newsreports** as real data from **language in use** concerning **power issues**. Once power relations are considered in the analysis, the research encroaches on the field of **Critical Discourse Analysis**, and also **pragmatics** as the consideration of context is indispensable. **Systemic functional Linguistics** and the **Nicolacópulos *et al*** approach are **relational semantic** models. Fillmore's (1968, 1975) **proposition** is roughly equivalent to Halliday's (1994) **clause as representation**. However, **context** has been incorporated into the Nicolacópulos *et al* model, and the proposition in context has come to be referred to as the **microscene** (Oliveira, 1999), the refined model becoming a **semantic-pragmatic** approach. Furthermore, Malinowski's (1935) ideas on the **context of situation** and Halliday's (ibid) **metafunctions** contextualise my research and place it focussed at the **ideational** level of language. Each microscene and its single predicator belong to a particular **semantic domain**, the participants account for the **semantic roles** of: an Agent and/or Object(s) and most importantly one participant accounts for the semantic role particular to that domain. The unprecedented aspect of the research is the proposal for the **power Benefactive** relationship, a refinement to the umbrella term **Benefactive** and the state-of-the-art addition to the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach. Power Benefactive predicators are **LINGUISTIC MARKS OF POWER** representing the relationship of being a) **in-power**, ii) **not-in-power**, or iii) in competition for power, termed **quasi-power**. The power Benefactive predicators are either i) in their **basic sense** or are ii) **metaphors** coming from other semantic domains. The latter are **polysemous metaphors** capable of lending themselves to other semantic domains owing to their polysemic character they

play in **language in context**. At times a predicator, power Benefactive in its basic sense, may lend itself to another semantic domain and is termed a *pseudo*-power Benefactive predicator when it no longer represents power in its new environment or context. Using the WordSmith4 software (Scott, 2004) to arrange the data for analysis places this research within **Corpus linguistics**. In future research a **database** using Standard Query Language (**SQL**) could help to further log the results.

FRAMEWORK OF THE THESIS

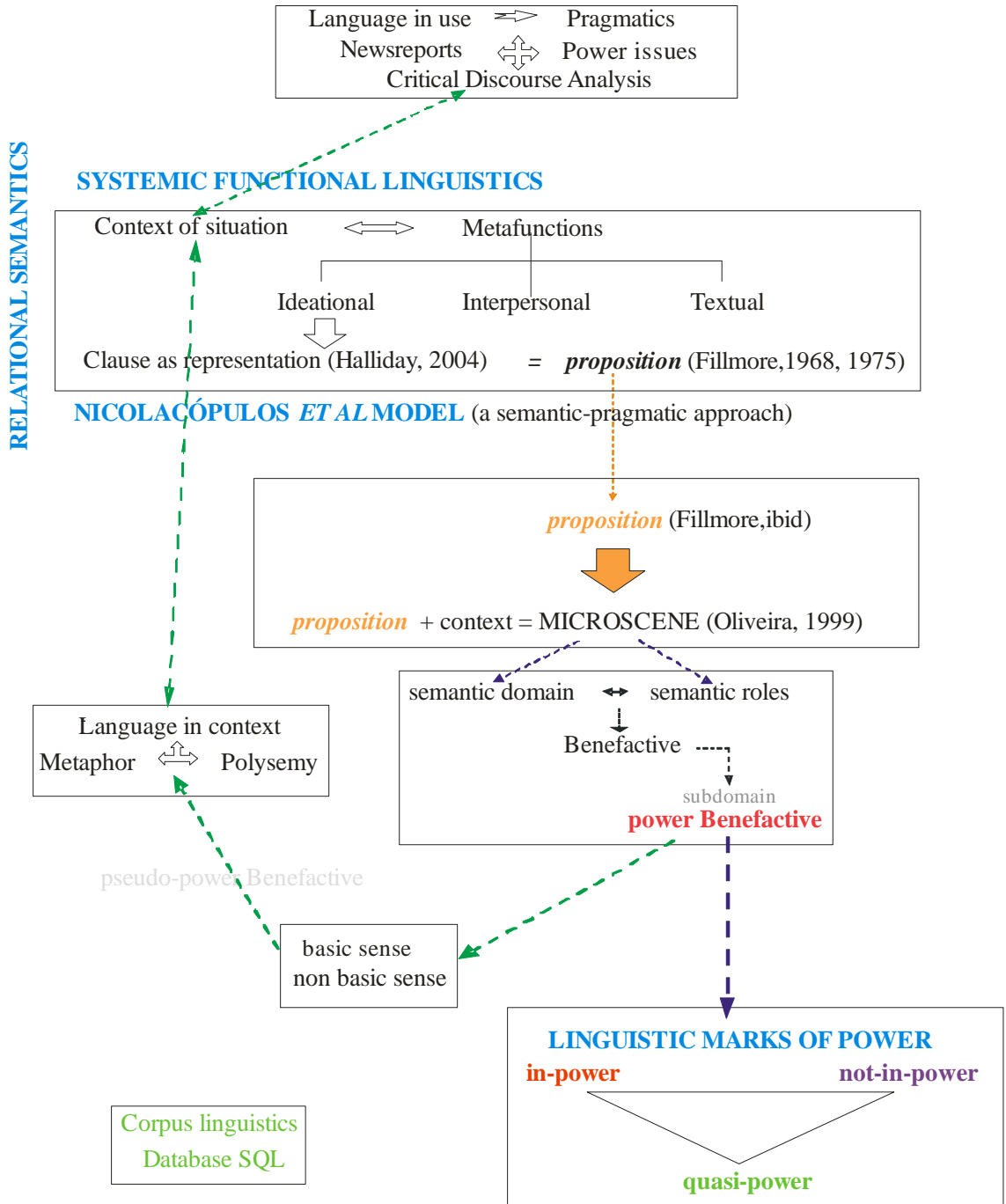


Figure 1: A visualisation of the framework of the thesis

The next section is a list of **meta-linguistic operational terms**. For the convenience of readers from alternative areas of research it has been placed in the introduction to be referred back to, rather than as an appendix.

1.4. Meta-Linguistic Operational Terms

Agent (Agt)

The Agent (Agt) is the "case" (or semantic role) which expresses action by an action verb without any necessary reference to animacy or volition.

argument

At the level of representation, the argument(s) along with the predicator and any modal elements are the constituents of the clause. Where for Halliday (1994) "the participants in the process [...] the process itself and any circumstances associated with the process" (p. 107) are the constituents of "the transitivity structure [...] expressing] representational meaning" (p. 179). In this thesis *participant* is a label used for argument, Case, semantic role.

Basic semantic domain

The Basic semantic domain encompasses only the semantic roles Agent and Object. That is to say a Basic predicator is neither Experiential, Benefactive, (power Benefactive), Locative, Temporal, Comitative nor Holistic. It should not to be confused with the *basic sense* of a predicator.

basic sense

"The basic sense functions as the *first sense*" already recognised by the linguistic community in which it is present (Oliveira, *ibid*, p. 112, my translation). *Basic sense* should not to be

confused with the '*Basic*' semantic domain, denominated 'Basic' domain as there are Agent and Object semantic roles and none of the others, Exp, Ben, Loc, Tim, Com or Hol. A capital letter is used for the *Basic* semantic domain, small case when referring to the *basic sense*, except when it is the first word of a sentence. The basic sense is also known as the "non-metaphorical meaning that is said to be literal" by Halliday (ibid), though he prefers to refer to it as "congruent" (p.342) or "the staple meaning" (Sinclair, 1995, p. 99), "basic meaning" (Sinclair& Moon, 1995, p. v), or, "literal meaning" (ibid, p. vi) and for most instances, although not necessarily, coincides with the first dictionary sense registered. (see also 'congruent' below).

non-basic sense

The non-basic sense is then the new sense that the predicator has taken on as a result of metaphorisation.

Benefactive (Ben)

The Benefactive (Ben) is the semantic role required by a Benefactive predicator ... "the possessor of an object, or the non-agentive party in transfer of property" (Cook, 1979, p. 202), where the Benefactive semantic domain expresses a situation foregrounding "the possession and transfer of property" (Oliveira, 1999, p. 128, my translation), benefit or power.

Case grammar

According to Fillmore (1968) "Case grammar [covers] the variety of semantic relationships which can hold between nouns and other portions of sentences" (p.2) now also referred to as relational semantics (Oliveira, 1999) or relational grammar.

clause as representation

The clause as representation is the level where Halliday looks at "meaning in the sense of content" (Halliday, 1994, p. 106), which is equivalent to Oliveira's 'microscene' (1999).

context

The term *context* refers to "a 'pragmatic' theory of context" (van Dijk, 2001b, p. 16, author's inverted commas), to the outstanding information not necessarily explicit in the utterance. The term context also embodies general or world knowledge shared (or not) by the producer and receiver of the text.

co-text

Context, as used in this thesis, also refers to the *co-text*, i.e. the surrounding text, and also to information outside the text itself the "intertextual" (Meurer, 2002, 2004) information and the "contextual knowledge" (Janks, 1997, p. 331).

Comitative (Com)

The Comitative (Com), which is adopted from Fillmore (1968, p. 81) represents the semantic role of being in the company of a person(s) or animal(s), where the "Comitative domain" carries the experiential "meaning of company" (Rocha, 2003, p. 117). See semantic domain.

congruent

Halliday (1994, p. 342) refers to the basic sense as the "congruent", while Sinclair (1999, p. 95) uses the term "staple meaning".

co-referential roles

Co-referential roles are "two roles in deep structure that refer to the same person or thing" (Cook, 1979, p. 206), that is, a referent has dual roles (Brinton, 2000).

dual roles

See co-referential roles

Experiential (Exp)

A semantic domain is said to be Experiential if it encompasses a predicator which requires an Experiential role, where the Experiential semantic role (Exp), also called the Experiencer expresses "the notion of experiencing sensation, emotion, cognition or communication" (Cook, 1979, p. 202).

foregrounded

When something is foregrounded it takes the place of the most prominent meaning (the intended sense) in the microscene. Contrasting with backgrounded when a notion remains in the background.

Holistic (Hol)

The Holistic (Hol) carries the idea of a part being an element of a whole (the holistic), for example, body or organisation (Nicolacópulos, 1995).

homonym

See polysemy

Ideational

The "ideational (clause as representation)" is one of the three metafunctions Halliday uses to describe "meaning as organisation of experience" (p. 180, author's brackets).

intended sense

Each predicator has a basic sense, however, it locates its *intended sense* in its context. The text is the locus where the sense is constructed.

lexical items

A *lexical item*, according to corpus linguists (Teubert, 2005a), can be either

- c) a node word (lexicogrammatical item), or,
- d) a node word plus a minimum number of other lexicogrammatical items collocated with that node to form a *core unit*

which has ONLY ONE MEANING, that is, A SINGLE UNAMBIGUOUS meaning.

lexicogrammar

"Lexicogrammar [...] means words and the way they are arranged" (Butt et al, 1998, p. 14).

lexicogrammatical item

A *lexicogrammatical item* refers to a word, or *token*, which may or may not have more than one meaning (*type*) according to the context within which it is inserted in a particular discourse community (Teubert, 2005a).

Locative (Loc)

The Locative (Loc) pertains to the notion of physical location including "both stative and directional locatives" (Cook, 1979, p. 202).

macroscene

See "scene" below.

metafunction

Metafunctions, the ideational, interpersonal and textual, used in systemic functional linguistics, are the "three kinds of meaning [running] throughout the whole of language" (Halliday, 1994, p. 35).

metaphor

For the purposes of this thesis a metaphor is a predicator no longer in its basic sense but rather having taken on a new sense and at the same time having taken a semantic movement to another domain or subdomain, becoming a *pseudo-[domain]* predicator. A pseudo-Benefactive predicator is one that is Benefactive in its basic sense, and has metaphorised lending itself to another sense.

metaphorisation

Metaphorisation is the process of displacement from one semantic domain (the predicator's basic sense) to another (a non-basic sense), permitted by predicators lending themselves to new senses.

microscene

A microscene is an element in an utterance which "encompasses one verb-predicator ... interpreted in the light of the pertinent relationship it holds with the immediate context" (Oliveira, 1999, p. 115, my translation).

power microscene

a power microscene expresses a situation foregrounding the notion of power in utterances from a relational point of view.

power Benefactive microscene

Also referred to as power microscene, see above.

non-basic sense

Non-basic sense predicator is a metaphor, having displaced from its basic sense, lending itself to a new sense, at the same time becoming a pseudo-[domain] predicator. See basic sense above.

Object (Obj)

The semantic role Object (Obj) "is the neutral underlying theme of the state, process or action described by the verb" (Cook, 1979, p. 202). In Nicolacópulos *et al* approach (power) it is the 'element' affected by power.

participant

see argument

polysemy

There is a traditional distinction made in lexicology between homonymy and **polysemy**. Both deal with multiple senses of the same phonological word, but

polysemy is invoked if the senses are judged to be related [...] polysemous senses are listed under the same lexical entry, while homonymous senses are given separate entries (Saeed, 1997, p. 64, author's bold).

power Benefactive subdomain

the 'power Benefactive subdomain' (pBen) carries the experiential meaning of the notion of power. The power Benefactive subdomain is a notion encompassing a power Benefactive predictor within a power Benefactive microscene which in turn expresses a situation foregrounding the notion of power in utterances from a relational point of view.

power Benefactive predictor

A power Benefactive predictor is the core of an utterance bringing the notion of power to the foreground.

non-basic power Benefactive predictor

A non-basic power predictor is one which, in a power microscene, takes on the role of power Benefactive by metaphorising from its basic sense towards the power Benefactive subdomain (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a). As such it is a power Benefactive metaphor.

pseudo-power Benefactive predictor

a *pseudo-power Benefactive predictor* is a predictor which is no longer in its basic sense of power Benefactive. It has metaphorised to another sense, another semantic (sub)domain specific to the context of the microscene where it is inserted

quasi-power Benefactive

Quasi-power Benefactive represents the competition for power, in an election for example.

predicator

A predicator, sometimes referred to as a "verb-predicator" (Oliveira, 1999, p. 72, my translation) and known as a 'verb' in traditional grammar. It determines and is determined by the "quantity and quality of the semantic roles" (Rocha, 2003, p. 116, my translation) therein. The term *predicator* is used rather than *verb*, or "*verb-predicator*" (Oliveira, 1999, my translation) as the centrality of the microscene may be a "particular verb or other predicating word" (Fillmore, 1977, p. 74), a noun, adjective, *or* adverb used predicatively.

pseudo-[domain] predicator

a *pseudo-[domain] predicator* is a predicator which is no longer in its basic sense. For example, if a predicator has displaced from the Locative to the power Benefactive it is a pseudo-Locative and at the same time it is a power Benefactive metaphor.

process

a process (i) refers to a procedure, or,

(ii) is a synonym for 'to deal with'

or refers to (iii) **process as in verb types**: A process, a non-agentive event involves "basic process verbs" which "refer either to change or maintenance of a condition through time" (Moskey, 1979, p. 33).

proposition

According to Fillmore a “proposition [is] a tenseless set of relationships involving verbs and noun” (1968, p. 23). However, at that time he was working on individual sentences without taking context into consideration. This thesis follows Oliveira (1999) and uses the term “microscene” (p. 114, my translation) as the “proposition in context”.

scene

Scene is taken according to Fillmore (1977) when he writes:

The connection with the notion of ‘scenes’ can be stated this way. The study of semantics is the study of the cognitive scenes that are created or activated by utterances. Whenever a speaker uses any of the verbs related to the commercial event, for example, the entire scene of the commercial event is brought into play – is “activated”-but the particular word chosen imposes on this scene a particular perspective (p. 73).

The scene is the set of “participant roles in a situation” (ibid) and can be paralleled to a scene in a film, the characters playing their roles in a specific context, as part of the whole text (film) or ‘macroscene’. Taking the “*macro level*” as the study of the meaning of the discourse as a whole (van Dijk, 1997b, p. 9, author’s italics)

semantic configuration

A “semantic configuration” (Chafe, 1970, p. 107, Halliday, 1994, p. 108) consists of a “process, participants and (optionally) circumstantial elements [... where a ...] semantic configuration [is a] meaning structure - 'semanticized' so to speak" (Halliday, ibid) substantially similar to Fillmore's (1968) proposition, represented on paper as the “thematic grid” (Brinton, 200, p. 274; Rocha, 2003, p. 125) or “case frame” (Fillmore, 1968, p. 27; Cook, 1979, p. 202). See semantic representation.

semantic domain

A “semantic domain” represents the predicators and their associated semantic roles of a particular ‘family’ which fall within a particular category.

semantic field

The term “*semantic field*” (Halliday, 2004:164) refers to a family of related lexical items that refer to particular subjects such as culinary terms, sports, etc, organised into fields and sub-fields, encompassing synonyms, antonyms, and associated lexical items, all related to SUBJECT categories. Also referred to as “single vocabulary fields” (Fillmore, 1977, p. 64).

semantic move

When a predicator takes a semantic move it displaces from one semantic domain to another creating a metaphor. See also metaphorisation above.

semantic representation

“[S]emantic representations ... give the propositional content” (Cook, 1979, p. 200) of a *microscene*. It is a written or *textual* representation of meaning, showing the set of semantic roles interrelating with a predicator in a specific context.

semantic role

A semantic role refers to the function of nouns or other parts of speech in relation to the central predicator in the construction of a sense in a microscene. Also referred to as thematic role, and previously case.

staple sense

see basic sense and congruent.

temporal or Time (Tim)

Time (Tim) represents a relation of time (Cook, 1989, p. 196; Rocha, 1998).

thematic grid

The thematic grid (Brinton, 2000, p. 274 and Rocha, 2003, p. 125) for a proposition, or microscene, gives the content for that representation of reality (semantic configuration, or, semantic representation), portraying which semantic roles are associated with the predicator. Also called semantic grid, or case frame (Fillmore, 1968, p. 27; and Cook; 1979, p. 202).

thematic role

This is another label for semantic roles, see above.

token

The terms *token* and *type* are used in Corpus Linguistics, where *types* are the different variant words, while *tokens* are all the words in a text. Fillmore (1968) also uses the terms *types* (p.30) and *tokens* (pp.9, 29)

transitivity

"The transitivity system construes the world of experience into a manageable set of PROCESS TYPES" (Halliday, 1994, p. 106, author's capitals). This provides a tool for the relational semantic analysis of microscenes at the experiential level.

type

The terms *token* and *type* are used in Corpus Linguistics, where *types* are the different variant words, while *tokens* are all the words in a text (see token).

utterance

In formal grammar the ‘utterance’ would be referred to as the ‘sentence’, where a sentence may be comprised of more than one ‘microscene’.

The introduction ends with section 1.5. describing the contents of the chapters.

1.5. The organisation of the chapters.

Chapter one is the introduction to the research on the new metalinguistic semantic category – **the power Benefactive**. This calls for a discussion on the issue of power, the traffic of the notion of power and suggestions for a power cline, which are in Chapter two. A list of **meta-linguistic operational terms**, terms referred to further on in this thesis, is included as section 1.4. near the end of the introductory chapter.

Chapter two is the review of literature embodying notes on the issue of power; Corpus linguistics; Relational semantics; referential power items, cohesive chains and anaphoric references; systemic functional linguistics (SFL); pragmatics; metaphor and polysemy; polysemous metaphors; context of situation; followed by tenets on Case Grammar; from Cook’s matrix model (based on Fillmore’s proposition); to the 1995 UFSC case model along with the Benefactive according to Oliveira (1999) and finalizing with a discussion on Case grammar applications. This then leads to the first part of the methods chapter and the thesis proposal of the **power Benefactive semantic subdomain** (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a).

Chapter three is the methods chapter firstly laying out the tenets for the innovative **power Benefactive semantic subdomain** (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, *ibid*); and the pseudo-power Benefactive (*ibid*, 2006). Secondly, describing the procedure for the doctoral research.

Chapter four presents the analysis of 100 predicators, selected at random, organized using the Concord tool from WordSmith4.

Chapter five is a discussion of the results, conclusions and some suggestions for future research.

Modals in the elaboration of this thesis such as - *mention, introduce, reflections on* etc. infer that there is no intention of offering deep explanations of some topics yet they are included for the benefit of readers who are not familiar with that area of research. Rather there is a focus on the aspects more relevant to the scope of the thesis – the proposal of the **power Benefactive** as a metalinguistic category to recognise and register **linguistic marks of power**.

CHAPTER 2

THE REVIEW OF LITERATURE

In this chapter there is a review of literature on the *notion of power*, a justification of my drawing on *Corpus Linguistics*, followed by a review of literature on *relational semantics*; *referential power items*; then *cohesive chains* and *anaphoric references*; leading to *systemic functional linguistics*; *pragmatics*; *polysemy and metaphor*; and *context of situation*; then there is a review of earlier Case Grammar models, rounding off with references to *applications of case grammar*.

2.1. 'The Notion of Power'

We speak and write about power, in innumerable situations, and we usually know, or think we know, perfectly well what we mean. In daily life and in scholarly works, we discuss its location and its extent, who has more and who has less, how to gain, resist, seize, harness, secure, tame, share, spread, distribute, equalize, or maximise it, how to render it more effective and how to limit or avoid its effects. And yet, among those who have reflected on the matter, there is no agreement about how to define it, how to conceive it, how to study it and, if it can be measured, how to measure it. There are endless debates about such questions, which show no sign of imminent resolution, and there is not even agreement about whether all this disagreement matters (Lukes, 2005, p. 61).

There is no general consensus to the definition of 'power'. "Power is probably the most universal and fundamental concept of political analysis. It has been, and continues to be, the subject of extended and heated debate" (Hays, 1997, p. 45). As Giddens says the social sciences very often define 'power' "in terms of intent or the will, as the capacity to achieve desired and intended outcomes [... while] other writers by contrast, including both Parsons and Foucault, see power as above all, a property of society or the social community" (1984, p. 15).

Literature on 'power' ranges from **Applied linguistics** (Sealey & Carter, 2004; Prabhu, 1999), **Discourse analysis** and **Critical Discourse Analysis** (Cameron,

1992; Cotterill, 2002; Fairclough, 1989, 1992, 1995, 1996, 1997; Fairclough and Wodak, 1997; Grillo, 2005; Hunter, 1953; Janks, 1992, 1997; Mayr, 2005; Meurer, 2004; van Dijk, 1986, 1996, 1997a, 1997b, 1997c, 2001a, 2001b; van Leeuwen, 1996; Wodak, 1996), **Conversational analysis** (Brinton, 2000; Brown & Levinson, 1978, 1987; Grice, 1975; Leech, 1983; Searle, 1969, 1976; Simpson, 1989; Yule, 1996), **Drama** (Calbi, 2005), **Gender issues** (Baxter, 2003, 2007; Caldas-Coulthard; Heberle, 1997a, 1997b, 1999a; Holmes, 1995; 2000; Sutherland, 2005, Tannen, 1994; Coggeshall, 1991), **History** (Dietle & Micale, 2000; Staley, 2005), **Human sciences** (Seppänen, 1998), **Language and power** (MacKinnon, 1994; Mills, 1997; Schiffrin, 1987; 1994; Talbot et al, 2003; Thornborrow, 2002), **Literature** (Egudu, 2002), **Philosophy** (Foucault, 1980; Nietzsche, 1899; Pörn, 1970; Sandywell, 1996; Tomaselli & Louw, 1991; Weber, 1914; Weber & Eldridge, 1970), **Politics and Political Science** (Bachrach & Baratz, 1970; Doyle, 1998; Dahl, 1957; Hay, 1997, 2002; Hunt & T. Purvis, 1993; Layder, 2004; Lukes, 1974, 2005; Maddick, 1963; Richardson, 2004; Tomaselli & Louw, 1991), **Sociology and Social Sciences** (Bates, 1970; Cohen, 1989; Darwin, 1928; Durkheim, 1964 [1915]; Elias, 1998; Giddens, 1984; Honneth, 1991; Hope, 2005; Howard, 2001; Purvis, 1993; Scott, [1994] 1996, 2001; Shapiro, 2003; Simpson, 1993; Stones, 2005; Wardhaugh, 2006; Wartenberg, 1990), **Religion** (Louw & Nida, 1989), amongst others, where the fields of research may overlap.

The power Benefactive may then be of use in future research in any of these areas; and others as “there are several, even many concepts of power” (Lukes, 2005:69) Lists 1, 2, 3 and 4 show some examples. A set of concordance lines for ‘*is power*’ from the Bank of English (COBUILD) corpora (**Appendix 5**), an online Corpora of over 450 million words brought instances of power such as *age is power; ambition is power;*

influence is power; information is power; knowledge is power; reputation is power;

Knowledge-Sharing Is Power; Wealth is power; Super-wealth is super-power in List 1.

really want to do is show that **age is power**. It's like having a rank on comes from emotion. Their **ambition is power**. Nobody but Mr Hurd is a chance to show that **influence is power**". But Mr Johnson has already up in a society where **information is power** and secrecy is a way of life. But **Bacon's** assertion that **knowledge is power**. He himself embodied the life of constantly discovered, **reputation is power**. Four years ago, England went to employed?" **Knowledge-Sharing Is Power** Over the years, people have expediency". He observes: **Wealth is power. Super-wealth is super-power**

List 1: Sample of concordance lines from **Appendix 5.**

Lists 2 and 3 show links for different types of power from the Cambridge

Advanced Learner's Dictionary online

power (CONTROL)	power (PERSON WITH CONTROL)	power (OFFICIAL RIGHT)
power (ABILITY)	power (STRENGTH)	power (ELECTRICITY)
power (ENERGY)	power (IMAGE SIZE)	power (MATHEMATICS)
air power	balance of power	bargaining power
brain power	flower power	girl power
power(-assisted) steering	power base	power breakfast/lunch
power broker	power cut	power dressing
power of attorney	power plant	power point
power politics	power-sharing	power station
power structure	power struggle	power tool
power vacuum	pulling power	staying power
world power	power (sth) up	hold the balance of power
the corridors of power	the power behind the throne	do somebody a power of good
More power to your elbow!		

List 2: Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary (2006) links for power.

A significant percentage of power references in the list are either adjectives or references to mechanical power, such items have been removed from the list leaving the links in **List 3.**

a) power (CONTROL)	b) power (PERSON WITH CONTROL)	c) power (OFFICIAL RIGHT)
d) balance of power	e) bargaining power	f) power of attorney
g) power politics	h) power-sharing	i) power structure
j) power struggle	k) world power	l) hold the balance of power
m) the corridors of power	n) the power behind the throne	

List 3: Links for 'power' in the CALD

Even after the latter removals, out of context, power-sharing and power structure, could be mechanical too, referring to the sharing or structure of an electricity supply for example.

The following is a concise list of the entries for power from the CALD links above and shows *h* and *i* are examples of *power-sharing* and *power structure* being *political* power.

- a) **power (control)** - ability to control people and events: the amount of political control a person or group has in a country:
powerless (adj) - having no power: a sense of powerlessness and lack of control.
- b) **power (person with control)** - a person, organization or country that has control over others, often because of wealth, importance or great military strength:
- c) **power (official right)** - an official or legal right to do something: authority
- d) **balance of power** - a position in which both or all of the groups or people involved, usually in a political situation, have equal power:
- e) **bargaining power** - the ability of a person or group to get what they want:
- f) **power of attorney** - the legal right to act for someone else in their financial or business matters, or the document which gives someone this right
- g) **power politics** - the threat or use of military force to end an international disagreement:
- h) **power-sharing** - when two people or groups share responsibility for running a government, organization, etc
- i) **power structure** - a way in which power is organized or shared in an organization or society
- j) **power struggle** - a fierce, unpleasant or violent competition for power
- k) **world power** - a country which has enough economic or political strength to influence events in many other countries
- l) hold the **balance of power** - to be able to support one or other opposing sides in a competition, and therefore decide who will win:
- m) **the corridors of power** - the higher levels of government where the most important decisions are made
- n) **the power behind the throne** - someone who does not have an official position in a government or organization but who secretly controls it

List 4: Selected entries for power from the CALD

These four lists alone underline how vast the subject of power is. We live in a world of interconnected relations of power. “A society is the most powerful combination of physical and moral forces of which nature offers as an example” (Durkheim, [1915], 1964, p. 446). Life on Earth relates to the different layers within this world, or rather, the different worlds of the physical, biological, social and the semiotic (Halliday & Matthiessen, 2004). There is an initial primitive biological fight for the survival of the most fitted (Darwin, 1928). The moment living beings appear on Earth, they interact with one another, even if at the simplest levels of life, competing for sustenance. ‘Man’, who has not been in existence for as long as the physical world, comes at the top of the pyramid in terms of control and authority in the physical world. As animal realms develop, they become social beings, living in groups as flocks of birds, shoals of fish, etc. and ultimately acting as one. Animal groups, apes, wolves, lions, elephants, and other animal species, show a social hierarchical structure that requires some form of communication (Meurer, 2004b). For example, in less than a week, pigs confined in a sty organised a chain of command and communicated within their social environment (Barker, 2005; PWAG, 2005), forming a hierarchical “pecking order” (Howard, 2001; Hope, 2005). This is the overlap between the biological and social worlds, the strongest and most fitted of the group becoming the dominant leaders within the social hierarchy. Once “man” appears, the social world becomes controlled by language and thought perpetuating that pecking order in each discourse community.

An individual may be powerful without being consciously so. From the moment of our birth we enter into a power relationship; a baby is ‘helpless’, and yet exerts a certain power over the doting carer who attends to baby's needs. “From the day of its birth, a baby has power over its parents, not just the parents over the baby. At least, the baby has power over women as long as they attach any kind of value to it. If

not, it loses its power” (Elias, 1998, p. 116). “A parent exercises interpersonal power over a child, but also has certain legal rights that the child may grow up to accept and that will be recognised by others” (Scott, 2001, p. 30). A teenager knows s/he will be grounded by father for coming in late, or not doing homework nor chores, resulting in the teen possibly obeying the unwritten rules of his/her parent. This maybe encroaching on the teenager’s free will, as “people can in fact prefer to lead lives that are against what they may recognize to be their well-being” (Lukes, 2005, p. 82). As Durkheim says in social life “[w]e are obliged to submit ourselves to rules of conduct and of thought which we have neither made nor desired, and which are sometimes even contrary to our most fundamental inclinations and instincts” ([1915], 1964, p. 207).

“Power relations depend on both coercion and consent” (Fairclough, 1989, apud Figueiredo, 2002, p. 272). This is in agreement with the ideas of both Wartenberg (see below) and also Bierstedt when he says “Marx was influential, but ‘hardly a man of power’, while Stalin was influential because he was ‘a man of power’. Influence does not require power, and power may dispense with influence. Influence may convert a friend, but power coerces friend and foe alike” (1970, p. 13, author’s inverted commas).

According to Scott, Wartenberg writes that

While force is predominantly negative, coercion can be positive as well as negative. Through coercion it is possible to get a “subaltern”, [a term adopted from Scott (2001, p. 2)] to do something [like homework and chores] as well as to prevent them from doing it, [for example prevent a youth coming home late. This is because] the logic of a threat is precisely it positing action that an agent is able to forestall by acting in an appropriate manner (Wartenberg, 1990, p. 101, apud Scott, 2001, p. 19).

On the other hand, if an individual, facilitated by the social norms presiding at any one time, succeeds in obtaining a result from others without having to exercise any power then that individual’s “power is surely all the greater” (Lukes, 2005, p. 78). Most important of all “power is a capacity not the exercise of that capacity (it may never be, and never need be, exercised; and you can be powerful by satisfying and advancing

others' interests" (Lukes, 2005, p. 12). As Olsen says "Power is not a 'thing' possessed by social actors, but rather a dynamic process that occurs in all areas of social life" (1970, p. 3, author's inverted commas). For example, the simple presence of a policeman may deter someone from committing a crime. Knowing that a teacher may punish a student for not submitting work, might encourage the student to do it.

This concept of threat goes beyond parental coercion, relating to political situations as will be seen later (cf. **pBen microscenes 12, 72 and 92** in the analysis). "A threat to use force alters the action alternatives open to a person by changing the reward and cost outcomes that are associated with particular courses of action [...] Submission to threatened violence is at the margins of social power" (Scott, 2001, p. 18). Also according to Scott

whatever may be the internal powers of command that are available to a state, its power in relation to other states is a matter of the distribution of resources between them and the constraint that each is able to exercise. In normal circumstances, therefore, the sheer existence of military force - and the implicit or anticipated threat of its use - may give states a powerful position of constraint within the international system of states (ibid, p. 79-80).

This is documented in the specially built PhD corpus, drawn from newsreports on warfare, with for example, foreign troops protecting troubled lands.

Political and judicial issues are considered to be high status power relations, family issues are at a lower status level, and rather more interpersonal power. However, "the interpersonal power relations between a husband and a wife are affected by the legal rights and responsibilities of each of them in the wider political and economic structures in which they are involved" (Scott, 2001, p. 30).

Interpersonal power is rooted in face-to-face contexts of interaction. It is based not on the content or source of an order, but on the personal attributes of the individual making it as these are perceived by individuals who have a direct knowledge of one another. People are able to relate to each other as individual selves, and not simply as the occupants of social positions with authorised or delegated power. Interpersonal power operates through the personal resources of physique and personality that individuals bring to their encounters and through the various resources on which some depend and to which others can give access. It is in this way that one person can make another bend to her or his will

and so become a principal [or dominator] in an interpersonal power relationship (Scott, 2001, p. 28).

Boundaries and limits, and power distribution are set up at the beginning of a relationship and these are not fixed; they change as the context changes, vary as another person enters or leaves the scene. The power of society manifests the moment a child is introduced to that society, and submitted to the unwritten rules and regulations of that society. As children become adults and experience different environments they learn (or not) to understand and respect the rules of each place; learn to act according to those unwritten rules, “where the power of the individual is confined by a range of specifiable circumstances” (Giddens, 1984, p. 15). Scott suggests

Household and family structures are the crucial contexts in which interpersonal power is honed and exercised, producing patterns of power that differ markedly from those that arise in the formal, public relations of the State and the economy that they, nevertheless, articulate with in determinate ways (2001, p. 136).

By way of illustration a child might act to get a toy at the same time as another child, the strongest, being physically more powerful is better fitted to making a difference to his surroundings, trying to grab a toy off the other child until an adult intervenes to teach the niceties of sharing. The second child wants that toy, so “The desired state of affairs that is the goal of the manipulation is different from the current state of affairs” (Givon, 1993, p. 264, author’s italics). The adult intervention affects the other participants, as in accordance with Scott’s words “The exercise of power and the possibility of resistance to it establish a dialectic of control and autonomy, a balance of power that limits the actions of the participants in their interplay with each other” (2001, p. 2). The power distribution swings from the strongest child to the presiding adult. As Giddens says “[a]ction depends upon the capability of the individual to ‘make a difference’ to a pre-existing state of affairs or course of events. An agent ceases to be such if he or she loses the capability to ‘make a difference’, that is to exercise some sort

of power” (1984, p. 14, author’s inverted commas). While Scott says “There is a given distribution of power within any society, and some agents have more of this power than others. Struggles over the distribution of power will always involve both winners and losers” (2001, p. 7). Power dichotomies appear in any interaction with another being and go on interminably through life, via family, the education system, all sectors of society where rules are set. School has the power to acknowledge behaviour as socially acceptable or not; able to act “being able to intervene in the world, or to refrain from such intervention, with the effect of influencing a specific process or state of affairs” (Giddens, *ibid*, p. 14).

Language, alongside biological development, first emerged because of the need for communication. Language, as a semiotic system, is not only constituted by but also constitutes the social world. It positions us, and creates identities and relations between people. There are systems of possible choices based on social perspectives, where text, as a semiotic system of written or spoken language, connects to the social role, producing meaning (Halliday & Matthiessen, *ibid*; Meurer, *ibid*) and making an impact on ‘social’ interaction. Text reflects social identities, as relations are created between people, and levels of dominance become apparent as a pecking order emerges.

When Lukes says

social life can only properly be understood as an interplay of power and structure, a web of possibilities of power and structure, a web of possibilities for agents, whose nature is both active and structured, to make choices and pursue strategies within given limits, which in consequence expand and contract over time (2005, p. 68-69)

he compares this situation to Marx’ (1976 [1867]) comment on the interplay between the capitalist and the worker. The force behind the desire to work is the worker’s need to earn, [hinting, I would say, at a dialectic relationship between production and income] as “it is possible to rely on his dependence on capital, which springs from the

conditions of production themselves, and is guaranteed in perpetuity by them” (Marx, *ibid*, p. 899, *apud* Lukes, *ibid*, p. 156).

Power relations can also be seen in different areas of study including from a social constructive viewpoint. Moita-Lopes (2000) asserts that “social identities are discursively constructed [and he takes] otherness, constitutivity and situatedness as crucial features to understand discourse” (p. 199). He suggests that exchanging dialogue with others involves the establishment of power relations in a particular social context, where knowledge and power define social identities. As such, discursive interaction is a tool by which means people co-participate in an attempt to “construct meaning and knowledge” (*ibid*). Hence, the information passed on in a social situation constructs and legitimises the participants’ social identity. This author argues that both “micro and macro socio-historical aspects” (*ibid*) are indispensable in diagnosing how meaning in the world is constructed (and represented semantically), and how individual identities become part of the social surroundings.

On the subject of discourse, Givón (1993) talks about manipulative discourse, he says “manipulative speech-acts are verbal acts through which the speaker attempts to get the hearer to act” (p. 264), a form of coercion, and in turn power Benefactive.

Fairclough (1992) discusses discourse as social practice “in relation to ideology and to power, and places discourse within a view of power as hegemony, and a view of the evolution of power relations as hegemonic struggle” (p. 86-87). Power manifests as a social (often unsociable) practice exerted by written, verbal, or non-verbal manipulation or brute force. Power gives a being, or body (group or institution) manipulation capacities. Yet, the swing of the pendulum of power in an everyday conversation between friends of equal standing may be an eventuality. “Domination in the quite general sense of power, i.e. of the possibility of imposing one's own will upon the behaviour of other persons, can emerge in the most diverse forms” (Roth & Wittich, [1968], 1978, p. 942). Powerful language can be used to (i) *defend*

ones rights. Power of persuasion via language may (ii) *cause someone to agree* on a decision, with an opinion or *to do* something, and (iii) *energy to get on with things* are all forms of personal power. On the topic of personal power, if somebody is powerful they have influence over others, they control others. Personal power may be

- (a) physical power to move or hold someone or something,
- (b) mental – to solve a problem, situation, calculation,
- (c) psychological – power to face a difficult situation, help others,
- (d) it could be a question of (self)confidence; in turn a reflection of
- (e) having friends and support.
- (f) A powerful imagination, useful for inventions and producing ideas, which could give rise to
- (g) resources and financial stability which contribute to personal power, along with
- (h) knowledge, training and qualifications (Butler & Keith, 1999).

According to Elias

For many people, the term 'power' has a rather unpleasant flavour. The reason is that during the whole development of human societies, power ratios have usually been extremely unequal; people or groups of people with relatively great power chances used to exercise those power chances to the full, often very brutally and unscrupulously for their own purposes (1998):115).

Records of elite control go back centuries, in accordance with Diderot (1754)

The term control is formed of two words [contre] against and [role] role or use. Registers of *control* in general were not at all public, that is to say they were not communicated indifferently to all sources of people, rather only to parties belonging to the arts, & their heirs, successors; for that reason everything intended for the public had different registers of implications contained in them, communicated to those who inquired (p. 148, author's italics, my translation⁸).

meaning not everyone had access to the truth. Information was given only to those who asked for it, but, even then, it was censored according to the person's rank in society.

⁸ Ce terme contrôle a été formé des deux mots contre, rôle.
Les registres de *contrôle* en général ne sont point publics, c'est-à-dire qu'on ne les communique pas indifféremment à toutes sortes de personnes mais seulement aux parties dénommées dans les arts, & à leurs héritiers, successeurs ou ayons cause; à la différence des registres des insinuations, qui sont destinés à rendre public tout ce qui y est contenu, & que par cette raison on communique à tous ceux qui le requièrent (Diderot, 1754, p. 148)

In the 17th century Spinoza wrote

one man has another in his power when he holds him in bonds; when he has disarmed him and deprived him of the means of self-defence or escape; [holding power over his subaltern's body] when he has inspired him with fear; or when he has bound him so closely by a service that he would rather please his benefactor than himself, and rather be guided by his benefactor's judgement than by his own [holding power over his subaltern's mind as well, but only for as long as ...] the fear or hope remains (Spinoza, 1958 [1677], p. 273-5, apud Lukes, 2005, p. 86, square brackets added).

Power manifests as a social practice. In any specific cut of society, each role prescription incorporates an identifiable power role, which may be interchangeable as the social practice progresses. Roth & Wittich say

a position ordinarily designated as “dominating” can emerge from the social relations in the drawing-room, as well as in the market, from the rostrum of a lecture-hall, as well as from the command post of a regiment, from an erotic or charitable relationship as well as from scholarly discussion or athletics ([1968], 1978, p. 943, authors' inverted commas).

The constitution of society is an abstract concept, where the structure, like power, is not something tangible and visible. Rules and resources, creating a duality of structure are the mainstay of society repeatedly alluded to in Giddens' structuration theory (Cohen, 1989; Giddens, 1984; Meurer, 2002, 2004; Stones, 2005). The rules/resources are constantly activated within and across nations, at home, the church, in friendly or antagonistic gatherings, etc. Depending on the complex interrelations between norms and significations, allocation and authorisation implicated in such social environments or contexts, different identities/role prescriptions are instantiated, different relations are established, and representations of 'reality' and thus different significations are created. These aspects of social life mutually influence one another leading to socially created, interconnected structures of legitimation, structures of signification and structures of domination represented in **Figure 2** (Meurer, 2004, p. 87, drawing on Giddens, 1984).

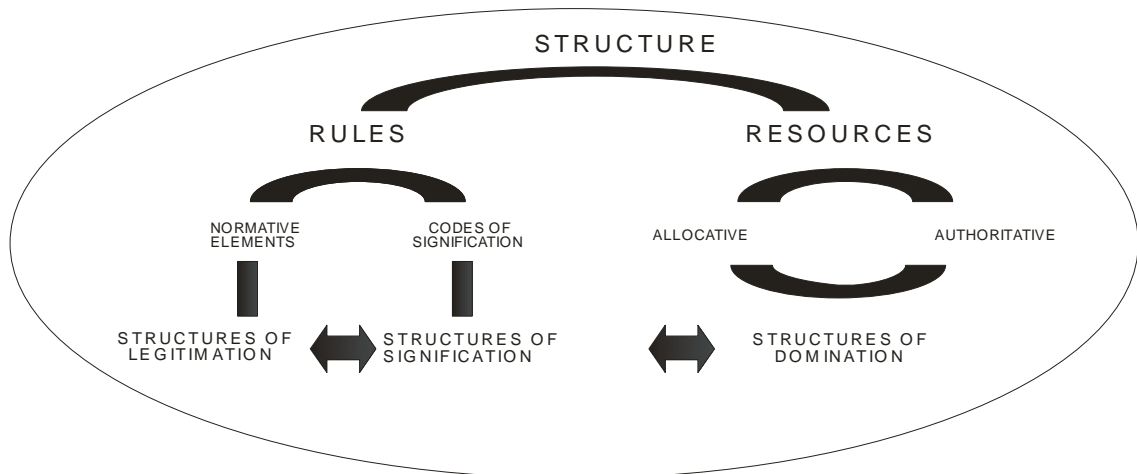


Figure 2: Rules/resources: generating legitimation, signification, and domination (ibid)

This figure represents how the structure of power in society can be categorised as resultant of a) rules, that is by legislation and signification, and b) resources. Those resources could be any of the key resources highlighted below.

According to Lukes, Allen observes that although

the ability to exercise power may be enhanced by the possession of certain key resources (**money, self-esteem, weapons, education, political influence, physical strength, social authority, and so on**), this ability should not be conflated with those resources themselves (Allen, 1999, p. 10, apud Lukes, 2005, p. 157, my bold).

Other resources could be food, grain or water, depending on the circumstances at any given moment in history suggested by the concordance lines in **Table 1.** from **Appendix**

5.

And food is a weapon; **food is power** and food is wealth. It's all **Where famine reigns, food is power.** Its distribution is job careful way. In a way, **grain is power** in the Soviet Union. If you as important as land. **Water is power here,**" he says. Nowadays some

Table 1: Concordance lines from The Bank of English

On the occasion of a resource becoming scarce it turns into an allocative resource (cf. **Figure 2.**, above) and a source of power for those in possession. Role prescription places a person or body in a hierarchical position of power, or not, in a certain social practice. The status, an authoritative resource, of the person/entity is one of power, in comparison

to another in the given context. A participant in a power role in one context might be subservient in another. An immigrant, as a socially disadvantaged worker, could, on the contrary, be the *topdog* in the private sphere of his household (Janks & Ivanic, 1992). In much the same way Scott writes:

At its simplest, power is a social relation between two agents, who may usefully be called the ‘principal’ and the ‘subaltern’. A principal is the paramount agent in a power relationship, while a subaltern is the subordinate agent. The principal has or exercises power, while the subaltern is affected by this power. Concretely, of course, such relations are rarely so one-sided as this implies. A principal in one relationship may be a subaltern in another, and subalterns often exercise countervailing power to that of their principal. Analytically, however, the dynamics of power relations can initially be understood in terms of this relatively simple relation of principal to subaltern (2001, p. 2)

In other words depending on the context somebody who is the dominator in one situation can also be the dominated in another. A doctor may become a dentist’s patient, changing identity. A professor may decide to study for another qualification and assume the student role. The focus of this thesis is the notion that there are different strata of power, and the following section projects a possible cline.

2.2. A power cline

The 2005 publication on the power Benefactive (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos) concentrated on hierarchical power in politics, war fare and terrorism. The corpus for this thesis is built up from newsreports on these topics, with the expectation of coming across power scenes for analysis. The aim is to demonstrate the adequacy of the power Benefactive to identify and register linguistic marks of power, showing up in explicit power relationships. The research on power was narrowed down to focus on political power and “state power – including Government, control of the police and the armed forces [... within] social institutions such as education, the law, religions” (Fairclough, 1989, p. 33). However, bearing in mind a comment that once a linguistic category is put into use it would be interesting to examine whether it is

applicable in other areas (Heberle, personal communication, 2004) continued research brought us to realise the possibility of a power cline. The whole range of social systems, each with their embedded systemic power relationships, are on one plane of existence at any one moment in time (Giddens, 1984). There can be a shift in power from one person to another on a single plane. The “power balances, like human relationships in general, are bi-polar at least, and usually multi-polar” (Elias, 1998, p. 116). “Force, manipulation, signification, and legitimisation are elementary forms of power. They are the elements from which more fully developed power relations may be built” (Scott, 2001, p. 15). Reflecting on the words of Conley & O’Barr

“*Power* is the answer to the question of *why* some people get things, while others do not - why, in other words, the haves have what they do. Stated in this way, the study of power must deal with the fundamental issue of inequality, asking why it exists and how it is maintained (1998, p. 8, authors’ italics).

Inequality gives rise to a *principal* and a *subaltern*, however this ratio -

principal’s power : subaltern’s power

is not a constant. The balance of power shifts at the slightest alteration of any variable.

As Cameron et al write

power is not monolithic – the population does not divide neatly into two groups, the powerful and the powerless – from which it follows that ‘empowering’ cannot be a simple matter of transferring power from one group to the other, or giving people power when before they had none. Precisely because power operates across so many social divisions, any individual must have a complex and multiple identity: the person becomes an intrinsic mosaic of differing power potential in different social relations (1992, p. 20).

Power status can be thought of as high status embracing (i) hierarchical positions of power and (ii) interactants in explicit displays of force or control.

2.2.1. Criteria for hierarchical power Benefactive predicators.

The following criteria for power Benefactive participants in a microscene were described in earlier research (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a, 2005b) and continue valid, as

(i) hierarchical positions of power

- The king or queen of a country invested with power.
- A Bishop or Archbishop in relation to a newly appointed vicar.
- The Prime Minister, Members of Parliament, whether a position is inherited within the House of Lords or attained by vote in the House of Commons down to the lower rungs of the ladder such as councillors, again voted in.

(ii) bodies in a position of power such as

- taking control of a person, people or place/s or a situation. The place could vary from an outpost, to property, a city or even a country.
- the dominator in a hijack, kidnap, enslavement, arrest, capture, that is, where someone loses their freedom, either of movement or behaviour (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005b, 2006; Steele Weickert, 2005;).

At that time research had been restricted to “institutional power” (Thornborrow, 2002, Baxter, 2005; Budach, 2005). As Talbot et al say “according to Fairclough, positions of institutional power are bestowed on some to the exclusion of others” (Talbot et al., 2003) differentiating between individuals. They also quote Cameron as saying

“there are many simultaneous dimensions of power – for instance class, ‘race’, ‘ethnicity’, gender, generation, sexuality, subculture ... theories which privilege one dimension (most commonly, class) as the ‘ultimate’ source of power are inadequate to capture the complexities of social relations (Cameron et al, 1992, p. 19, apud Talbot et al, 2003, p. 2, author’s inverted commas)

and ‘race’, ‘ethnicity’, gender, generation, sexuality, and subculture are birth rights and are distinct from institutional power. The following section considers interpersonal power

2.2.2. Criteria for interpersonal power Benefactive predictors

In this 2007 research interpersonal power is recognised where; people of *no identifiable* status of institutional power may account for the power Benefactive role. Power status can be thought of as low status in situations where the power difference is small and readily reversible, such as the relationship between husband and wife; parent and baby; neighbours; pupils. Whenever two beings are interrelating there is a power relationship, no two people are identical. Power, whether social, political, corporate or intellectual, exercised or inferred, is described only by its sphere of influence. Power, as a result of social interaction, cannot exist in isolation, for there to be a 'principal' or 'dominant' figure, there has to be a 'subaltern' or 'dominated' participant. The direction of dominancy, the power relationship in a single interaction, emerges according to the unique set of circumstances at a given moment in time and space.

Power relationships depend on the context, no matter whether institutional power or physical strength is in question, the final count might depend on the interpersonal power, in the following situations, for example:

- i) Although a president is of higher ranking than his secretary, the secretary would account for the power Benefactive role when s/he tells the president to move out of the way.
- ii) during a discussion or argument between two peers, the physically weaker person might persuade the stronger to do something. The Agentive participant doing the persuasion accounts for the power Benefactive role in this context.

There are those with more power, those with less power, the powerful and the powerless, and those who cede to others. Yet on ceding to another person, in say an argument, might actually reveal the personal power of being able to allow the other to take the advantage.

Reiterating, power is constituted in various aspects within society. As suggested above

a) A person may be *invested* with power, merited according to recognition, where a person is voted into a position of power, for instance a president, or mayor, by voters who recognise his/ her capabilities for a specific post in a legal institution; a person elected is considered as being a power beneficiary even if s/he has not yet begun his/her mandate, e.g.:

pBen microscene 36 (cf. Chapter 4 below)

The comments come as *Palestinians (Agt-del)* head to the polls to **ELECT** (201) a successor (*pBen*) to their deceased president Yasser Arafat. (*Obj*)

b) Achievement as a result of evaluation such as a qualifying examination; for a project proposal; high quality product or services performed; a managing director; headmaster; selected by consensus of a closed community as opposed to the general public; all place a participant as power Benefactive.

c) A person may otherwise be born into a position, such as a king or queen; prince or princess; Lord or Lady; or gain status by marrying one of the latter, and this is an example of authoritative resources.

d) A person may be at the top of a structure of domination and considered powerful in a given community by means of allocative resources for financial reasons or by demonstration of knowledge. As Wodak wonders “Who possesses information? ... information issues are an important indicator of power structures, since the privileged possession of information bestows power on the possessor” (1996, p. 88-89, author’s dots).

In the 2005 research (*ibid*) predicators such as *demand, insist on, deny, persuade, question, urge* had not been considered as power Benefactive, but are now, at the end of 2007, recognised as generating power microscenes, whatever the *institutional*

status of power of the social agents. A person who *demand*s would be expected to be further up in a hierarchy than the one demanded of. The interpersonal relationship could be one of equality, two siblings for example, where the *demand*er taking the (temporary) role of the more powerful participant in the interaction fills the semantic role of power Benefactive. To *demand* is to forcefully ask someone *for something* or *to do something*, be they siblings (in a low status power relationship), or politicians (in a high status institutional power relationship) as in **pBen microscene 32**:

Chavez (Agt=pBen) has DEMANDED (435) an apology from Uribe (Obj)

The power Benefactive applies to the whole range of levels of power status relationships. The analyst will recognise who accounts for the power Benefactive role from the context of the microscene in question, illustrated in the words of Figueiredo, (2002, p. 261), on the judicial system and “disciplinary power”. Drawing on Foucault (1991) she talks about the power to punish, the insertion of “the power to punish more deeply into the social body” (Figueiredo, *ibid*, p. 261). Judicial powers in ancient times dealt out physical punishment, today judicial powers pass sentences according to criminal law in the direction of discipline rather than physical torture. There has been a move from a public spectacle to the “certainty and reach of punishment” (*ibid*), aiming at an effective punishment discouraging crime, by means of the subtle power of “abstract consciousness” (*ibid*). Sentence has apparently moved from, for example, a public flogging, to the passing of a prison sentence, the result of “disciplinary power” (*ibid*).

Disciplinary power comes from a continuum of the exertion of power at three levels, each one having its specific power relation. “(1) *hierarchical observation*; (2) *normalising judgement*; and (3) *examination*” (Foucault, 1991, *apud* Figueiredo, *ibid*, author’s italics). During *hierarchical observation* Judges have “the hierarchical

right to observe the social and sexual behaviour of men and women, [that is the power to do so. Within *normalising judgement* ...] doctors, psychiatrists and probation officers [have the power to offer] evaluations” (Figueiredo, *ibid*) on the basis of their hierarchical level of expertise. The results of such observations are during *examination* examined by the jury, empowered to give a verdict – *guilty* or *not guilty*, the former leading to the disciplinary action taken against offenders. There is one stratum of power embedded within another.

As an introduction to power scenes items in the following narrative are highlighted where power microscenes are generated, where “the police, for example, have the power to use reasonable force by virtue of the authority with which the law has empowered them” (Butler & Keith, 1999, p. 29).

2.3. A power scene analysis of an article on Forensic linguistics

The following text, is taken from a “case of concealed dialogue” (Coulthard, 2002, *my red bold*) and was chosen for this thesis as an example of a social event explicitly portraying power scenes as the police exercise their power during an arrest. The red highlights are my addition pointing out the power Benefactive predicators:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| i. <i>surround</i> | vii. <i>shoot</i> |
| ii. <i>arrest</i> | viii. <i>be found guilty</i> |
| iii. <i>give oneself up</i> | ix. <i>be sentenced to life imprisonment</i> |
| iv. <i>kill</i> | x. <i>be sentenced to death</i> |
| v. <i>charge</i> | xi. <i>be executed</i> |
| vi. <i>be under arrest</i> | xii. <i>overturn a verdict.</i> |

These were identified during analysis using the Nicolacópulos et al model and are discussed below.

One November evening in 1952 two teenagers, Derek Bentley aged 19 and Chris Craig aged 16, tried to break into a warehouse. They were seen, as they climbed up onto the roof, by a woman who was putting her daughter to bed. She called the police, who arrived soon afterwards and **surrounded** the building. Three unarmed officers, two in uniform the other in plain clothes, went up on the roof to **arrest** the boys. Bentley immediately **gave himself up**. Craig drew a gun, started shooting and eventually **killed** a police officer.

Bentley was jointly **charged** with murder, even though he **had been under arrest** for some considerable time when the officer was **shot**. At the trial, which lasted only two days, both boys **were found guilty**. Craig because he was legally a minor, was **sentenced to life imprisonment**; Bentley was **sentenced to death** and **executed** shortly afterwards. Bentley's family fought for a generation to **overturn** the guilty verdict and they were eventually successful 46 years later in the summer of 1998. The evidence which was the basis for both Bentley's conviction and the successful appeal was in large part linguistic and will be the focus of the rest of this chapter (p. 27, my highlights).

- (i) By *surrounding* the building the police are preventing anybody getting past,
- (ii) by *arresting* the boys they are legally placing them under their control in the name of the law
- (iii) by *giving himself up* Bentley is placing himself under the power of the police
- (iv) *killing* somebody is an act of ultimate power over the victim as s/he has their life taken away
- (v) when a court *charges* a person power is being exerted on that individual
- (vi) being *under arrest* an individual is legally restrained under the power of the judicial system
- (vii) like kill, being *shot* signifies the victim has been overpowered, and hurt, or possibly killed
- (viii) the power to decide on the verdict *guilty* or not guilty, rests in the hands of the jury
- (ix) the governing body is the power presiding over the court of Law, exercising that power to *sentence* an individual, be that to life imprisonment or death
- (x) *life imprisonment* is confinement by law to a restricted area
- (xi) *death by execution* is a legal penalty, where life is removed by the power of the judicial system
- (xii) the 'guilty verdict' of (viii) is an issue of power, by *overturning* that verdict, revindicating that act of power generates a power microscene. *Overturn* is an example of a power Benefactive negative (pBen_{neg}) as the power polarity is reversed.

On the topic of the judicial system “the criminal justice system relies both on forms of legal punishment (loss of money, freedom or life) as well as discipline (social exposure, loss of social values/respect, discrimination)” (Figueiredo, 2002, *ibid*, p. 266). Nietzsche refers to the “power of punishment [as the] the executive power [of the] authorities” (Nietzsche, 1899, p. 73).

The objective of this information on power issues is to list manifestations of power via *power* itself, authority, coercion, dominancy, force, manipulation, among others, bearing in mind that “[b]etween every point of a social body, between a man and a woman, between the members of a family, between a master and his pupil, between every one who knows and every one who does not, there exist relations of power” (Foucault, *apud* Honneth, 1991, p. 323). “A search for a language of power is inevitably, a search for the coin of the realm, the currency (symbolic and actual) by which power is understood, valued, described, and analyzed and upon which the current face of power is stamped” (Staley, 2005, p. 339).

Summing up, the present thesis proposes a cline for power status in society incorporating various strata of society, to mention a few:

political power (Presidents, monarchy, MPs, congressmen, political leaders)

legal power (police officers, judges, parents/guardians of minors)

moral/ethical power (religious leaders, parents, elders, teachers, ethical committees, codes of conducts).

physical power (boxers, spouse batterers).

financial power, (banks, rich people and families, powerful companies in takeovers – corporate takeovers),

verbal power (the ability to win an argument, as mentioned above – this could include con artists, salespeople, politicians, pastors),

invested/appointed/ institutional power (corporate leaders, school prefects, supervisors and managers, government ministers),

emotional power (children over their parents – parent’s battles to discipline their children)

Spiritual power (spiritual entities – God, Jesus, Krishna, the Holy Spirit, Buddha, whoever – exert power over those who believe in them).

The above may be included in the diagram of the power cline on page 47 below. The complexity of such a cline would be a challenge for a future project, having concepts overlapping with the structure of rules and resources and dominancy in Figure 2 (p. 48, above). “Without exception every sphere of social action is profoundly influenced by structures of dominancy” (Roth & Wittich, [1968], 1978, p. 941). For each slice of society at any one time and place there are an infinite number of power relationships, and not a simple task to draw. In fact as Cameron et al express “if the ‘real’ centre of power is impossible to locate and we cannot identify who has power and who has not, how can we talk blithely about “empowering research” as if it were easy to see where power lies and to alter its distribution” (1992, p. 20, authors’ inverted commas), or decide who has ultimate power in an interaction.

A significant point of this research is that the analysis is done on the basis of the umbrella term *Benefactive* which covers its subdivision - the *power Benefactive* – where any level, or status of power is power Benefactive no matter where it lies in the social strata. The power Benefactive identifies and registers linguistic marks of power.

Diagram 1 is a preliminary classification. This cline is a prototype for a chart form, to be projected for workable application in the real world, with flexibility to account for all situations. Most important of all there is a definable quality, a level of power status, and *that* is context / co-text / situation driven. A participant at one point on the cline may be the *principal*, and at a different point on the cline the *subaltern*, for example, in the home a grandmother would be at the top of the ‘age is power’ hierarchy, yet become the subaltern receiving IT instructions from her grandson. The child’s

computer knowledge acting as an allocative resource, i.e., 'knowledge is power'. As Harvey & Mills recommend

For effective use of power at the low end of this continuum, [interaction between peers, for example] it is maintained that effective power must be based on other attributes of the wielder of power such as special knowledge, abilities, or contacts he may have (1970, p. 202, my square brackets).

In the real world such a continuum, or cline, might also help account for an individual's multiple power Benefactive role taken into account in the analysis. It would be interesting to see how a full model might be framed. Limiting my research to institutional power served to focus this thesis, in reality the issue of power is far more complex and beyond the scope of this venture, except as suggestions for future endeavours. However, the concepts introduced in this section are taken into consideration in determining the 'dominators' and 'dominated' during the analysis of the microscenes. This signifies that this approach is research on power seen from a semantic-pragmatic angle.

The diagram of the power cline shows possible strata of society on the vertical axis: *home, school, commerce, institutions*, etc. The horizontal relationships portray dialectical liaisons such as *parent-child* in the home; *doctor-patient* in a medical institution, or context. Others may be added, for example: *Queen-subjects* in the context of monarchy; *Prime Minister-councillors* in a political context.

In the diagram the *traffic warden* is invested with authoritative resources having power over the *driver* to make sure that the *rules* of transit are followed. The educator (grandchild) has allocative resources in terms of knowledge, and is the principal passing on information to the learner (grandmother), then in the role of subaltern. **Diagram 1** is the *starting* point of a complex power cline.

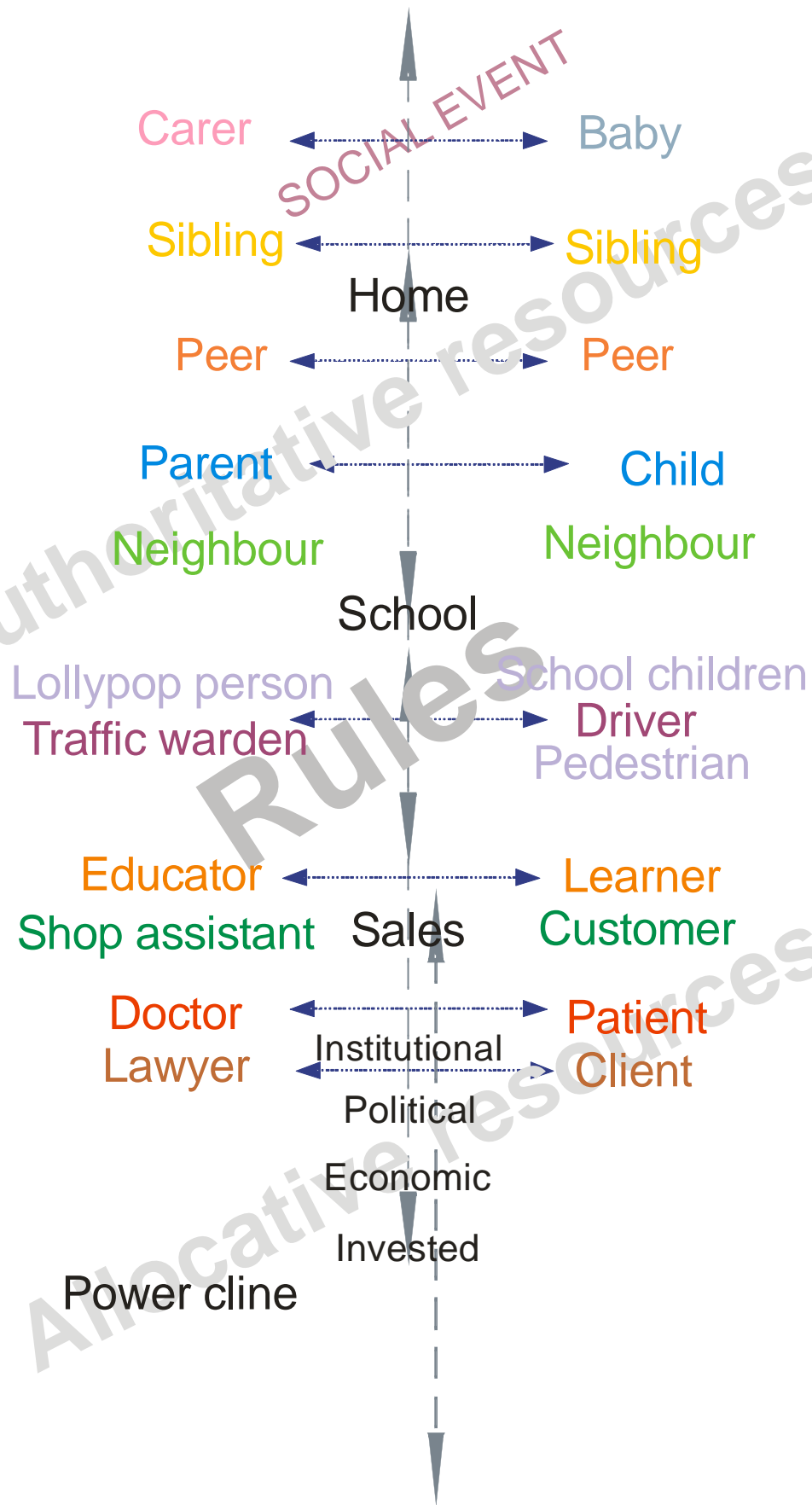


Diagram 1: A prototype for a power cline

2.4. Corpus linguistics

Having the opportunity in 2005 of attending workshops (Sinclair; Hunston; Danielsson) and classes (Groom, 2005) on Corpus Linguistics at the University of Birmingham I came to appreciate its usefulness for retrieving data, building my own corpus and organizing the data for analysis, “in describing how a language works and what language can show about the context in which it is used” (Hunston, 2002, p. 23). The philosophy behind Corpus Linguistics also built on my general perception of language.

Rather than either Corpus Linguistics, or Corpus Linguistics software analysing data for you, it lays out your data making it easier to perceive certain aspects, and provide statistical evidence of the results. “Many of the advantages of the approach come from the use of large, on-line corpora: the use of computers for analysis; and the integration of quantitative and qualitative analyses” (Biber, 1998, p. 238).

A corpus is defined in terms of both its form and its purpose. Linguists have always used the word: *corpus* to describe a collection of naturally occurring examples of language, consisting of anything from a few sentences to a set of written texts or tape recordings, which have been collected for linguistic study (Hunston, *ibid*, p. 2, author’s italics).

Corpus Linguistic researchers do not simply make use of corpora to provide examples but explore them in a systematic fashion, without decontextualising the text. Considering language to be a social phenomenon, implying a distinct separation between understanding and meaning, Corpus Linguistics attempts to identify various uses of words and phrases in correlation to various contexts (Teubert, 2001). “Corpus linguistics is less interested in the single text element or word than in the semantic interaction between text elements and context” (*ibid*, p. 137). Corpus linguistics theory embodies the notion of semantics, where meaning and form go side by side.

Meaning [is] inseparable from the form, that is, the word, the phrase, the text. In this theory the meaning does not exist *per se*. Corpus linguistics rejects the ubiquitous concept of the meaning being ‘pure information,’ encoded into language by the sender and

decoded by the receiver. Corpus linguistics, instead, holds that content cannot be separated from form, rather they constitute the two aspects under which text can be analysed. The word, the phrase, the text is both form and meaning (Teubert, *ibid*, p. 128).

It does not have anything to do with *what* semantic-pragmatic approach is used. As any Corpus Linguist will tell you a Corpus will only show you the contents, not tell you anything about them. As Hunston (*ibid*) reminds us

a corpus by itself can do nothing at all, being nothing other than a store of used language. Corpus access software, however, can re-arrange that store so that observations of various kinds can be made. If a corpus represents, very roughly and partially, a speaker's experience of language, the access software re-orders that experience so that it can be examined in ways that are usually impossible. A corpus does not contain new information about language, but the software offers us a new perspective on the familiar (p. 3).

WordSmith4 (Scott, 2004) is such an access software, and the **WordSmith4 Concord tool** has been used to organise my corpus, having a set of instructions to

- i) read the content of a corpus
- ii) search for *a string of characters*
- iii) list all the sentences containing the string, one on each line
- iv) place the string in the centre

This list of sentences is a set of concordance lines for that *string of characters*, this will be further understood from the methodology section later on.

Chafe (1992) recognises “the importance of corpus linguistics to understanding the nature of language [...he believes corpora] are an absolutely crucial part of the linguistic enterprise” (p. 80). An examination of corpora helps the analyst to visualize how words combine with and relate to one another, an important factor in the research implementing a relational semantic model. Relational semantics is approached in the following section.

2.5. Relational semantics

“The meaning of a sentence, or process, is a hierarchical network of different kinds of *relations* among different kinds of roles” (Prandi, 2004, p. 56, my

italics). Relational analysis is “an examination of the variety of semantic relationships which can hold between nouns and other portions of sentences” (Fillmore, 1968, p. 2). “Fillmore (1968) developed case grammar to represent the consistent meaning *relations* that exist in the underlying structure of sentences” (Anselmi & Haberlandt, 1992, p. 54, my italics). “[T]he description of any feature *is* its relationship to all the others [...] it is important to think of every section as being part of the network as a whole” (Halliday, 1994, p. xxvii, author’s italics). The Nicolacópulos *et al* approach considers the way the predicators and participants in the semantic roles *relate* to one another, where the relational semantic analysis considers the ‘whole’ including the ideological, cultural and historical aspects of a text (cf. Introduction). The *whole* refers to, in this thesis, the written text along with what is happening in the world at that given moment in time and space, involving the writers’ and readers’ shared knowledge. This approach relates the unit of text under analysis, i.e. each microscene, to the intertextual and, in Meurer’s (2002, 2004) terms, “intercontextual” factors of that instance in the specific context in which it is inserted to understand the knowledge being represented. As Kent & Kent (ibid) say

Because knowledge encompasses all sorts of complex relationships between various concrete or abstract entities, the acquisition of any piece of knowledge requires the identification of the objects being put in relationship to one another through semantical relations (1996, p. 44).

This will be a subjective analysis but by following the tenets of the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach it becomes more objective leading to a general consensus to the idea being construed. The model addresses “how the elements of the sentence are related semantically and how they function in relation to one another” (Donnelly, 1994, p. 52). This is in keeping with Fillmore’s idea that

The case notions comprise a set of universal, presumably innate, concepts which identify certain types of judgement human beings are capable of making about the events that are

going on around them, judgements about such matters as who did it, who it happened to, and what changed (1968, p. 24)

The “strength of case grammar is the fact that it is a common sense approach: words and phrases are analyzed according to their function and relation to one another” (Donnelly, *ibid.*, p. 71). “[C]ase relations (or cases) or thematic functions, are nothing more than the resultant semantic relationship between the predicator and argument” (Borba, 1996, p. 91, my translation, author’s parentheses). As Halliday says “[i]t is the structure as a whole, the total configuration of functions, that construes, or realizes, the meaning. [...] It is the relation between all these that constitutes the structure” (1994, p. 35). By *these* he refers to what in my terms would be the features of *predicators* and the *participants* in the semantic roles. When Halliday and Hasan say “the INTERPRETATION of some element in the discourse is dependent on that of another. The one PRESUPPOSES the other, in the sense that it cannot be effectively decoded except by recourse to it” (1976, p. 4, authors’ emphasis) they are describing not only relational semantics but also cohesion as a relationship (cf. 2.7). Cohesion may occur as the presence of referential items running through a text. As part of the sequence of the dialogue on cohesion the next section introduces referential items bearing in mind that “[t]extual cohesion is obtained through iteration of identical lexical items or those which have the same referent, that is, synonymous terms or related words that belong to the same lexical field” (Junkes, 1998, p. 56, my translation), or “single vocabulary fields” (Fillmore, 1977, p. 64)

2.6. Referential power items

Referential power lexical items refer to the issue of power in some form. In this thesis power does not refer to electric, hydroelectric or mechanical i.e. harnessed power for powering machines, but rather power relationships between *rational* (or

irrational) beings. Power lexical items include not only ranks of power: Monarch, Pope, Executive officer, Dean, etc., but also abstract entities: Government, Educational staff, Scotland Yard, decrees and laws, Freedom of Information Act, elections, “‘human institution’ nouns like *nation*” (Fillmore, 1968, p. 24, author’s inverted commas and italics); items related to fighting and war: deliberate means of causing harm, death or damage, weapons, and abstract nouns such as the killing, the bombing, or adjectives such as wounded, imprisoned, targeted. Referential items in my corpus are underlined in the newsreports in the Appendices. However, in a microscene such as

my example 2

The rifle and gunpowder used in the 1915-1918 war are on display today

the referentially power items are underlined, but do not compose a power microscene as there is no power relationship in the microscene; *rifle*, *gunpowder* and *war* are part of the information about a museum display. Lexicogrammatical items refer to a particular theme, or “vocabulary field” (Fillmore, *ibid*) and are “case candidates” (Cook, 1979, p. 44) - a term Cook said was offered up from “Naomi Meara, of the Ohio State University” (*ibid*, p. 49) - for a semantic role, (although Fillmore used the lexical item “candidate” (p. 61) earlier in 1977). Out of context *rifle*, *gunpowder* and *war* may belong to a particular theme but their meaning is only defined once they become participants in a microscene. As Cook writes:

The same noun may be used in different contexts as Agent, Experiencer, Object, Beneficiary, or Locative, depending upon the verb with which it is used. Nouns do not exist as cases. They assume case roles in propositions. The case role itself is read into the noun from the verb (1979, p. 44).

Likewise in

Microscene 1

Prince Charles has again fallen from his horse (Cobuild⁹, 2001, p. 556-557)

⁹ English Dictionary for Advanced Learners (Cobuild) (2001)

Prince Charles is a person of power, and so a power Benefactive candidate, but this microscene is not a power Benefactive one, rather a Locative one as the Prince has fallen off a horse. If we consider *fall* in

Microscene 2

Kandahar will eventually fall (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005, p. 41)

this is a power Benefactive microscene. Kandahar is going to be defeated, the people of Kandahar will eventually be under the control of the invading forces. *Fall* is being used as a metaphor representing the power Benefactive and owing to its widely accepted use as a pBen predicator the presence of *Prince Charles* **and** *fallen* in **Microscene 1** become candidates for the power Benefactive. Knowing Prince Charles plays polo is important to understanding the microscene as a Locative one and not concerning power. In understanding any text or discourse the participants, speakers, hearers or readers rely on the “shared meanings and world views and social contexts” (Schiffrin, 1987, p.4).

1	Alan Milburn	16	Government	31	people
2	Blair	17	health	32	police
3	borders	18	Howard	33	policy
4	Britain	19	human rights	34	policy commitments
5	Conservative	20	Labour	35	political
6	control	21	leader(s)	36	polling day
7	controlled immigration	22	lower taxes	37	potential risk
8	co-ordinator	23	majority	38	power
9	country	24	manifesto	39	responsibility
10	crime and disorder.	25	Michael Howard	40	services
11	economic	26	Mr Howard	41	tax burden.
12	education	27	nation	42	taxes
13	election campaign	28	nationhood	43	the law
14	general election	29	order	44	threatens
15	global terrorism	30	party / parties	45	Tory / Tories

Table 2: Cohesive items in the power lexical chain from newsreport ASW0001T

Table 2 lays out the referentially power items, underlined in **Appendix 1** - newsreport ASW0001T, forming a lexical chain, a term subsequently discussed. The list has been put into alphabetical order and repeated items removed, leaving a total of 45 lexical

items, described in the ensuing section along with a brief discussion on *lexical chains* and *cohesion*.

2.7. Cohesive chains

A cohesive chain is a chain of lexical items running through a text relating to one another *and* to a theme in a text creating cohesion within that text. The list in **Table 2** incorporates a lexical chain related to politics, including names of politicians and political parties; elections; manifestos and such like. This is also called a cohesive chain as at a textual level it provides cohesion to the document, by creating cohesive ties. Cohesive ties force us to “mentally identify [... the links in a text] in order to make sense of it” (Bloor & Bloor, 1995, p. 95). Lexical cohesion is created by “cohesive chains and [...] a text may well have more than one running through it” (ibid, p. 100). In newsreport ASW0009T (**Appendix 1**) there are three cohesive chains, although they are interlinked, power Benefactive predicators are in capitals, those in bold are among the 100 for analysis:

- i. the issue of the suicide bomb attack related to the
 - a. *who did it*: suicide bombers; insurgents; AND
 - b. *how*: suicide bombing; explosives; deadliest blows; blast; KILL ; SABOTAGE; **ABDUCTED (175)** or **ASSASSINATED (176)**; decapitated corpses AND
 - c. *where*: Balad, north of Baghdad; Iraq; Mosul; city AND
 - d. *the victims*: Iraqis; Iraqi men; members of the Iraqi National Guard; guardsmen
- ii. ruling bodies: government forces; **SECURING (168)** the country; US military officials; US troops; police, national guards; municipal officials and drivers; Americans
- iii. elections: general elections; Sunni-majority population; election campaigning

Each lexical chain is linked to the other because there is dissatisfaction owing to the elections and the presence of American forces. The insurgents are fighting against the elections in Iraq, killing people as a warning that they mean business and will kill again

to disrupt the election campaign.

Before going on to Systemic Functional Linguistics (SFL) there is a mention of *anaphoric* reference, a term used in the analysis.

2.8. Anaphoric references

What anaphoric references do is *label* a previous stretch of text. Anaphoric processes “have the effect of shortening, simplifying, de-stressing sentences which are partly identical to their neighbours (or which are partly ‘understood’” Other authors, for example Francis (1994), call these *retrospective labels*, which may serve metadiscursively to “**encapsulate** or package a stretch of discourse” (p. 85, author’s bold). Acting metadiscursively they establish a relationship between two parts of a text. Fillmore (1968, p. 56) says “utterances in connected texts or conversations can best be understood from the point of view of a shared knowledge of the language’s anaphoric processes on the part of the speaker and hearer”

Anaphoric references are also a form of cohesion, relating two or more items, and are important for giving continuity to the text, without having to repeat all the terms to which they refer. Anaphoric items are used by the author of a text to signal and label information at various stages so that the reader will not lose track (Heberle, 1997). Halliday (1994) writes of lexical cohesion that it “may be maintained over long passages by the presence of keywords, words having special significance for the meaning of a particular text” (p. 310). The high density of referential AND relational power lexical items surfacing in the newsreports show them to be concerned with power and justify my choice of such a written genre – journalistic text on war and law enforcement, for the demonstration of linguistic marks of power.

Cohesion is not a focal point of this thesis, but is important in understanding how the referential power items relate to the thesis as a whole. Likewise Systemic Functional Linguistics, a brief on which composes the next section.

2.9. Systemic Functional Linguistics (SFL)

Oliveira (1999) reminds us that the 1995 UFSC model (cf. 2.16.) “also draws on Halliday’s (1985) conceptions, especially in reference to the articulation of the verb with its arguments at the contextual level of the proposition in a language in use environment” (p. 74, my translation). On the other hand, in a dialectical relationship “Halliday’s SFG originated independently from ‘standard’ theory, but its references to Fillmore’s Case Grammar are explicit and not of a minor import” (Graffi, 2001, p. 390). Much of what Halliday writes in terms of language in general such as a “language is interpreted as a system of meanings, accompanied by forms through which the meaning can be realised” (Halliday, 1994, p. xiv) is in accordance with the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach, which analyses text to describe what is going on in a text. Language is in constant development and this shows up in the new uses of lexicogrammatical items. Language changes with the times, for example, a 20 year old dictionary would not have *surfing the net* as an entry for *surf*. However, cultures with no geographical possibilities of surfing water might nowadays define *surfing the net* as the basic sense of *surf* in the local community. Quoting Halliday:

Although there can only be a finite body of text, written or spoken, in any language, the language itself - the system that lies behind the text - is of indefinite extent, so that however many distinctions we introduced into our account, up to whatever degree of fineness or ‘delicacy’, we would always be able to recognise some more (1994, p. xiii).

In the above section referential items and cohesion were discussed and are factors of the *textual* level of discourse, that is, components in the elaboration of written, visual or oral text. Analysis using the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach is semantic and pragmatic.

Semantic because it looks at meaning inside the text to comprehend what is being represented at that place and moment in time, determining the functions of the production, a “text is a semantic unit” (Halliday, 1994, p. xvii). Pragmatic because this cannot be interpreted without knowledge of the context, of who is the Agent acting upon whom, the Object, under what circumstances. In other words

the fundamental components of **meaning** in language are functional components. All languages are organised around two main kinds of meaning, the ‘ideational’ or reflective, and the ‘interpersonal’ or active. These components, called ‘metafunctions’ in the terminology of [systemic] theory, are the manifestations in the linguistic system of the two very general purposes which underlie all uses of language: i) to understand the environment (ideational), and ii) to act on the others in it (interpersonal). Combined with these is a third metafunctional component, the ‘textual’, which breathes relevance into the other two (Halliday, 1994, p. xiii, author’s bold)

The Nicolacópulos *et al* tenets define the kind of sense represented in the text, that is, the semantic domain portrayed in the sense of the microscenes. The semantic domains are [case] grammatical metalinguistic categories realising semantic patterns in language, notwithstanding the consideration of contextual, pragmatic, external features contributing to the meaning-making. These features reflect the social, cultural, ideological and historical facts, mentioned in the introduction, reinterpreted by the units of text in question. These principals overlap with the following ideas underlying Systemics:

In order to provide insights into the meaning and effectiveness of a text, a discourse grammar needs to be functional and semantic in its orientation, with the grammatical categories explained as the realisation of semantic patterns. Otherwise it will face inwards rather than outwards, characterising the text in explicit formal terms but providing no basis on which to relate it to the non-linguistic universe of its situational and cultural environment [...] A language, then, is a system for making meanings: a semantic system, with other systems for encoding the meanings it produces. The term ‘semantics’ does not simply refer to the meaning of words; it is the entire system of meanings of a language, expressed by grammar as well as by vocabulary (Halliday, 1994, p. xvii).

At the 2005 ISFLA conference, during O’Donnell’s “Difficult Process Workshop”, attended by specialists such as Robin Fawcett, Amy Neale, Geoff Thompson, Paul Thibault, John Flowerdew, David Banks, Peter Fries and Erich Steiner,

the participants were asked to give their opinion on the analysis of some processes. **Table 3** shows examples of some ‘difficult to analyse sentences’, and the number of researchers putting a particular process to each one. Between eighteen and twenty-one participants showed their hands at each call. O’Donnell (2005) explained the differences

Clauses analysed, processes underlined							
He <u>laughed</u>		He <u>talked</u> for hours		He <u>talked</u> about his stay in Bali		He <u>said</u> that he’d been to Bali	
Column A: Process selected as the analysis				Column B: number of participants selecting that choice			
A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
Material	2	Material	8	Material	4	Material	
Behavioural	16	Behavioural	5	Behavioural	5	Behavioural	
Verbal		Verbal	5	Verbal	12	Verbal	19
Mental		Mental		Mental		Mental	
Relational		Relational		Relational		Relational	
existential		existential		existential		existential	

Table 3: Difficult processes and number of researchers selecting a particular analysis of opinion as resting on the variation in degree of grammar vs semantics applied by these SFG (Systemic Functional Grammar) and SFL (Systemic Functional Linguistics) researchers, there being no ‘right’ or ‘wrong’ answer. The *grammarians* give more value to the surface structure, and the *semanticists* to the underlying semantic representation despite the fact that all systemic specialists present followed the same set of Hallidayan postulates (O’Donnell, *ibid*).

Analysis conducted using the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach is more in accordance with the Systemic *semanticists* confirming the appropriateness of describing the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach as a “semantic-pragmatic” model of analysis.

Pragmatics was mentioned above and now will be further discussed, linking the present text to ambiguity, polysemy and metaphor, then the context of situation.

2.10. Pragmatics

As language is meaning and choice which are fundamental properties of text at a semantic level (Halliday, 1975) language has to be understood within a specific context to make sense. Simpson's definition: "Pragmatics = semantics + content" (1993, p. 120) complies with three of Yule's definitions: (i) "Pragmatics is the study of contextual meaning [... along with (ii)] the study of speaker meaning [which is to say ... (iii)] the study of how more gets communicated than is said" (1996, p. 3). Pragmatics, per se, is meaning in context, that is *Pragmatics* is the *study of discourse in context* interrelating discourse analysis with context (of situation) and pragmatics. Pragmatics is "-presuppositions, shared speaker-addressee knowledge, knowledge of possible words" (Wright, 1975, p. 378). Pragmatics has to do

with how to use language – how to get things done by verbal means [...] some set of principles or strategies for arriving at inferences about the intentions one's interlocutor has in saying what he says, or, put the other way round, for selecting what one says in a way such that one can feel fairly confident that the interlocutor will recognise one's intentions (Morgan, 1975, p. 290).

Pragmatics and context are involved in the disambiguation of utterances.

Case grammars are successful in resolving most of the syntactic *ambiguities*. This is because the case identifiers of the words are matched to the slots of the corresponding case frames of the verb, and they will be guaranteed to fill in the slots that match the intended meaning of the words. However, case grammars cannot analyze semantically *ambiguous* sentences that can only be resolved by contextual information or special knowledge of discourse (Ibrahim; 1993, p. 278, my italics).

The issue of ambiguity brings the text to a discussion on polysemy, hand in hand with metaphor.

2.11. Metaphor and polysemy

A word with a number of definitions is polysemic (Fillmore & Atkins, 2000), and can give rise to a variety of meanings in an utterance causing ambiguity to the intended sense. In this thesis a polysemic lexicogrammatical item is considered to

have a basic sense, and when there is a displacement from that basic sense it becomes a metaphor. According to Oliveira

metaphoric language results from a given context, which incorporates reflections of other already existing discourse, and of other already constructed senses - the presupposed context, [that is as a result of, in Meurer's terms, "intertextuality" (2002, 2004) ... Metaphorisation is a process] of appropriation and aggregation of historically constructed senses, in and by language, which, in this way, reflects the history of language (Oliveira, 2003, p. 29, my translation).

The discussions on metaphor are extensive (Berber Sardinha, 2007a) and beyond the scope of this review, rather, this thesis focuses on "polysemous metaphor" (Eva Hjörne, 2006, p. 194; O'Neill, 2006, p. 144) or "polysemic metaphor" (Oliveira, 1995; Mansen & Weingagaart, 1995, apud Foster, 2005, p. 38) and the following paragraphs will give an overall view of metaphor.

2.12. Polysemous metaphors

I am interested in how a lexicogrammatical item takes on a different meaning, in particular ones representing the notion of power, in their basic sense or their acquired sense, becoming metaphors. Hence the term *polysemic* or *polysemous metaphors* as the research studies predicators which are polysemous, they have different meanings according to the context where they appear. The term *polysemic metaphor* is used, among others, in the field of:

- i) Social science and gender studies (Coggeshall, 1991, p. 86),
- ii) Religion (Hayes, 2005, p. 25)
- iii) Business and Economics (Åkerman, 2005)
- iv) Social science (Jennings, 1995)
- v) Sociology (Sandywell, 1996)

The term *polysemous metaphor* is used in the field of

- i) Drama (Middleton, 1999, p. xxxiv),
- ii) Psychology (Hjörne, 2006; Muthukrishna, 2006),
- iii) Literary criticism (Salomon, 1979; O'Neill, 2006),
- iv) Computers (Stephanidis et al, 2001, p. 252)

The Nicolacópulos *et al* might be of use for research in the above mentioned fields, facilitating the recognition and logging of *polysemous metaphors*.

The extensive and controversial history of metaphor goes back as far as Aristotle's times or further. Aristotle spoke of metaphor as being brilliant and dangerous (Blasko, 1999). As Blasko says, metaphor has an ambiguous nature and so being it is “a matter not of language meaning, but rather of language use [...] a vital part of human communication, [it is] the interaction of two dissimilar concepts and is ubiquitous in our environment” (ibid, p. 1676). A metaphorical statement takes a while to be processed as first the hearer tries for a literal meaning, that being rejected the hearer attempts a figurative interpretation. She also quotes Lakoff and Johnson (1998) as viewing metaphor as being fundamental to the shaping of our conceptual wisdom as “metaphor involves the mapping of complex conceptual domains” (apud Blasko, 1999, p. 1677). In order to make sense of the input a hearer/reader reconstructs what is received in the light of what s/he already knows.

Fromkin and Rodman refer to “**metaphor** [as] nonliteral meaning [a kind of] rule violation” (1998, p. 184, authors' bold). A semantic rule is violated to put across a specific idea. I suggest this is not necessarily done consciously, but, even so, the “metaphorical use of language is language creativity at its highest [...] the basis of metaphorical use is the ordinary linguistic knowledge about words, their semantic properties, and their combining powers that all speakers possess” (ibid, p. 188). As Oliveira (2003) says

Metaphor is inscribed in polysemy and it is up to the speaker, at the moment language is transformed into discourse, and at the moment the discourse of others' is interpreted, to choose the most exact word to give the best idea of what is wanted to be expressed – no matter if the use is literal or not, figurative or not (Oliveira, ibid, p. 29, my translation)

A predicator no longer in its ‘basic sense’, or ‘literal sense’ or “staple” sense (Sinclair, 1995, p. 99) or, in Halliday’s terms, “the congruent” (1994, p. 342), has taken a metaphorical move towards another semantic domain.

According to Halliday (1994)

If something is said to be metaphorical, it must be metaphorical by reference to something else. This is usually presented as a one-way relationship such that to some metaphorical meaning of a word there corresponds another, non-metaphorical meaning that is said to be ‘literal’. [For him] the concept of ‘literal’ is ... not very appropriate, and [he refers] to the less metaphorical variant as ‘congruent’ [That is to say ...] In other words, for any given semantic configuration there will be some realisation in the lexicogrammar – some wording – that can be considered CONGRUENT; there may also be various others that are in some respects ‘transferred’, or METAPHORICAL (p. 342, author’s capitals).

This author goes on to say that it does not necessarily mean “the congruent realisation is better, or that it is more frequent, or even that it functions as a norm; there are many instances where a metaphorical representation has become the norm, and this is in fact a natural process of linguistic change” (ibid).

Take the predicator *surf*, for example, (cf. 2.9) in the 1995 version of the CIDE¹⁰ there is a single verb entry: “*to surf is to ride on a wave as it comes in towards land, while standing or lying on a special board. - They go surfing every weekend*” (p.1467, my italics). The Cambridge Advanced Learner’s Dictionary Online from Cambridge University Press, 2006, has the identical original entry at the surf (WAVES) link, but also has a second link: surf (INTERNET) with the entry¹¹: “*verb [I or T] to spend time visiting a lot of websites: Many towns and cities have cybercafes where you can surf the Internet/Net/Web*” (online page, my italics). In our present day technological world we “surf the net”, a metaphor of the original meaning. In 2006 *surf* (INTERNET) is the ‘second’ entry. As *surfing the net* becomes more common than surfing the sea, which it probably already is, it could possibly become the ‘first’ entry,

¹⁰ Cambridge International Dictionary of English (1995)

¹¹ Accessed May 30th, 2006 from: <http://dictionary.cambridge.org/define.asp?key=80201&dict=CALD>

becoming a ‘dead’ metaphor. “In a dead metaphor, the original sentence meaning is bypassed and the utterance has the meaning that used to be its metaphorical meaning” (Malmkjaer, 2004, 493).

Several authors (Capurro & Hjørland, 2003; Haser, 2005; R. P. d. Oliveira, 1998; Pinker, 1999) incorporate Wittgenstein’s (1958) hypothesis that polysemants (polysemous words) are linked by “family resemblances” as an explanation for metaphor. This **family resemblance** [theory implies that] words cannot be unambiguously defined by clear and specific attributes, but that usage represents a train of associations which pass through one similarity after another” (Ross, 2000, internet page, author’s emphasis). Haser (ibid), for example, believes this theory of Wittgenstein’s is more appropriate than the later idea of “conceptual metaphors” (Lakoff & Johnson, 1980), She says family resemblances is a useful concept for understanding metaphorisation, or projection. There is a certain resemblance between falling off a horse, when the subject goes down, and falling from power, when the subject metaphorically ‘goes down’ in power (see below).

A metaphorical process is a *displacement*, from one semantic domain (basic sense) to another (non-basic). Bréal¹² talks of metaphorisation when he says “words, once they are created and provided with a certain sense, that sense can be narrowed down or spread out from one order of ideas to another” (1908, p. 99, my translation) Words produce new senses made possible by linguistic resources (Oliveira, 1999), backgrounding familiar traits and foregrounding novel meanings. R. P. d. Oliveira (1998) discusses the lexical item ‘onde’ in the Portuguese language, ‘where’ in English. She says “the transposition of the spatial – *where* - to other different domains is made

¹² “les mots, une fois créés et pourvus d’un certain sens, sont amenés à le resserrer, à l’étendre, à le transporter d’un ordre d’idées à un autre” (Bréal, 1908: 99).

possible by our semantic skills of projecting, in such a way that we can envisage a certain domain departing from the spatial filter offered by *where*” (R. P. d. Oliveira, 1998, p. 151, my translation). The same rationale applies to the lexical item *fall*.

Considering the COBUILD dictionary entry for fall

Cobuild¹³: Fall (p.556-557) [1] If someone or something *falls*, they move quickly downwards onto or towards the ground, by accident or because of a natural force. – *Prince Charles has again fallen from his horse.* [6] If a powerful or successful person *falls*, they suddenly lose their power or position. – *Regimes fall, revolutions come and go, but places never really change.* [7] If a place *falls* in a war or election, an enemy army or a different political party takes control of it. – *With the announcement ‘Paphos has fallen!’ a cheer went up from the soldier* (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a, p. 48)

The predicator *fall* is locative in its basic sense meaning moving downwards onto or towards the ground. *Prince Charles has again fallen from his horse* is a purely Locative microscene, even though the subject is a person in a position of power, the Prince. This might, at first glance, seem to contradict with entry [6] - If a powerful or successful person *falls*, they suddenly lose their power or position. However, in entry [1] Prince Charles is not exercising his role of power in this microscene; he is simply a person riding a horse. He falls from a horse and not from a position of power. Prince Charles is a person of power, but this entry does not constitute a power Benefactive microscene, *fall* continues in its basic locative sense. In *Regimes fall, revolutions come and go, but places never really change*, *fall* no longer means physical movement from up to down, *fall* is being used metaphorically. As in the example of ‘where’ / “onde” (R. P. d. Oliveira, 1998), by “analogy” (ibid) we project the basic sense *fall*, that is, the locative concept (Loc) onto one of loss of power (pBen), now in the power Benefactive subdomain. The “procedure of reasoning behind this case of transposition from space [... is] a process of *projection* of one domain of experience over another domain” (ibid, p. 151, my translation,

¹³ English Dictionary for Advanced Learners (Cobuild) (2001)

respecting author's italics). The predicator *fall* has taken a semantic move from the Locative to the power Benefactive subdomain; it has metaphorised.

“Entry [7] - If a place *falls* in a war or election, an enemy army or a different political party takes control of it” (Cobuild, 2001, p. 557) - exemplifies a power Benefactive microscene describing the transfer of power from the place that falls to the political party taking over. Once more there is a projection from the locative filter of the basic sense of *fall*, to the “deviant use” (R. P. d. Oliveira, 1998, p. 150, my translation), or metaphoric use of *fall*, now displaced to the power Benefactive subdomain, taking on linguistic features that denote the loss of power, becoming a *linguistic mark of power*.

If a word is *ambiguous* this is because the lexical item may lend itself to other semantic domains; where there has been a displacement to another domain the lexicogrammatical item is a metaphor. A metaphor carries some of its characteristic over into a new sense (Lakoff & Johnson, 1980). This is backed up by Oliveira referring to Halliday as saying in 1985 that

the transference of meaning is not restricted to the lexical plane, given that, in metaphorical predications a change in structure of the process (predicate) and the participants (semantic roles or cases) is what provokes a semantic alteration in turn responsible for the metaphorisation of the sense (Oliveira, 2003, p. 28, my translation, author's brackets).

A lexical item is polysemic if it is able to undergo an *inter-* or *intra-* domain move, and transform into a metaphor. The terms “*inter-domain*” and “*intra-domain*” are borrowed from computer science (Neighbors, 1998, p. 3; Sheth et al, 2002, p. 6, my italics). When the power Benefactive predicator emerges from another semantic domain it moves *horizontally* between cells in the matrix (Cook, 1979, 1989, cf. 2.15.1., p. 91 below), which shall be known as an “*inter-domain*” move (ibid). When the power Benefactive predicator emerges from the same semantic domain it displaces *vertically* from one cell to another in the matrix, taking an “*intra-domain*” move (ibid). This will

be better understood on repetition in the next chapter. From my point of view the more polysemic the item is, the more semantic domains it lends itself to, that is, the more metaphors it is able to bring into being – a conclusion I came to from the results of my pilot study.

A producer of a text conveys a meaning by the choice of wording, the way the text is interpreted will depend on the receiver's social expectation in the current context, at that moment in time.

The meaning of words depends on how they are combined into phrases, and on how they are used in social situations. It follows that their meaning depends on both linguistic conventions and also on inferences from real-world knowledge. These linguistic and social expectations mean that, although we are in principle free to say whatever we want, in practice what we say is constrained in many ways (Stubbs, 2001, p. 19).

When the social dimension is taken into consideration, especially when the question of power differentials comes into play, analysts centre on pertinent social aspects focussing on issues and not only theory. Discourse is not simply a form of language use but rather encompasses how language combines and is ordered to produce that discourse (van Dijk, 1997a). Analysts should question the “process of communication, [... that is,] the actions accomplished when people engage in discourse” (ibid, p. 5) with the intention of determining how language functions (Halliday, 1994, 2000), for example, to voice beliefs in a specific social context (van Dijk, ibid).

In consensus with Fairclough's belief that analysis of discursive practice should embody both “macro-analysis”, i.e. the study of members' resources and “micro-analysis” (1992, p. 85) to reveal how those resources are put into action. Miller & Leacock say that comprehension of an utterance can only be complete when the “topical context” (2000, p. 157), which succumbs to *macro-analysis* is considered along with the “local context” (ibid, p. 155) scrutinised by a *micro-analysis*. At the semantic level of

discourse the linguistic content is the background to “determine how a word will be understood” (ibid, p. 154) where at word level discourse analysis looks for a “contextual representation” (ibid) of how the semantic representation is expressed. Lexical items are organised and distributed to provide “the ideational meaning (the ‘content’) of the [... discourse” (Fairclough, 1995, p. 25, author’s parentheses and inverted commas).

Systemic functional linguistics, according to Halliday, is a framework for describing and interpreting how language functions as a meaning-making semantic system, and how text makes sense (Halliday, 1994; Eggins, 1994). Halliday’s perspectives are primordial for my research as they provide the means to contextualise the work. They allow me to place an extension to Fillmore’s ‘proposition’ as the heart of meaning construed in the grammatical construct of language. No matter whether text is written, spoken, visual or non-verbal (Kress and van Leeuwen, 1996) systemic linguistics assists us in analysing how language is negotiated as producers make meaning and an audience makes sense of it. We must bear in mind that “these meanings are influenced by the social and cultural context in which they are exchanged; and that the process of using language is a *semiotic* process, a process of making meanings by choosing” (Eggins, ibid, p. 2, author’s italics). The latter is an important consideration for my research into metaphorisation as “the selection of metaphor is itself a meaningful choice” (Halliday, 1994, p. 342). As a relational semantic approach Systemic Functional Linguistics observes how language itself is structured (as does the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach) and how people use it in discourse, where the functional component of the semantic system of discourse is delineated at the three levels - textual, interpersonal and ideational, making up the ‘context of situation’. Although Chafe (1970) does not implement the lexical item – *context* – he refers to it using the concepts of ‘intersentential constraints’ and ‘cross sentence boundaries’ in:

If we look at language from a semantic point of view, intersentential constraints play a role that is probably more important than under other views of language, for a number of the limitations which cross sentence boundaries are clearly semantic in nature (p. 95)

Fillmore presents examples of loose sentences, not those in context, nor those inserted in language in use. However, he does, in 1968, allude to “*context*” (pp. 24, 85) during descriptions of semantic roles, saying in 1977 that “deep cases are among the types of semantic relations that elements of sentence structures have with each other in context” (p. 60). McLaughlin (1998) writes “The semantic revolution of the 1970s emphasized considering the overall context in which utterances occurred to fully understand them” (p. 252). In addition Pearson (1990) says “case grammar allowed one to begin to examine relations that held between linguistic ideas that crossed sentence boundaries” (Pearson, 1990, 446), yet Fillmore (ibid), Cook (ibid), Chafe (ibid), etc. on the whole provide examples of *single* sentences not those set in any context.

Burridge (2004), drawing on Louw (1993) argues that “semantics is about more than the meaning of individual words or phrases, but includes the meaning of the sentence, paragraph, or even the whole work itself” (p. 110). My research analyses *language in use* data, *microscenes* within their *source* text, making it possible to take real context into consideration. By real I refer to the current information of the source text, real as the data is from online hard news as opposed to fictitious text. News is the history of the future. At times, it will be seen in my analysis, I refer to *situations being reported* as quasi-power Benefactive as the final outcome is unknown at that given moment in time. History is constantly being made, when History is written about the outcome is known, the action completed. The choice of newsreports over, for example, texts on History, then became a bonus in revealing the need for the quasi-power Benefactive.

Sadock in 1975 also goes beyond the clause, he uses the term [INVOLVEMENT] for

a relationship between a sentence spoken in context and a semantic proposition [... holding] between a sentence in context and any proposition that is part of the literal meaning of any sentence or sequence of sentences that adequately get across the sense and force of the uttered sentence in the same context (p. 383).

This takes us back to relational semantics and forward to Context of Situation in the next section.

2.13. Context of situation

The three levels Field, Tenor and Mode of the Context of Situation (Halliday, 1985, 1994, 2004; Malinowski, 1935) correspond to three functions of language: Ideational, Interpersonal and Textual. Butt et al (1998), discussing Halliday's perspectives, say "the three parameters of context of situation [field, tenor and mode] affect our language choices precisely because they reflect the three main functions of language" (p.13). Halliday says

These three kinds of meaning run throughout the whole of language, and in a fundamental respect they determine the way that language has evolved. They are referred to in systemic grammar as METAFUNCTIONS, and the concept of 'metafunction' is one of the basic concepts around which the theory is constructed (1994, p. 35).

According to Butt et al (ibid) "language seems to have evolved for three major purposes"

- to talk about what is happening, what will happen, and what has happened; [Ideational]
- to interact (or to *do* things with language) and/or to express a point of view; [Interpersonal]
- to turn the output of the previous two functions into a coherent whole [Textual]

(p.13, authors' italics)

Figure 3. overleaf relates field, tenor and mode, the context of situation, to the semantic system by the Ideational, the Interpersonal and the Textual metafunctions. The present

research focuses on the experiential meaning. Experiential meaning, along with the logical component, comprises “the ideational” metafunction “(clause as representation)” (Halliday, 1994, p. 179, author’s parentheses) and integrates “meaning as organisation of experience” (ibid) to discuss “dimensions of reality” (Eggins, ibid, p. 8). The Nicolacópulos *et al* approach is centred at the Ideational level. However, analysis takes into consideration the context, and *who* is interacting with *whom*, which according to **Figure 3**, places this research at the Interpersonal level too.

The semantic representation of a microscene is a written or *textual* representation of meaning, showing the set of semantic roles interrelating with a predicator in a specific context – the microscene. This research then embraces the textual function of language as an output of the Ideational and Interpersonal. The Nicolacópulos *et al* model avails itself of all three metafunctions.

SITUATION: Feature of the context	(realised by)	TEXT: Functional component of semantic system
Field of discourse (what is going on)	↘	Experiential meanings - transitivity, naming.
Tenor of discourse (who are taking part)		Interpersonal meanings - mood, modality, person,
Mode of discourse (role assigned to language)		Textual meanings - theme, information, cohesive relations

Figure 3: The “Relation of the text to the context of situation” (Halliday and Hasan, 1989:26, authors’ bold, my colour).

At the level of representation we “use language to talk about our experience of the world, including the worlds in our own mind, to describe events and states and the entities involved in them” (Thompson, 1996). The traffic of the notion of power manifests in such events and states, the entities being those invested in power. When we interpret a proposition we are determining the significance of the clause, the meaning according to our own world of experience.

The semantic role of language is the underlying factor in communication, or meaning making, where field, tenor and mode overlap contributing to the whole representation of reality. As Malinowski (1946, apud Eggins, *ibid*) implied, isolated sentences do not always provoke the correct understanding from the reader, but rather only by placement in the context of situation is full comprehension achieved.

Caldas-Coulthard's selection of words that "news [is] **a reconstruction of reality** through the eyes of many people" (1997, p. 33, my bold) is apt to be pointed out here while on the subject of representation of reality, warranting the use of newsreports as a source of data. The main factor for choosing news reports for collecting data is that my research involves testing out a theory for the power Benefactive to be employed in the recognition of linguistic marks of power. As a new metalinguistic category the power Benefactive relationship merits investigation into language in use. Newsreports are an appropriate source as "the language of the media is nowadays one of the most pervasive and spread languages that people from all sorts of literate societies are exposed to" (Caldas-Coulthard, *ibid*, p. 11). Inclusively, "News is a very specific example of 'language in use', of socially structured meaning" (*ibid*, p. 12) and "read by most adult members in our culture" (van Dijk, 1986, p. 159). My specially built corpus is composed of hard news texts downloaded from the two British online newspapers 'The Telegraph' and the 'BBC'¹⁴ as convenient up-to-date sources for newsreports on 'war and politics', and as "quality newspaper[s ...] targeted to an educated audience" (Caldas-Coulthard, *ibid*, p. 88).

The next section discusses tenets on Case Grammar; from Cook's matrix model (based on Fillmore's proposition); to the 1995 UFSC case model the latter along

¹⁴ Letters (**Appendix 7**) were posted to the BBC, Telegraph and Washington post requesting permission to publish content from their respective sites. There was no reply so I assume, no doubt as there is public access to the newsreports, there are no restrictions to my use of their newsreports.

with the Benefactive according to Oliveira (1999) and finalizing with a discussion on Case grammar applications.

2.14. CASE GRAMMAR

In general, case grammar models deal with sentence meaning. In the 1960s and 1970s researchers studied the “semantic structure where configurations of meaning are assembled” (Chafe, 1970, p. 55). Chafe, who was in favour of the centrality of semantics, suggests that “[F]irst there are processes of “formation” by which a semantic structure is constructed at the outset. Second, there are processes of “transformation” by which a semantic structure is modified to become a surface structure (ibid, author’s inverted commas). Case grammar seemed to satisfy the need for representing the semantics, at the same time providing a “distinction between the semantic and syntactic levels of analysis, - what belongs to semantics and what belongs to syntax” (Nicolacópulos, 1981. ix). The syntactic components are what are on the surface, the lexicogrammatical items in the text, the predicator and accompanying participants, along with the modal elements, which are not the focus in this research. The participants account for the semantic roles in the semantic representation; in the 1960 and 1970s this correlation would have been described using alternative terms: the arguments of the surface structure correspond with the case roles of the deep structure in the case frame.

According to Donnelly (1994)

Case grammar is a model in which syntax and semantics (meaning) interact, By developing a model in which sentence structure and meaning are related, Charles Fillmore intended to provide a grammar that could account for how we perceive objects and ideas interacting in our world, as well as grammar that could better illuminate how we express those perceptions through language (p. 51).

Cook’s consideration that each of Fillmore (1968, 1977), Chafe (1970) and Anderson’s (1971) case grammar models were incomplete and at times contradictory led him to

develop the “Case grammar matrix model” (Cook, 1979, p. 200) expanding on insights from these authors, drawing specifically on Fillmore’s (ibid) proposition (quoted in the introduction). “The **proposition** is a set of semantic relations that specify the relationships between the nouns of the sentence and its verb. These relationships constitute the overall meaning of the sentence” (McLaughlin, 1998, p. 160, author’s bold). The proposition, at that time, was represented by the case frame, the set of cases or case roles, accounted for by the arguments in conjunction with the (verb)-predicator in an utterance. “The original concept of a case frame as described by **Fillmore** (1968) is based on a set of universally applicable cases. They express the relationship between the related syntactic groups” (Minker & Bennacef, 2004, p. 14). The Nicolacópulos *et al* approach, of a non-localistic outlook, in turn, draws on the Matrix model, with the UFSC case model (Nicolacópulos et al, 1995) being an intermediary version. These progressions are in keeping with the sociologist MacKinnon’s (1994) opinion; he draws on case-grammar theory in his research and says that “it is likely that the case-grammar approach will be extended further as the theory progresses” (p.19), in accordance with Cook’s comment that “it is likely that case grammar theory, in some form or another, will be around for many years to come” (1989, p. 210).

Cook’s definition of case grammar theory is that it is “a theory of sentence semantics in which the content of a single clause is represented in terms of a verb and the cases required by that verb’s semantic valence” (1989, p. 205), or “propensity for a set of arguments” (ibid, p. 186). The arguments called for by the semantic valence of the predicator are referred to as *propositional*, while the non-essential elements are *modal*.

Valence is “the degree of combining power of an element or radical” (Merriam Webster Unabridged Dictionary – CD-ROM), and in language studies refers to the number of roles expected to accompany a predicator. “The earliest reference to

valency theory is attributed to Tesnière (1966, apud Oliveira, 1999) who claims “the verb is a kind of magnetic pole that attracts arguments and establishes a dependency relationship. Each verb has a limited number of empty places around it, varying from 0 to 4” (p.68, my translation). These ‘empty places’ are filled by arguments belonging to specific semantic roles revealing the predicator as belonging to a specific semantic domain. “The verb has a series of inherent selectional features, part of the meaning of the verb, which require that the verb be accompanied by nouns in a particular case-type relationship” (Cook, 1979, p. 37). In Prandi’s (2004) words

The **valency** of the main predicator governs the presence (actual or latent) and the conceptual content of its arguments, but its control on their formal properties is restricted to the predicate. Essential roles are by definition internal to the process. Among essential roles, some are internal and some external. Each internal role, moreover, displays a peculiar degree of closeness to the ideal centre of gravity of the process – to the main predicator (pp. 57-58, author’s bold).

Cook (1979, 1989) adopts a Matrix model for a **non-localistic** case grammar, in which he set up a table outlining four semantic domains: basic, experiential, benefactive and locative; comprised of five semantic roles, or “cases”; two basic semantic roles: the Object (Obj), Agent (Agt), and three non-basic ones: Experiential (Exp), Benefactive (Ben) and Locative (Loc). On the contrary the **localistic axis** (Anderson, 1971), in general, also makes use of five roles: two basic (A, O) but then three non-basic Locatives: L (Locative), S (Source) and G (Goal), corresponding to concrete locatives (spatial) and abstract ones (equivalent to the non-basic of the non-localistic axis). I shall not go further into the mention of *Localistic Case Grammars* as they will not be put to use in this piece of research, although the concept of Source and Goal has been a useful one to consider during analysis. The next section discusses further the concepts of the matrix model.

2.15. Cook's Matrix Model (1979, 1989)

The matrix model (Cook, *ibid*), like other Case Grammar models, represents the *deep structure* of each proposition in terms of the central predicator and a number of arguments (semantic roles or cases) in a dependency relationship with that predicator. The semantic structure is represented by “an S (proposition) dominating one V (predicator) and one, two” (Cook, 1979, p. 200) or more NPs (noun phrases or arguments). The arguments called for by the semantic valence of the predicator are referred to as *propositional*, while the non-essential elements are *modal*, or, as Halliday (*ibid*) would say *circumstantial*. “These arguments are given case role labels to indicate the part they play in the situation described by the verb” (Cook, *ibid*, p. 186) after a logical analysis to decide which parts are essential to the significance of the predicator, and which are considered modal. According to Cook (*ibid*) the noun-verb relations are propositional, while details of “time, place and circumstances which surround the principal characters” (p. 26) are modal. Elements that can be removed from the utterance without altering coherence, that is remaining syntactically sufficient, then most likely the removable elements are modal, for example in

Microscene 3:

London (Ben) WON a two-way fight with Paris (Obj) by 54 votes to 50 at the IOC meeting in Singapore (from **Appendix 2**)

by 54 votes to 50 at the IOC meeting in Singapore is modal and not taken into consideration in my analysis. The utterance *London WON a two-way fight with Paris* can stand on its own, fulfilling valency and syntactic conditions. Although I insinuated that circumstantial elements could be omitted, such as *who for* (Benefactive), *with whom* (Comitative), *in what way* (manner) *at what time* (Temporal) and *where* (Locative) are modal cases, sometimes this is polemic, in for example

Microscene 4

“Jeffrey spent the afternoon at the beach with his family” (Fillmore, 1971, p. 51)

Microscene 5

**Jeffrey spent the afternoon* is unacceptable, but

Microscene 6

Jeffrey spent the afternoon at the beach is acceptable, as is

Microscene 7

Jeffrey spent the afternoon with his family

This example, however, takes us to an issue demanding some understanding of the concept of mutually exclusive semantic roles and will be referred back to for expansion, but first a word on the term *deep structure*.

2.15.1. Deep structure / semantic representation

I use the term *semantic representation* to avoid any confusion with the use of *deep structure*. In 1968 Bach and Harms refer to McCawley (1968) as abandoning the “notion of ‘deep structure’ as [being] distinct from ‘semantic reading’” (p. vii, author’s inverted commas). They cite Chomsky’s¹⁵

surface sentence *Floyd broke the glass* [... as being] composed of no less than eight sentences. The form of this underlying structure may be indicated by a quasi-paraphrase: *I declare to you that it past that it happen that Floyd do cause it to come about that it BE the glass broken*. Each form in capitals represents an abstract ‘pro-verb’, with ‘break’ represented in the innermost sentence (ibid, p. viii, author’s italics and inverted commas).

I understand a sentence, in their terms, refers to a proposition in Fillmore’s terms, each having one predicator, the *deep structure* being the quasi-paraphrase incorporating the eight predicators:

declare	past	happen	do	cause	come about	BE	broken
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

Figure 4: Eight predicators from Chomsky’s surface sentence

¹⁵ This is the only reference I shall make to Chomsky as his tenets are beyond the scope of the present paper.

Although they go on to represent McCawley (ibid) as saying “these ‘deep structures’ are taken to be identical with the semantic representation of sentences” (ibid, author’s inverted commas), in this thesis the semantic representation of

Microscene 8

Floyd (Agt) broke the glass (Obj)

is

break [_____ Agt, Obj]

Drawing on Cook (1979, p. 201), in the figure below part (a) shows the syntactic structure, also called the surface structure. (b) and (c) show the semantic representation, or deep structure. V_3 stands for a three place verb, a verb with a valency of three, expecting the presence of three participants, in this case John, Mary and flowers in (d), which shows the subject choice hierarchy order (see below).

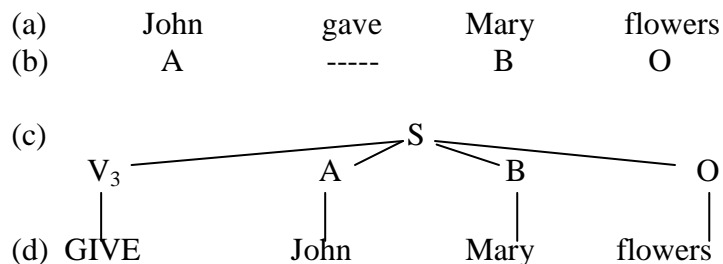


Figure 5: The surface/syntactic structure of (a) represented by the semantic structure in (b/c)

In the matrix model the *list of cases* (case system) follows the general norms set out by Fillmore (1975), he says the list should be (a) small, (b) adequate and (c) universal. The Matrix model, as its name suggests is a *matrix* and it assists the visualisation of options for semantic representations and facilitates the visualisation of semantic moves generating metaphors. In **Table 4** the matrix can be seen to constitute several cells, three rows of four columns. On the vertical axis the verbs are classified as

States, Processes and Actions, while on the horizontal axis they are classified as Basic, Experiential, Benefactive or Locative. This version is Cook's 1989

Semantic domains → Verb Types ↓	Basic	Experiential	Benefactive	Locative
1. State	Os be tall Os, Os be + N	E, Os Like Os, E be boring	B, Os have Os, B belong to	Os, L be in Loc, Os contain
2. Process	O die O, O become	E, O enjoy O, E amuse	B, O acquire O, B ...	O, L move, iv L, O leak
3. Action	A, O kill A, O, O elect	A, E, O say A, O, E amuse (Agt)	A, B, O give A, O, B blame	A, O, Loc put A, L, O fill

Table 4: Cook's 1989 Matrix model (1989, p. 197)

proposal for a revised matrix with (i) case frames containing two objects, Obj, Obj - an extension to his 1979 matrix that accepted only a single occurrence of object; (ii) configurations with different choices of subject, progressing from the previous version. According to Fillmore "the variables that determine or constrain the freedom of word order in the languages of the world are very likely to have many important connections with the case structure" (1968, p. 60). In 1968 Fillmore had not examined this, but said that "appeals for sequence free representations of the universal deep structure have been made by Halliday (1966), Tesnière (1959), and others" (ibid, p. 1). Following Cook (1989) when he says "cases are listed left to right by subject choice hierarchy" (1989, p. 193) I consider the subject choice hierarchy of the semantic roles in a microscene to be "nonlinear representations, like a mobile, where none of the parts is in fixed order" (Cook, 1979, p. 14). This is reflected in **pBen microscene 16: be (76) under arrest** where the semantic representation is: *be under arrest* [----- Obj_s, *pBen / pBen-del]. In the

instance of *have* and *belong to* the case frame is the same, but the subject order is reversed, in

The teacher (Ben) has a computer (Obj_s) (my example 3),

the order is ‘Ben, Obj_s’, while in

This computer (Obj_s) belongs to the teacher (Ben) (my example 4)

the order is ‘Obj_s, Ben’, shown in the Matrix in **Table 4** above.

Summarising, Cook’s (1989) norms for the formation of semantic representations are:

- i) each semantic representation has a predicator and one, two or three arguments,
- ii) the semantic role *Object*, and only the Object role¹⁶, may occur more than once in the representation,
- iii) an *Object* is obligatory,
- iv) the Experiential, Benefactive and Locative roles are mutually exclusive and
- v) the semantic roles are listed from left to right according to the hierarchical order of selection of the subject.

The definitions of the semantic roles are expressed in the following figure (Cook, 1979, p. 52):

- Agent : the case required by an ‘action’ verb , which specifies the instigator of the action. This case is typically, but not always, manifested by animate nouns.
- Experiencer: the case required by an ‘experiential’ verb, which specifies the undergoer of a psychological event of sensation, emotion, or cognition (communication added on p. 202).
- Benefactive: the case required by a ‘benefactive’ verb, which specifies the one in the state of possession, or the one who undergoes loss or gain in the transfer of an object
- Object: (a) the case required by a ‘state’ verb, which specifies the object that is in that state, or,
(b) the case required by a ‘process’ verb, which specifies the object which undergoes a change of state.

With Experiencer verbs, the Object specifies the content of the experience, or the stimulus for the experience.

With Benefactive verbs, the Object specifies the thing possessed, or the thing which is transferred.

¹⁶ “Following Anderson (1976) [...] double O structures are necessary to account for predicate nominals after *be* and *become* and certain three place predicates with object and object complement, such as *elect* in *they elected him president*” (Cook, 1989: 194)

With Locative verbs, the Object specifies the object in a location, or undergoing change of position.

Locative: the case required by a ‘locative’ verb, which specifies the location of an object, or the change of location of an object.

Figure 6: Definitions of the content of the semantic roles.

In 1989 Cook proposes an “essential Time” (T) (1989, p. 196), though he does not include this in his matrix. Time represents a relation of time and may be predicated in a state, process, or an event, such as:

Microscene 9

“The meeting is on Wednesday” (ibid, author’s italics),

which has the semantic representation [___ Obj_s, Tim], or as a Process incorporating the predicator “*last*, classified as [___ Obj, Tim]” (ibid, author’s italics, my annotation), or in an Action with a predicator such as “*spend (time)*, classified as [___ Agt, Obj, Tim]” (ibid, author’s italics, my annotation)

The next section discusses the vertical axis.

2.15.2. State, Process and Action

According to Cook (1979, 1989) verbs are, in general, classified as states or non-states. A state verb is semantically stative and is defined negatively as a non-event. The non-state verbs are classified as processes or actions, where processes are non-agentive events and actions are agentive events. According to Nicolacópulos *et al* (1995) Cook (1979, 1989) follows Fillmore’s (1968) and Anderson’s (1971) tests for State, Process and Action. The UFSC semantic-pragmatic model uses those of Chafe (1970), Cruse (1973) and Nicolacópulos (1981, 1992).

Verbs are, in general, classified as states or non-states (Chafe, 1970; Cook (1979, 1989). Chafe implements four types: State, Process, Action and ‘Process and Action’; the Nicolacópulos *et al* model, following Cook (ibid) uses three, amalgamating

the last two. That is to say, whenever there is an Agent the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach considers the microscene to be an Action. Chafe (1970) uses the following sets of sentences to differentiate between the types:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>(1) a. The wood is dry.
 b. The rope is tight.
 c. The dish is broken.
 d. The elephant is dead.</p> | <p>(3) a. Michael ran.
 b. The men laughed
 c. Harriet sang.
 d. The tiger pounced.</p> |
| <p>(2) a. The wood dried.
 b. The rope tightened
 c. The dish broke
 d. The elephant died</p> | <p>(4) a. Michael dried the wood.
 b. The men tightened the rope.
 c. Harriet broke the dish.
 d. The tiger killed the elephant
 (p. 98)</p> |

As Chafe says “In set (1) a certain noun (*wood, rope, dish, elephant*) is said to be in a certain state or condition (*dry, tight, broken, dead*)” (ibid). This places the microscene as a State. In the semantic representation - *wood, rope, dish* or *elephant*- is registered as accounting for the Object role, marked ‘s’ for stative, that is ‘Obj_s’.

In the other sets the verbs are not stative, acknowledged by the fact that they can function as an answer to the question “What happened?, What’s happening?, and so on. A nonstate is a “happening,” an event” (ibid, p. 99, author’s inverted commas). In (2) a. *The wood dried* can answer the question *what happened to the wood?* When the verb is in the continuous form:

- (5) a. *the wood is drying,*

this is a non-state as something is happening. In both (2) a. and (5) a. *wood* is in the semantic role of Object, registered as ‘Obj’ in the semantic representation. In set (2) all the microscenes are nonstates. However, there are no Agents, so they are defined as being Processes, where there is a *change* in state or condition. The *rope* was loose but became tight, or the *elephant* was alive but died, are both processes. Sets (3) and (4) all have Agents, and the microscenes answer the question “*What did N do?*, where N is some noun” (ibid, p. 100). For example, what did the men do? The men laughed. The

‘men’ is the noun or participant accounting for the semantic role of Agent. *The men laughed* would not be an appropriate answer for ‘What happened to the men?’ as there has been no change of state or condition, ‘*the men laughed*’ being an Action not a Process. Considering microscene (2) c. and (4) c. in Chafe’s reckoning (4) c. is an Action-Process, as Harriet caused a process to happen, so to speak. However, the Nicolacópulos *et al* model considers (4) c. *Harriet broke the dish* as being an Action, that is, Chafe’s Action-Processes are considered as Actions. Set (3) and set (4) then are all Actions, i.e. agentive microscenes, according to our model.

In sequence, the predicators are next classified according to the specific semantic domain they belong to, that is, into (i) the Basic, incorporating a possible combination of one or more roles, but only Obj and / or Agt roles, (ii) the Experiential, incorporates a participant in the Exp role, in addition to possible Agt and Obj roles, (iii) the Benefactive, incorporates a Ben role and possible Agt and Obj roles (iv) the Locative, incorporating a Loc role, etc. Considering the first cell of **Table 4** (p. 91 above) a Basic state predicator may be either a one-place predicator, e.g. be tall (Obj_s, subscript s representing that it is stative) or have a valency of two, e.g. be the author (Obj_s, Obj_s).

The concept of *covert roles* was brought up above and is described in the next section.

2.15.3. The theory of covert roles

The matrix model incorporates Fillmore’s (ibid), *theory of covert roles* and transports them to the non-localistic model. “Fillmore’s argument is based on two assumptions: **the centrality of syntax** in the determination of case: and **the importance of covert categories**” (Malmkjaer, 2004, p. 251-252, author’s bold)

According to Cook (1979) “covert roles may be partially or totally covert. Partially covert roles are sometimes present and sometimes absent from the surface structure, and are called deletable roles, e.g. *mother is cooking (dinner)* may be classified as *cook, tv*” (p. 205), with the semantic representation:

cook [----- Agt, *Obj / Obj-del].

Where “the totally covert role-- the lower ranking of the two roles is marked with (*), and the reason why” (1979, p. 206) is marked after the slash in the representation.

That is to say

the semantic material is the one that is mentioned in the semantic description or representation of a given microscene. WHATEVER follows the SLASH is HOW this semantic material SURFACES or is ordered on the surface, in which case we are talking of syntax (= arrangement, positioning, ORDERING). It also accounts for deletions (elliptic elements) which can also be accounted for by syntax. Including syntactic information after the slash which means we can derive syntactic benefits from the semantic material EXPRESSED in the MICROSCENE" (Nicolacópulos, 2006, personal communication).

The *totally* covert roles are so called because they are never present in the surface (syntactic) structure. These are the *coreferential* and *lexicalised* roles. The *coreferential* roles, also termed *dual roles*, are defined as “two roles in deep structure that refer to the same person or thing [and consequently] receive a single realization in surface structure” (Cook, *ibid*, p. 206). For example, in **3 a. Michael ran** (p. 94 above) Michael is the object moving from one place to another (not defined where and so marked as deleted) *and* the Agent, the semantic representation is: *run* [___ Agt, *Obj, *Loc / Agt = Obj, Loc-del].

On the other hand “[I]*lexicalised* roles are case roles that are incorporated into the surface verb form [... and do] not normally appear in surface structure” (Cook, 1989, p. 204, *my italics*). In **pBen Benefactive 37** from the analysis p. 153 below:

Mr Blair is considering *a second reform* (Agt) *that would EMASCULATE* (153) [remove power from] *the Treasury* (pBen_{neg}) (Obj-lex) even more brutally.

emasculate means to remove power from and is therefore a power Benefactive negative predicator, the point being that power is lexicalised and the semantic representation is:

emasculate [----- Agt, pBen_{neg}, *Obj / Obj-lex] {pBen_{neg}}

However, in some cases the Locative role is lexicalised in for example, nail or screw something down, Cook's microscene: "*He bottled the beer*, where *bottle* = put in bottles, is not analysed as *bottle* [----- Agt, Obj], but as *bottle* [----- Agt, Obj, *Loc / Loc - lex]" (Cook, 1979, p. 206, my notation symbols)

Summing up, in his matrix model, Cook (1979, 1989) (i) adopts deep structure according to Fillmore (1971a); (ii) case system according to Fillmore (1968) and Chafe (1970), with some alterations; (iii) types of verbs according to Chafe (1970), again with alterations; (iv) the obligatory Object according to Anderson (1971); and the theory of covert roles according to Fillmore (ibid), and, based on these models, he proposes his own case model. Nicolacópulos comments that

Perhaps the most striking similarity between the case grammar models proposed by Fillmore, Chafe, and Anderson is their concentration on the relational aspect of semantic roles [...] Yet, we may find areas of disagreement and these have to do mainly with the list of cases and the status of the deep structure (1981, p. 57).

Continuous research on the list of cases brings us to the UFSC model (Nicolacópulos et al, 1995), and the addition of the Comitative (Fillmore, 1969; Cook, 1989; later studied by Rocha, 2003) and the Holistic (Nicolacópulos, 1992).

2.16. The UFSC model (Nicolacópulos et al, 1995)

Cook proposes five semantic roles, "Agent (**A**), Experiencer (**E**), Benefactive (**B**), Object (**O**), and Locative (**L**)" (1989, p. 190, my parentheses) but puts forward an "essential Time" (**T**) (ibid, p. 196) domain, representing a relation of time, though not included in his matrix. The semantic domains proposed in the UFSC model

(Nicolacópulos et al, 1995), besides Agent, Experiential, Benefactive, Object, Locative, and Time (Tim) along with two other semantic roles:

- i) the “Comitative” (Com) which is adopted from Fillmore (1968, p. 81), also referred to by (Cook, 1989) and represents being in the company of a person(s) or animal(s); and
- ii) the Holistic (Hol), embodying the idea of a part being an element of a whole (the Holistic), for example, body or organisation (Nicolacópulos, 1992).

The model then encompasses eight semantic domains as in the following figure:

Semantic roles (participants)

>Agent>Experiencer> Benefactive> Object>Locative>Temporal>Comitative>Holistic

Figure 7: Representation of reality (semantic representation).

2.16.1. Differences between Cook’s Matrix model and the UFSC 1995 model

The UFSC (Nicolacópulos et al, 1995) semantic-pragmatic model differs from Cook’s (1979, 1989) matrix model on the following points:

- 1) There are eight (8) semantic roles in the Nicolacópulos *et al* semantic-pragmatic model as in **Figure 7** above, rather than in the five in the Matrix (**Table 4**, p. 91 above). **Table 5** overleaf exemplifies these eight roles; the participants are in italics, and the colour coding is brought in from the analysis in **Appendix 4** where the examples are in the newsreport: ‘London beats Paris to 2012 games’.

The semantic role **Agent** (Agt) expresses action, e.g.

a. *the International Olympic Committee* (Agt) has announced London won a two-way fight with Paris by 54 votes to 50 at the IOC meeting in Singapore.

i.e The committee was the instigator of the action of announcing

The **Experiential** role (Exp) represents sensation, emotion, cognition and

communication e.g.

- b. *London's hopes* (Exp) were raised after an impressive presentation by Lord Coe the bid chairman

i.e. London is metonymic for the people of London who are in the role of Experiencer

The **Benefactive** role ((Ben)) registers possession, power, leadership, gain, loss, benefit and transference of property, e.g.

- c. London (Ben) beats Paris (Obj) to 2012 Games, where London wins the competition

The **Object** role (Obj) is the case that,

- (i) expresses what is being described when the verb is stative,
- (ii) what suffers a change when the proposition is a process, or
- (iii) what undergoes the action when the verb is agentive e.g.

d. "*This* (Obj-s) is just *the most fantastic opportunity* (Obj-s), where *this* is a reference to the *opportunity*, both being in the role of stative object in relation to the predicator BE, in a state utterance.

e. *The final round of voting* (Obj) finished at about 1145 BST (Tim), where the round of voting suffered a change.

f. IOC president Jacques Rogge (Agt) revealed *the winner* (Obj), where the *winner* undergoes the action of being revealed.

The **Locative** role (Loc) expresses location, e.g.

g. The 2012 Olympic Games (Obj-pass) will be HELD in London (Loc), where London is the location of the games in 2012.

The **Time** role (Tim) denotes time, e.g.

h. The electronic ballot (Obj) started at 1126 BST (Tim) where 1126 BST is in the semantic role of time

The **Comitative** role (Com) represents being in the company of a person(s) or an animal(s); e.g.;

i. News of London's victory delighted flag-waving supporters who (Agt = Obj) had GATHERED (Com-del) in Trafalgar Square. where the supporters, the gatherers account for the Comitative role

The **Holistic** role (Hol), embodies the idea of a part being an element of a whole (the Holistic), for example, body or organisation, e.g.

j. footballers Laurent Blanc and Zinedine Zidane (Obj) WERE among those backing the Paris bid (Hol), / where the football players form a group backing the Paris bid and accounting for the Holistic role.

Table 5 Examples of the UFSC model semantic roles.

2) Along with the extra semantic roles Time, Comitative and Holistic there are three different types of predicators and semantic domains: Temporal, Comitative or Holistic, perceived as State, Process or Action.

3) The obligatory Object role has been relaxed, there is **no obligatory Object** role (Obj), as, for example, in

Microscene 10:

the vote [=voting time] **Tim** APPROACHED (also from **Appendix 4**)

4) Involuntary experiential predicators such as please, offend, irritate, enchant, frustrate, frighten or scare are analysed as agentive (Nicolacópulos et al, *ibid*) rather than process (Cook, 1979, 1989), e.g.

Microscene 11

It was a strategy that appeared to *frustrate* Horan

(from: <http://www.abanet.org/crimjust/juvjus/malvo/malvoagewp.html>, December 24th, 2003).

Microscene 12

Use of dogs to *scare* prisoners was authorized

(from <http://www.washingtonpost.com/wp-dyn/articles/A32776-2004Jun10.html>).

5) where, *frustrate* / *scare* are analysed as Agt, *Obj, Exp / Agt=Obj, as respectively *a strategy* / *dogs* express the agent of the action and the content of the experience.

6) The 1995 UFSC model admits the occurrence, though rare, of roles considered mutually exclusive, following Fillmore (1971). For example, the predicator *spend*, which admits the Locative role and the Temporal role, both propositional, as in

“Jeffrey spent the afternoon at the beach” (Fillmore, 1971, p. 51) (**Microscene 6**, p. 89
above)

On the other hand, a rare number of occurrences do not invalidate the norm, supported by Fillmore’s (1977) *notion of scenes*, according to which only elements selected by the speaker are placed in perspective, that is, *foregrounded*, the other elements being *backgrounded*.

7) It exceptionally admits more than three (3) roles in one proposition, as in the example of *spend* from Fillmore (1971).

Microscene 4 (p. 88 above)

“Jeffrey (Agt=Obj) spent the afternoon (Tim) at the beach (Loc) with his family (Com)”
(Fillmore, 1971, p. 51, my annotations added)

8) The model considers that roles are in a relationship of association with the predicator (and not of dependency). Thus, the predicator reflects this interaction and the content of meaning spread through the utterance produced in context. The predicator is then “a type of enunciative synthesis” (Nicolacopulos et al, *ibid*) a term suggested by Professor Maria Marta Furlanetto.

9) The UFSC 1995 model takes pragmatic and discursive elements into consideration in the sentence analysis, permitting a semantic-pragmatic approach to the utterance. It is by means of this semantic-pragmatic model that Oliveira, M. G. A. (1995) broaches the phenomenon of metaphoric utterances, the topic of the next section.

2.17. Visualising metaphorisation

Although Cook makes no mention of metaphor his Matrix model assists in the visualisation of semantic displacement. Thinking back to the Matrix model in **Table 4** (p. 91 above), when the sense of a predicator changes to another meaning then it takes a semantic displacement, moving to another domain represented by the coloured arrow in **Figure 8**.

Microscene 1:

Prince Charles has again fallen from his horse (p. 65 above)

is Locative. If this changes to

Prince Charles married Camilla, *the first woman he fell in love with* (my example 5)

the Locative predicator FALL has become a polysemous metaphor (Oliveira, 1995), displacing to the Experiential semantic domain re-presented by arrow (i) in **Figure 8**, and also a *pseudo-Locative*. In terms of cells in Cook’s matrix a predicator becomes (a) a *metaphor* and (b) a *pseudo-[domain]¹⁷ predicator* when it moves from one column to another.

Semantic domains →	Basic	Experiential	Benefactive	Locative
Verb Types ↓				
1. State				
2. Process				(i)
3. Action				

Figure 8: Inter-domain movement within the matrix model

In the following section the Benefactive according to Oliveira (1999) will be discussed, leading to a diagram presenting an *intra-domain* movement.

2.18. The Benefactive according to Oliveira (1999)

In her research on Brazilian media reports from economics and politics Oliveira (1999) analysed Portuguese “utterances containing verbs with a benefactive trace as their essential nucleus” (p.120, my translation). In a Benefactive microscene “the arguments accompanying Benefactive¹⁸ predicators integrate notions of *possession, power, leadership, gain/loss, benefit/prejudice, transference of property or power*” (p.120, my translation respecting author’s italics) and are indicative of the Benefactive domain, generating Benefactive microscenes which may be States, Processes or Actions. **Table 6** shows some examples.

¹⁷ [domain], can be replaced by any of the semantic domains discussed in this text, e.g. Basic, Experiential, Benefactive, Comitative, etc.

¹⁸ As mentioned earlier I capitalise the names of semantic relationships to be consistent in distinguishing between the *Basic* semantic concept and the basic sense.

STATE	PROCESS	ACTION
B, O _s ¹⁹	B, O	A, B, O
have	gain	give
possess	lose	deliver
lead	receive	provide

Table 6: Benefactive semantic domain verb types (Oliveira, *ibid*, p. 128, my translation)

The concept of the *power Benefactive* as a subdivision of the Benefactive came to light from Flores (1994) and Oliveira's (1999) definition, but had not been dealt with until Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos 2003 research. A Benefactive microscene expresses a situation foregrounding "the possession and transfer of property" (Oliveira: *ibid*) "or power" (Nicolacópulos & Steele Weickert, 2003; 2005a). The "benefaction may be either positive or negative and the benefactor maybe a gainer or a loser" (Cook, *ibid*, p. 191), or, competing for property or power. My proposal for extending the Benefactive semantic domain (possession, gain or loss, benefit or prejudice) to encompass the notion of *power* in language, puts forward the concept of the *power Benefactive* enabling a higher delicacy of analysis than the umbrella term Benefactive. **Table 7** in the following chapter visually presents how the 1999 definition of Benefactive precipitated out into separate concepts.

From the ensuing section a similarity may be seen between further ideas of Systemics and the applications of Case grammar models. The section introduces research that draws on the notions of a Case Grammar.

2.19. Case Grammar applications

Case grammar plays a representative part in several areas of research: Artificial Intelligence, computational linguistics, machine translation, computer

¹⁹ object is marked with subscript s – O_s – to represent stativity

language processing, child language, psychology, psycholinguistics, foreign language studies, and Natural language processing, for example.

Zarri (1998) and Pearson (1990, p. 446) write that “[r]esearches in Artificial Intelligence began using it in the early seventies”. Margaret Masterman (2005) was interested in computational linguistics, machine translation, computer language processing and Artificial Intelligence, which involve all representational systems. She “believed that meaning, not grammar, was the key to understanding languages, and that machines could determine the meaning of sentences” (back cover). This researcher pointed out that some of the elements of these “representational system[s...] had their function[s] merged with what were later to become case labels, in the sense of Fillmore’s Case Grammar (1968)” (p. 9).

Cook (1989) mentions the use of Case theory “in the study of child language acquisition” (p. x). In fact “Fillmore’s case grammar was appealing to psychologists and educators” (Pearson, *ibid*, p. 446), while inversely “[R]esearch into child language acquisition has provided excellent opportunities for testing case theory” (Hurst, 1990, p. 20-21). This is consistent with Donnelly’s (*ibid*) opinion that “Case grammar forms the basis of coherence studies today. Many psychologists and linguists believe that it is the model which best depicts the way the mind actually processes text” (p. 71). “The case-grammar approach has been perhaps more influential among developmental psycholinguistics than among students of the “adult grammar”. For its concrete entities seem well suited to characterizing the utterances of the child” (Wallman, 1992, p. 80, author’s inverted commas). Budwig (1995) also refers to Fillmore’s Case Grammar in her child language research saying:

discussion of the child language literature draws upon the sorts of categories that are central to Fillmore’s proposal [... explaining that ...] the idea behind Fillmore’s case grammar was to provide a bridge between descriptions of events and underlying syntactic representation (Budwig, 1995, p. 26).

Another researcher, Harris (1990) affirms that in terms of “children’s language, the case grammar approach has a number of specific advantages. Since it does not need to invoke grammatical categories, such as sentence subject, it can provide a description which is more directly linked with the utterances children use” (p. 38). Halliday correspondingly says

When a child of nineteen months saw a complex phenomenon taking place and reported it as '*man clean car* 'a man was cleaning a car', the fact that this is separated into three segments reflects the interpretation of composite experiences into their component parts; the different grammatical functions assigned to *man*, *clean*, *car* express the different roles of these parts with respect to the whole; the distinction into word classes of verb and noun reflects the analysis of experience into goings-on, expressed as verbs, and participants in the goings-on, expressed as nouns; and so on [...] hence we have verbs and nouns, to match the analysis of experience into processes and participants. This is how children are able to construe a grammar: because they can make a link between the categories of the grammar and the reality that is around them and inside their heads. They can see the sense that lies behind the code (Halliday, 1994, p. xviii).

Mclaughlin (1998) reaffirms this writing that

The emergence of semantic theories such as case grammar changed more than just the prevailing perspective of language in general. It altered the theoretical model of language development. This new perspective significantly influenced procedures in child language research and introduced new considerations in treating children with disordered language (p. 161).

In a personal experience communicating with deaf academics and an interpreter present it came to my mind that *Libras*, the Brazilian sign language, functions in a similar way, by providing a bridge between a description of realities, a visual link between component parts of goings-on. The receivers interpret the sense that lies behind the semantic representation of the sign language (or code) as concepts in the present, past or future. Our semantic-pragmatic model may be used in future research to investigate the transference of semantic concepts by sign language as ““case grammar” labels gives rise to “conceptualizations” [...] the “conceptualization” translating the “deep meaning” of the sentence (Zarri, 1998, p. 19-6, author’s inverted commas) in the same way that

case theory has been used in the description of foreign language. Case grammar descriptions have been developed for many languages in Ph.D dissertations. These

include European languages such as Spanish (Aid, 1973), French (Anderson, 1975), German (Hall, 1976), Dutch (Moskey, 1978), Portuguese (Nicolacópulos, 1981), and Norwegian (Sorenson, 1983). They also include many non-European languages such as Japanese ..., Chinese ..., Persian ..., Vietnamese ..., Korean ..., Thai ..., and Arabic ... (Cook, 1989, p. x)

Research into the application of the matrix to other languages, Italian (Souza Schissatti & Nicolacópulos, 2002a, 2002b, Souza Schissatti, 2004), Dutch (Moskey, 1979) and Irish Gaelic (Fearghail, 2005) and another thesis on Spanish (McCoy, 1969), further suggest its viability for describing language at a universal level. Hurst (1990, p. 20) agrees with this because “case grammar explores below-the–surface meaning relations, it can be used to describe various kinds of languages and perhaps, though this has not been definitively established, to describe all languages”. Whereas Natural language Processing “is based entirely on structural knowledge such as syntax, selectional restrictions, case grammar, and static knowledge such as frames” (Allen, 1993, p. 154)

My main aim in this section was to point out how ‘Case Grammar’ has played an important part in the story of language research. An Emeritus professor from Birmingham University once revealed that on asking Fillmore why he had moved on from ‘Case Grammar’ Fillmore replied ‘Because it doesn’t work’. Other academics would disagree, Chan (2005), for example says “many researchers in linguistics and philosophy have accepted that every nominal constituent in every language bears a single syntactic-semantic case relation” (p. 118). Longacre (1996) thinks “the initial excitement of ‘case grammar’ came to a crest in the late 1970s, and is therefore some two decades behind us [...he believes] nevertheless, that an abiding contribution is seen in the persistent references down to the present” (p. 154) and Hurst (ibid) “finds much still worthwhile and appealing about the case approach, especially if it is not proclaimed as the solution to all problems involving the relationship between syntax and semantics or between meaning and structure” (pp. 20-21). While Holk (1998) trusts in the

usefulness of Case Grammar “if revised on some crucial points” (pp. 78-79). Although I pointed out that in the 1970s there was a surge towards respect for the context of utterances, I reaffirm that most of the descriptions of theoretical perspectives published have explanations based on loose sentences.

Research conducted has resulted in a refinement of Case Grammar models, this approach becoming semantic-pragmatic, being applied to language in use, where the context is of primordial importance to provide the most accurate analysis possible. As academics we do not claim that there is a solution to all difficult analyses encountered in real data, there is room for expansion in semantic models. Language is changing, developing; and other models recognise difficulties too (O’Donnell, *ibid*). The Nicolacópulos *et al* model is continually being polished as issues are rethought when analysing contemporary data. The UFSC case model (Nicolacópulos *et al*, 1995), based on Fillmore’s (1968, 1977) *proposition* and Cook’s (1979, 1989) *Matrix model*, taking into consideration the research on polysemic predications and metaphor (Oliveira, M de G, 1995) has been developed into a *semantic-pragmatic* approach (*ibid*; Oliveira, 1999, Rocha, 2003). Oliveira’s (1999) work gave insight to the Benefactive being an umbrella term, giving rise to the quasi-Benefactive (Silva, 2002) and the proposal of this thesis the power Benefactive relationship. Since the public presentation (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2003) of the *power Benefactive* its fine details have undergone refinements. A summary of this process from 1968 to the present will be described as part of the methodology in the following chapter, along with the description of the research procedure.

CHAPTER 3

METHODS

The methodology chapter is divided into two parts:

- i) the tenets on Case Grammar leading to the state-of-the-art version of the Nicolacópulos *et al* model, incorporating the power Benefactive, employed in the analysis.
- ii) a description of the procedure to conduct the research.

3.1.1.1. The power Benefactive semantic subdomain

A power microscene expresses a situation foregrounding the notion of power in utterances from a relational point of view, and can be represented at the ideational level (in Halliday's terminology) by the power Benefactive. The power Benefactive can be implemented in the identification of the traffic of the notion of power. The participants surrounding a Benefactive predicator assimilate notions of “possession, **power, leadership**²⁰, gain/loss, benefit/prejudice, **transference of property or power**” (Oliveira, 1999, p. *ibid*, my translation and colouring), where the red items are the foundations for defining the power Benefactive, laid out in the table below. This table facilitates the visualisation of *intra*-domain semantic moves. As the name suggests it is a movement within a grouping.

²⁰ In 1999, leadership was considered as Benefactive being leadership in a championship, not politics or being in control of a group, the latter being **power** Benefactive.

Domain (1999) / subdomain (2005)		Notions
1999	<p style="text-align: center;">the Benefactive domain (Ben) (ii) ↓</p>	<p><i>possession</i> <i>gain/loss,</i> <i>benefit/prejudice,</i> <i>transference of property</i></p>
2005	<p style="text-align: center;">the power Benefactive subdomain (pBen)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">the quasi-power Benefactive (qpBen)</p>	<p>power leadership,, gain/loss of power, transference of power</p> <p>struggling/ competing for power</p>

Table 7: Notions of the power Benefactive extracted from the Benefactive (Steele Weickert, 2005; Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a, 2005b, 2006)

In **power Benefactive microscene 100** (analysis, **Chapter 4** below):

Mr Howard (Agt=pBen-del) immediately went on to insist he was "working very hard to WIN (24) this election (Obj)

the predicator *win* is a power Benefactive metaphor, a pseudo-Benefactive predicator having undergone an *intra*-domain displacement shown by arrow (ii) in **Table 7**. Previous to this manuscript pBen accounted for positive and negative polarity, the 2007 model has expanded on that, as discussed in the next section.

3.1.2. In-power, not-in-power and quasi-power

Drawing on Cook, “benefaction may be either positive or negative and the benefactor may be a gainer or a loser” (ibid, p. 191). The proposition of a power Benefactive microscene embodies the notion of ‘in-power’, ‘not-in-power’, or ‘quasi-power’ i.e. competing for power, where power also includes the concept of being in control. In the semantic representation a ‘loss of power’ is categorised as power Benefactive negative, appearing as pBen_{neg}. Identifying negative power microscenes seems important from what Fairclough (1989) says that “power [...] is never

definitively held by any one person, or social grouping, because power can be won and exercised only in and through social struggles in which it may also be lost” (p.43). The question of ‘struggle’ for power brings forth an intermediary situation requiring the denomination for “competing for power’, i.e. the quasi-power Benefactive, giving the picture of power associations as in **Figure 9**.

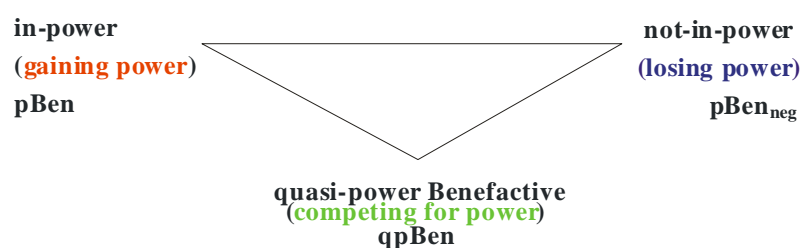


Figure 9: ‘in-power’, ‘not-in-power’ and ‘quasi-power’

Running for president, when an individual is neither *in-power* nor *not-in-power*, neither *gaining power* nor *losing power* is analysed as quasi-power Benefactive represented as ‘qpBen’ in the semantic representation.

Reiterating, my research identifies linguistic marks of power surfacing in the text as power Benefactive, quasi-power Benefactive predicators, or pseudo predicators from other domains. A pertinent aspect is that a high percentage of these predicators are pseudo-[domain] predicators (cf. **Footnote 17**, p. 102 above), that is, power Benefactive metaphors. A significant number of predicators are polysemic from 2 perspectives:

- (i) the predicators identified have semantically taken on a power Benefactive meaning by metaphorising from their basic sense towards the power Benefactive. That is to say, in their basic sense they belong to one semantic domain and have undergone a semantic displacement, which is a metaphoric move into another semantic domain. A non-basic power Benefactive predicator is hence a metaphor of a polysemic predicator from another domain.

- (ii) in their basic sense they are power Benefactive, but may be used metaphorically to display new meanings in other contexts, becoming pseudo-power Benefactives. This became obvious during the analysis of the predicator DETAIN, a basically power Benefactive predicator mentioned in **Chapter 1** and discussed in the next section.

3.1.3. The pseudo-[domain] predicator

When a predicator displaces from its original basic sense it becomes a metaphor. If it is originally Holistic, for example, JOIN, as in

my example 6

My grandson *joined* the chess club

then takes on a new sense, for example the power Benefactive in

Microscene 13

For decades Col Gaddafi tried to portray himself as leader of the Arab world, but after *attempts to JOIN (427) forces with Egypt, Tunisia and Syria* failed he took up a mission of uniting Africa (from ASW0019B).

JOIN has become a power Benefactive metaphor. At the same time *join*, in this microscene, is a pseudo-Holistic predicator. Originally from the Holistic semantic domain it has displaced to the power Benefactive subdomain influenced by the context in which it currently stands. In the case of predicators, a polysemous metaphor may also be referred to as a pseudo-[domain] predicator, the *domain* depending on the basic sense of that predicator.

The 2003 pilot study provided the following power scene:

Microscene 14

As U.S forces try to crush growing armed resistance, the military said troops had conducted 53 raids across Iraq DETAINING 316 people and confiscating arms, ammunition and explosives in Operation Soda Mountain launched Saturday. Another operation, Ivy Serpent, is part of the crackdown.

where *detain* is power Benefactive in its basic sense because to *detain* somebody is to exert force over them. The semantic representation is:

detain [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt = pBen-del] { pBen }

At that time this predicator was chosen as an example of a power Benefactive predicator and a study of 100 concordance lines for DETAIN, randomly selected from the BNC was performed. The results showed that 65% of the time *detain* holds true to its basic sense. 8% of the lines were ambiguous, and 27% of the lines yielded other senses. Those twenty-seven (27) occurrences became pseudo-power Benefactive predicators; recapitulating, *detain* lent itself to other semantic domains 27% of the times, occurring as a metaphor. Of the twenty-seven (27) microscenes *other than* power Benefactive twelve (12) surrendered Locative metaphors, five (5) Experiential metaphors, four (4) Comitative metaphors, four (4) Benefactive metaphors and two (2) Basic metaphors. There is a drawback of using the BNC - the loose sentences supplied have little accompanying text, meaning that in the eight (8) ambiguous lines it was impossible to determine what exactly is foregrounded, for example in

Microscene 15

'Some tourists were booking in, she could not detain Eduardo longer'

there are different possible interpretations:

1. Time: 'make Eduardo spend more time with her' (the question of time is foregrounded)
2. Locative: 'make Eduardo spend more time *there*' where the location may be foregrounded.
3. Comitative: 'make Eduardo spend more time in her 'company' if the issue of her company is foregrounded.

Microscene 16

'When I detained him by a greeting, he looked up a little puzzled, saying that he thought'

when paraphrased as 'I kept him in my company' determines *detain* as a Comitative metaphor.

Microscene 17

‘Through the fifteenth-century wooden door there is little to detain the visitor, just a few tantalizing traces of eleventh-century frescoes’

suggests there is little to capture the attention of the visitor, so the microscene is Experiential. In another microscene ‘*here*’ and ‘*Malta*’ foreground the microscene as Locative, where *detain* is a Locative metaphor in

Microscene 18

‘I would not wish to detain you here in Malta longer than I need’ and ‘I won't detain you [here] and spoil your fun’.

The pseudo-[domain] predicator is a Basic metaphor in the cause and effect microscene below:

Microscene 19

I am the pearl the knight must capture to win heaven and the drug that will detain him from his quest.

According to 2006 perspectives

Microscene 20

‘an innkeeper may detain any property brought to the inn by a guest until the guest has paid his or her bill in full’

was analysed considering that the property is *temporarily* in the custody of the innkeeper, and as the innkeeper is not *an official with power* the microscene is Benefactive, and *detain* a Benefactive metaphor. Originally research on the power Benefactive considered only people officially in power as accounting for power Benefactive roles such as in

Microscene 21

‘The right of a bailee to detain a chattel from its owner until payment be made, not only in respect of ...’

where a ‘bailee’ is an official (pBen) and the microscene is power Benefactive where a chattel is *legally* in the bailee’s possession. In 2007, rethinking of the power Benefactive concept embraces other hierarchical levels of power, not just the obvious legal roles, exemplifying the requirement for a power cline. Considering the 65% of

occurrences of *detain* in its basic sense, the power Benefactive microscenes vary for instance:

« a patient being kept in hospital, as in

Microscene 22

'The patients were all detained under the Mental Health Act, required urgent surgery or invasive investigation'

« power over a child, either a teacher, as in

Microscene 23

'Committee concluded that a parent would not be able to prohibit a teacher from detaining his child for the purposes of punishment',

« power over a child, as a parent in

Microscene 24

'the limits to a parent's right to detain his/her child probably offers a guide to teachers'.

« institutional authority, such as the police, prison governor, immigration authorities, or customs officer, restricting the freedom of people; law enforcers in general, for example in

Microscene 25

(a) *'The police now have up to ninety-six hours, i.e. four days and nights, to detain people without charge',*

Microscene 26

(b) *'the two officers along with him would have been able to detain her on immigration charges'*

Microscene 27

(c) *'Government powers to arrest and detain terrorist suspects in Northern Ireland' and*

Microscene 28

(d) *'the Libyan authorities had detained several unidentified people suspected of causing a fire'*

Graphs giving a visual representation of the results obtained from the *detain* study are included in the discussion of results section.

The following section continues with part two of the methodology which describes the research procedure.

3.2. METHODS

The second part of the methods chapter describes

- (i) how the corpus was built and the data set up for this PhD research.
- (ii) The methodology for analysing the corpus, including tagging, the random selection of 100 power Benefactive predicators for extensive analysis, and annotating for basic senses.

3.2.1. Compiling the corpus

The 2003 pilot study (cf. p. 16 above) revealed a high density of power Benefactive microscenes in a newsreport corpus on war and politics from the Washington Post on line. These results justified selecting data from the political section of online newspapers for the present research.

My 2005 corpus contains 200 political issue newsreports downloaded on Saturdays and Sundays, to make the most of the dial up connection, in January and February, 2005. Bearing in mind van Dijk's (1986) comment that

By means of headlines we identify, separate, attend to, begin, and end a news report. Semantically, the headline is defined in terms of the highest levels of the thematic macrostructure of the report: The headline expresses the intended highest macroproposition, and therefore signals what is the most relevant or important information of the news report (p.161).

newsreports whose headlines where concerned with power relations were selected from

(i) the Telegraph: <http://www.telegraph.co.uk> and

(ii) the BBC: <http://news.bbc.co.uk>

The initial aim being texts related to war and politics, crime reports on arrests, court trials, or imprisonments were included.

Each article was skimmed to confirm the presence of at least one power Benefactive microscene, using the criteria for defining a microscene as power

Benefactive outlined in 2.2.1. (p. 51) and 2.2.2. (p.52) above. On the identification of a power Benefactive microscene the URL of the newsreport along with its title were recorded in a file, and each webpage saved for future analysis.

The next step was to set up folders and files ready for analysis. Initially a portion of files from each session was transferred to a folder with the intention of setting them up in manageable groups. The principal folders were numbered ‘alyson 0001; corpus folders 04-2005’ then ‘alyson 0002; corpus folders 04-2005’, etc. On the suggestion of Dr. Danielsson (personal communication, 2005a, 2005b), during my stay as a visiting research fellow at the University of Birmingham, UK, two sub folders were then created

- i. 0001 corpus folder and
- ii. 0001 integrity folder.

The 0001 corpus folder was further subdivided with folders designated

- (a) 0001 corpus folder RTF and
- (b) 0001 corpus folder TXT.

Windows explorer then became set out as in **Figure 10** below, where represents a folder with the name adjacent.

alyson 0001; corpus folders 04-2005

File: 0001 bibliographical data for pBen corpus search

0001 corpus folder

0001 corpus folder RTF

0001 corpus folder TXT

0001 integrity folder

Figure 10: The Windows layout for the 2005 Corpus

Upon opening a previously saved newsreport the text was copied into a separate file and saved each initially as

- (i) Rich Text Format to enable highlighting at the time of analysis, then, at a later stage, *after* tagging the microscenes, as
- (ii) Plain Text for use with the Concord tool from the WordSmith 4 software (Scott, 2004).

The RTF and Text files have the corresponding name for a specific news report. labelled '[ASW 0001][online newspaper source][date of retrieval][title of report]', '[ASW 0002][online newspaper source][date of retrieval][title of report]', and so forth, for example: 'ASW 0001 BBC 9-01-05 Bush 'will re-engage on Mid-East' Rich Text Format' and 'ASW 0001 BBC 9-01-05 Bush 'will re-engage on Mid-East' Text document'. ASW being my initials. The mhtml page was then transferred into an integrity folder where the system automatically (i) carried along a folder with the accompanying illustrations and (ii) named the folder and the file: '[online newspaper source][title of report].MHTML document', for example: 'BBC NEWS Politics Bush 'will re-engage on Mid-East'.MHTML document'. Consequently the full 2005 corpus is compiled of both **Telegraph** and **BBC** newsreports. The files have since been renamed ASW0001T to ASW0020B to ASW000X, etc. to facilitate their handling.

The 2005 corpus is divided into 2 (two), a Telegraph corpus and a BBC corpus²¹, my doctoral thesis Corpus contains the first 20 newsreports evidencing pBen microscenes. In each file the first line shows the file number, the name of the newspaper and the report heading. There is the URL address, followed on the next line by the author, and the date e.g.

²¹ At this point I would like to thank a Ph.D student at Birmingham University, Juliet Herring, for our helpful discussions on the matter.

ASW0001T Telegraph 04-01-2005 Howard vows to BACK (1) workers failed by Labour
<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml?xml=/news/2005/01/04/ntory04.xml>
 By Andrew Sparrow, Political Correspondent
 (Filed: 04/01/2005)

The sample is random in as much as the selection was not influenced by the content of one file over the other but merely appearing in the order in which they were downloaded ad hoc.

After analysing the first 20 newsreports, representing 10% of my full corpus, 471 power Benefactive microscenes incorporating 455 power Benefactive predicators had been identified. For this thesis, a representative sample of 100 of these power microscenes; 50 variant pBen predicators randomly selected from the first ten Telegraph newsreports downloaded, and 50 from the BBC corpus were chosen for description. There are currently four parts to the power Benefactive corpus: a, b, c, and d, listed below, compiled from newsreports containing at least one power Benefactive microscene.

The pilot study corpus, set up in July 2003:

- a) 10 online Washington Post newsreports: Newsreport 1 to Newsreport 10

The Ph.D thesis corpus, a 10% cut of the complete 2005 Corpus:

- b) 10 online Telegraph newsreports: ASW0001T to ASW0010T and
- c) 10 online BBC newsreports: ASW0011B to ASW0020B

The remaining 180 newsreports from the 2005 corpus compose the fourth

- d) 90 Telegraph files and 90 BBC for possible cross reference and future research.

The following section describes the methods for analysing the corpus and tagging the microscenes.

3.2.2. Methods for analysing the corpus

After a description of the analysis of a microscene the methodology is again subdivided in 3 parts:

- i) Tagging the microscenes for power Benefactive predicates,
- ii) The random selection of 100 power Benefactive predicates,
- iii) Annotating the concordance files according to the basic senses of the predicates under analysis

3.2.2.1. Analysing the microscene

To begin the analysis in 1981 Nicolacópulos wrote “Each verb is selected and classified according to the type and number of cases required by the meaning of the verb in question, and the representation of the semantic structure is done in terms of case frames” (p. 5). In present day terms a verb, or rather *predicator*, is identified within a clause, or rather *microscene*, and an idea reached as to how many case frames, or rather, *semantic roles*, or, *cases* filled by *participants*, are associated with that predicator according to its valency in its basic sense. The *semantic roles* in that particular microscene are identified, bearing in mind that although the *participants* may not be present in the microscene, they are accounted for in the semantic representation. In the latter case any participant not explicit on the microscene will be marked as deleted, or lexicalized (cf. 2.15.3., p. 95).

The analyst perceives, based on the tenets for semantic domains in **Methodology I**, what possibilities of semantic usage of the predicator under investigation come to mind as a starting point to determine accompanying semantic roles and the valency of the predicator. This *intuitive example* works as the basic sense for *that* analyst. In this thesis dictionaries have been consulted to determine the basic sense for our particular linguistic community (– a Brazilian graduate program in English

language and literature accessing and employing reading material, other academic discourses, and shared knowledge of global English).

The corresponding number of participants for the microscene are located in the utterance. The analyst next examines the microscene to interpret whether any suitable participants correspond to the expected semantic role according to the intuitive meaning of the predicator. If so, then it is confirmed that the predicator is in its basic sense.

On the other hand, the sense of the predicator may have moved to another domain, provoked by the accompanying participants and the *context*. As Oliveira says “[e]ach word is not only a word but a value inserted in the discursive web determined by its relationship with the other words” (2003, p. 28, my translation). The components of the microscene, i.e. the *predicator and participants* are given a value according to their semantic relationship in the specific environment, particular context, where the text is inserted. The semantic value of the predicator having displaced from the basic sense gave light to a metaphor. Considering the resulting semantic representation:

- i) in the presence of ‘stative Object’ - Obj_s – role the microscene is a **State**;
- ii) When there is *no* ‘stative Object’ *nor* Agent role the microscene is a **Process**;
- iii) while, in the presence of an Agent, the microscene is an **Action**.

3.2.2.2. Stage one of the procedure - tagging the microscenes

This section introduces the concept of tagging and puts forward the procedure for

- i. discriminating between power Benefactive microscenes reserved for future research and those to be analysed for this thesis;
- ii. classifying predicators using the lemma – BE;
- iii. dealing with phrasal verbs
- iv. gerunds as predicators.

Tagging is the technical term used in Corpus Linguistics for labelling units of text. The method of tagging used in this research is my own (Steele G. Weickert, 2007). Power Benefactive predicators are tagged using Arabic numerals inside brackets immediately after their occurrence, e.g.

Microscene 29

Howard vows to BACK (1) workers failed by Labour

The pBen predicators composed of more than one lexicogrammatical item are numbered immediately after the central predicator to facilitate alphabetical documentation, e.g.

Microscene 30

Michael Howard pledged to STAND (2) UP FOR Britain's “forgotten majority”

Idioms are tagged – (Arabic numeral-idiom), *conceptual metaphors* – (Arabic numeral-conceptual), and each reserved for future research. Further tagging annotations such as (Roman numerals) and (Greek letter-ellipsis) are described further on.

3.2.2.2.1. Setting up the microscenes to be analysed

On analysing first the Telegraph newsreport corpus, and then the BBC corpus all the power Benefactive predicators were tagged according to the procedure described above (Steele G. Weickert, *ibid*, this page). Concord (Scott, 2004, cf. 2.4., p. 61) picks up power Benefactive microscenes by the tagging on the pBen predicators around which the microscene is pivoted.

Those predicators identified with *Arabic numerals alone* are included in the statistical analysis. There are therefore some microscenes not included in the list for analysis but are discussed in the following section.

3.2.2.2.2. Microscenes not included for random selection

In ASW0002T and ASW0007T roman numerals identify power predicators when they are a pro-verb, an anaphoric (Heberle, 1997a) reference to a previous pBen predicator, for example, **DO (i)** in Microscene 33 is a cohesive reference to CARRY ON italicised in Microscene 31. Microscenes 31-33 are consecutive pieces of text.

Microscene 31

He took the risk of openly discussing a possible Conservative loss to indicate that, unlike John Major and William Hague before him, he would *carry on* rather than quit the day after a general election defeat.

Microscene 32

Michael Howard observes a minute's silence during a visit to Wellingborough, Northants, yesterday

Microscene 33

"If my party want me to **DO (i)** that and I think I can continue to make a contribution, yes, I will," Mr Howard told BBC Radio 4's Today programme.

In file ASW0019B, for the power Benefactive microscene: - *Soon after the coup* - [TOOK PLACE] was added and the microscene tagged with '(α - ellipsis)', but not included for random selection as a specific predicator was not provided:

Microscene 34

Soon after the coup [TOOK PLACE] (α - ellipsis)

There is a focus on metaphor in this thesis (cf. 2.11. and 2.12.) concentrating on the behaviour of "polysemous metaphor" (Eva Hjörne, 2006, p. 194; O'Neill, 2006, p. 144) or "polysemic metaphor" (Oliveira, 1995, my translation; Mansen & Weingagaart, 1995, apud Foster, 2005, p. 38). A polysemic or polysemous metaphor is a lexicogrammatical item which has metaphorised from one semantic domain to another, made possible by its polysemic faculties. Conceptual metaphors have been reserved for future research.

In file ASW0017B the lexical item A POLITICAL CARD (Microscene 35 below) is a conceptual metaphor for a politician, the sense derived from the

“metaphorical concept” (Lakoff & Johnson, 1980, p. 7) of, I would say, POLITICS IS A GAME. This kind of metaphor is tagged with (Arabic numeral-conceptual), as in the following five microscenes:

Microscene 35

- a. "You ARE [BE] (354-conceptual) A POLITICAL CARD," (File ASW0017B),

Microscene 36

- b. "[It WAS] (384-conceptual) One of the most significant ROYAL EXITS in history" (File ASW0018B),

where *royal exit* refers to the monarch(s) leaving the country.

Microscene 37

- c. Mahmoud Abbas IS (202-conceptual) THE FRONT-RUNNER in the race to succeed Mr Arafat (File ASW0011B),

where *the front-runner* refers to the person most likely to win the elections, the sense derived from the “metaphorical concept” (ibid) of, I would say, POLITICS IS A COMPETITION.

Microscene 38

- d. The sword has BECOME (108-conceptual) very NEAR to your neck (File ASW0007T),

where the whole microscene is a conceptual metaphor, the sense derived from the realisation that a sword to the throat is a threat, and,

Microscene 39

- e. "Of course I didn't," said Mr Howard, who dismissed as "nonsense" Labour's claims to HAVE (25-conceptual) A MOLE in Tory headquarters (File ASW0002T).

where *mole* - the animal that digs around underground - is used for a metaphor to refer to someone who is undercover, underground so to speak, in the Tory headquarters and resulting in a breach in security.

Microscene 40

- f. The Shah APPOINTED (375) a new military government in early November. But it **FAILED** (376) to STEM (377-conceptual) the rising tide of support for the Ayatollah.

the sense of *stem the rising tide* is derived from the “metaphorical concept” (ibid) of, I would say, POLITICS IS A SEA.

Microscene 41

- g. the 12 were being held in contravention of human rights laws but they ARE [BE] (258-conceptual) still BEHIND BARS (File ASW0013B),

where *bars* refers metaphorically to *prison*.

Behind bars is a conceptual metaphor, and according to Knowles and Moon's (2006) perspectives on metonymy, *bars* would *also* be a metonym for *prison* or *a cage*. These authors explain metonymy as

involving either part-and-whole relations, such as *hands* to refer to workers, or else naming by association, such as *the stage* to refer to the theatrical profession. Metonymy is important in relation to the study of metaphor (p.47, authors' italics).

Behind bars is labelled as conceptual to avoid confusion with metonyms that are included, such as the *name of a country* representing that country's *governing body*, as, for example, *France*, in **Microscene 42**:

Microscene 42

But he admitted *France* had not *MADE* (358) *concessions on three issues* that the kidnappers had voiced opposition to (File ASW0017B),

Presenting more than one occurrence of a predicator, repeats of predicators were removed before subsequent analysis. The elimination was done automatically using the Concord tool (Scott, *ibid*) then manually, maintaining the lowest identification number, that is, the first occurrence in the set of concordance lines. Different parts of a lemma, even for phrasal verbs, are counted as the same predicator for instance TAKE OVER – TOOK OVER in:

Microscene 43

- a) Mr Howard is grooming David Cameron, 38, the shadow cabinet member [...]to TAKE (31) OVER from him next year (File ASW0002T),

Microscene 44

- b) Mr Abbas, 69, TOOK (70) OVER as leader of the Palestinian Liberation Organisation (PLO) after Mr Arafat died on Nov 11 (File ASW0004T),

only - TAKE (31) OVER – the first occurrence of the lemma, is included in the list for random selection.

The 183 Telegraph pBen predicators are numbered from 1 to 183, the 271 BBC ones from 184 to 455. There are more pBen microscenes than predicators for analysis, as was mentioned earlier, i.e. the following:

- (a) pro-verbs marked (i), (ii), etc,
- (b) predicators deleted (from the surface) (α), (β), etc,
- (c) idioms and
- (d) conceptual metaphors reserved for later research.

The following section discusses power Benefactive predicators incorporating – BE.

3.2.2.2.3. The occurrence of the lemma BE

[lemma -BE]²² in a smaller font inside square brackets has been added in the newsreports when a microscene is elliptical and [BE] inserted as a tag to label the predicators incorporating the lemma -BE. There are 12 (twelve) such microscenes in the corpus (**Table 8**). “Ellipsis is a substitution by zero (\emptyset) or the omission of a lexical item, only recoverable by the context. An ellipsis may be by means of nominal elements, verbs, or even utterances” (Junkes, 1998, p. 56, my translation).

1	David Cameron, 38, the shadow cabinet member [who IS] [BE] (30) IN CHARGE of policy co-ordination
2	an expanded Cabinet Office, [will] possibly [BE] (51) UNDER THE CONTROL OF Mr Milburn.
3	a Department of Economic Affairs, [which WAS] [BE] (56) UNDER [the control of] George Brown in the 1960s
4	a professor [who IS] [BE] (76) UNDER HOUSE ARREST in the US.
5	the Treasury civil servants [who ARE] [BE] (157) RESPONSIBLE for monitoring departmental spending plans would move
6	Such a radical reform would turn the Treasury into a department [that IS] [BE] (161) RESPONSIBLE for little more than taxation.
7	Both Mrs Whyne and her husband, [who WAS] [BE] (175) a former SECURITY GUARD with the Royal Mail, died from internal injuries.
8	"They served this community and brought up nine children, all of us [ARE] [BE] (179) LAW-ABIDING and clean-living.
9	Guantanamo Britons [WILL BE] (223) FREE in weeks
10	[There will] [BE] (264) 'NO ELECTION' for parts of Iraq

²² I have used this format elsewhere to include [extra text in square brackets] in a smaller font for a microscene standing on its own to make sense where the participant is deleted and any surrounding text is not visible.

11	"[It WAS] [BE] (384-conceptual) One of the most significant ROYAL EXITS in history"
12	the kidnap of Rodrigo Granda, [who IS] [BE] (442) A COMMANDER in Colombia's largest left-wing rebel group

Table 8: Twelve (12) elliptical microscenes with the lemma – BE.

There are a further twenty-three (23) pBen microscenes incorporating the predicator BE, as shown below.

1	Mr Blair IS [BE] (41) UNDER PRESSURE from some ministers
2	Mr Blair IS [BE] (45) UNDER PRESSURE from some ministers
3	Jimmy Carter, the former American president, who WAS (73) AN INTERNATIONAL MONITOR of the first Palestinian presidential election
4	there will BE [BE] (80) SAFEGUARDS on secrecy veto
5	those reasons and the use of the veto ARE [BE] (91) SUSCEPTIBLE TO JUDICIAL REVIEW.
6	So Lord Falconer's pledge will BE [BE] (95) the only SAFEGUARD against flagrant use of the veto
7	YOU ARE [BE] (111) FREE to make the choice yourself
8	the threats WERE [BE] (124) REAL.
9	Such a move would reduce the standing of the Treasury – and Mr Brown, if he WERE [BE] (152) still CHANCELLOR at the time
10	Alan Milburn , one of Mr Brown's arch rivals , IS [BE] (160) currently IN CHARGE.
11	Mahmoud Abbas IS [BE] (202-conceptual) THE FRONT-RUNNER in the race to succeed Mr Arafat.
12	"The only reason why we ARE [BE] (212) IN GOVERNMENT is to get on with the job
13	they shouldn't HAVE BEEN [BE] (243) THERE [in Guantanamo Bay]
14	their prosecution WAS [BE] (250) UNSUSTAINABLE
15	the 12 were being held in contravention of human rights laws but they ARE [BE] (258-conceptual) still BEHIND BARS.
16	the security forces, who will BE [BE] (272) RESPONSIBLE for maintaining order
17	Spc Charles Graner was accused of BEING [BE] (290) 'primary TORTURER'
18	the shootings WERE [BE] (334) A "BOTCHED" ACT OF REVENGE by one street gang on another
19	we'RE [BE] (345) IN 60 COUNTRIES now
20	There WAS [BE] (347) a "DIVISION OF THE WORK" between the IAI and other insurgent groups
21	"You ARE [BE] (354-conceptual) A POLITICAL CARD," they were told.
22	the kidnapers were happy that US troops WERE [BE] (356) IN AFGHANISTAN AND IRAQ
23	there HAVE BEEN [BE] (368) an increasing number of VIOLENT CLASHES between security forces and anti-shah demonstrators

Table 9: The twenty-three (23) occurrences of - “BE + a LEXICOGRAMMATICAL ITEM” - composing a power Benefactive predicator in the corpus.

Table 8 and 9 are joined in Table 10, showing all the examples of “BE + a LEXICAL ITEM”, where the microscene is power Benefactive. e.g.

[BE] (30) IN CHARGE of

1	David Cameron, 38, the shadow cabinet member [who IS] [BE] (30) IN CHARGE of policy co-ordination
2	Mr Blair IS [BE] (41) UNDER PRESSURE from some ministers
3	Mr Blair IS [BE] (45) UNDER PRESSURE from some ministers
4	an expanded Cabinet Office, [will] possibly [BE] (51) UNDER THE CONTROL OF Mr Milburn.
5	a Department of Economic Affairs, [which WAS] [BE] (56) UNDER [the control of] George Brown in the 1960s
6	Jimmy Carter, the former American president, who WAS [BE] (73) AN INTERNATIONAL MONITOR of the first Palestinian presidential election
7	a professor [who IS] [BE] (76) UNDER HOUSE ARREST in the US.
8	there will BE [BE] (80) SAFEGUARDS on secrecy veto
9	those reasons and the use of the veto ARE [BE] (91) SUSCEPTIBLE TO JUDICIAL REVIEW.
10	So Lord Falconer’s pledge will BE [BE] (95) the only SAFEGUARD against flagrant use of the vet
11	You ARE [BE] (111) FREE to make the choice yourself
12	the threats WERE [BE] (124) REAL.
13	Such a move would reduce the standing of the Treasury – and Mr Brown, if he WERE [BE] (152) still CHANCELLOR at the time
14	the Treasury civil servants [who ARE] [BE] (157) RESPONSIBLE for monitoring departmental spending plans would move
15	Alan Milburn , one of Mr Brown's arch rivals , IS [BE] (160) currently IN CHARGE.
16	Such a radical reform would turn the Treasury into a department [that IS] [BE] (157) RESPONSIBLE for little more than taxation.
17	Both Mrs Whyne and her husband, [who WAS] [BE] (175) a former SECURITY GUARD with the Royal Mail, died from internal injuries.
18	"They served this community and brought up nine children, all of us [ARE] [BE] (179) LAW-ABIDING and clean-living.
19	Mahmoud Abbas IS [BE] (202-conceptual) THE FRONT-RUNNER in the race to succeed Mr Arafat.
20	"The only reason why we ARE [BE] (212) IN GOVERNMENT is to get on with the job
21	Guantanamo Britons [WILL BE] (223) FREE in weeks
22	they shouldn't HAVE BEEN [BE] (243) THERE [in Guantanamo Bay]
23	their prosecution WAS [BE] (250) UNSUSTAINABLE
24	the 12 were being held in contravention of human rights laws but they ARE [BE] (258-conceptual) still BEHIND BARS.
25	[There will] [BE] (264) 'NO ELECTION' for parts of Iraq
26	the security forces, who will BE [BE] (272) RESPONSIBLE for maintaining order

27	Spc Charles Graner was accused of BEING [BE] (290) 'primary TORTURER'
28	the shootings WERE [BE] (334) A "BOTCHED" ACT OF REVENGE by one street gang on another
29	we'RE [BE] (345) IN 60 COUNTRIES now

Table 10: The thirty-five (35) occurrences of - "BE + a lexical item" - composing a power Benefactive predicator in the corpus, in order of appearance (continued on next page)

30	There WAS [BE] (347) a "DIVISION OF THE WORK" between the IAI and other insurgent groups
31	"You ARE [BE] (354-conceptual) A POLITICAL CARD," they were told.
32	the kidnappers were happy that US troops WERE [BE] (356) IN AFGHANISTAN AND IRAQ
33	there HAVE BEEN [BE] (368) an increasing number of VIOLENT CLASHES between security forces and anti-shah demonstrators
34	"[It WAS] [BE] (384-conceptual) One of the most significant ROYAL EXITS in history"
35	the kidnap of Rodrigo Granda, [who IS] [BE] (442) A COMMANDER in Colombia's largest left-wing rebel group

Table 10 continued: The thirty-five (35) occurrences of - "BE + a lexical item" - composing a power Benefactive predicator in the corpus, in order of appearance.

The microscenes containing 'BE' fall into one of three groups:

- BE + a prepositional phrase.
- BE + a noun group, which is a lexical item, and, for example, may be
 - a. a title of a person in a position / role of power, corresponding to the list in THE 'ADMIRAL' GROUP (Francis et al., 1998, p. 31) and THE 'PRESIDENT' GROUP (ibid, p. 44 - 45) or
 - b. an event.
- BE + an adjective group, which Cook refers to as "adjectival predicates" (1979, p. 146).

The following paragraphs define prepositional phrase, noun group, and adjective group, with accompanying examples.

- A prepositional phrase

typically consists of a preposition and a noun group [...] but it may also consist of a preposition and an adjective group, e.g. *She is described as critically ill* [...] A prepositional phrase typically indicates the circumstances of an action or event, for example its time or place [...] they indicate a person or thing that is directly involved in the action or state indicated by the verb (Francis et al., ibid, p. xxi, authors' emphasis).

for example, the predicator - **BE (76) UNDER HOUSE ARREST**

The basic senses of the occurrences with “BE + an *ADJECTIVE*” are determined according to the adjective, the adjective being the nucleus of the predicator “and written, by convention in capital letters” (Cook, 1979, p. 146). The basic sense of BE *SUSCEPTIBLE*, for example, is Experiential, the sense shifting to power Benefactive, in the following microscene:

Microscene 45

those reasons and the use of the veto ARE (91) SUSCEPTIBLE TO JUDICIAL REVIEW

owing to the presence of the *lexical item* and *adjective group* “*SUSCEPTIBLE TO JUDICIAL REVIEW*”. Bearing in mind that

- *an adjective group*

may consist of just one adjective, e.g. *I was glad*. Or the adjective may have words before it, such as an adverb, e.g. *I was very happy*, or words after it, such as a non-finite clause or a prepositional phrase, e.g. *I was pleased to see her... That was kind of you*. An adjective group is used to describe someone or something, or to give information about them (Francis et al., 1996, p. xix, authors’ emphasis).

and maintaining Cook’s (ibid) decision for the capitalisation of the adjectives. Adjective groups, such as *susceptible to judicial review* are also capitalised. The predicators in this group are also *multiword* lexical items serving as core units.

- A noun group

may consist of just one noun, e.g. *She was afraid of dogs*. Or the noun may have words before it, such as a determiner, adjective, or other modifier, e.g. *on the other side*; or words after it, such as a prepositional phrase or a relative clause, e.g. *We were interested in people who knew things about medicinal plants* (Francis et al., 1998, p. xiv, authors’ emphasis).

for example, the predicator - **BE (73) AN INTERNATIONAL MONITOR**

The following two microscenes are not included in **Table 11** as they are repeated occurrences of BE UNDER PRESSURE and BE IN CHARGE:

Microscene 46

Mr Blair IS [BE] (45) UNDER PRESSURE from some ministers

Microscene 47

Alan Milburn , one of Mr Brown's arch rivals , IS [BE] (160) currently IN CHARGE.

Tables 11, 12 and 13 display a total of twenty-three (23) power Benefactive predicates incorporating the lemma- BE. The entries in these three tables are all included in the list for random selection.

• BE + a prepositional phrase	
1	BE (30) IN CHARGE
2	BE (41) UNDER PRESSURE
3	BE (51) UNDER THE CONTROL OF ...
4	BE (56) UNDER [person in a position of power]
5	BE (76) UNDER HOUSE ARREST
6	BE (212) IN GOVERNMENT
7	BE (243) THERE [in Guantanamo Bay]
8	BE (258-conceptual) BEHIND BARS
9	BE (345) IN 60 COUNTRIES
10	BE (356) IN AFGHANISTAN AND IRAQ

Table 11: Ten (10) examples of “BE + a prepositional phrase” comprising power Benefactive microscenes.

• BE + noun group which is a. a power role	
11	BE (73) AN INTERNATIONAL MONITOR
12	BE (152) CHANCELLOR
13	BE (175) a former SECURITY GUARD
14	BE (202-conceptual) THE FRONT-RUNNER
15	BE (291) [a] TORTURER
16	BE (354-conceptual) A POLITICAL CARD
17	BE (442) A COMMANDER

Table 12: Seven (7) examples of “BE + a noun group which is a power role” comprising power Benefactive microscenes.

The following microscene is not included in Table 14 as it is a repeated occurrence of

BE a SAFEGUARD:

Microscene 48

So Lord Falconer’s pledge will BE ^[BE] (95) the only SAFEGUARD against flagrant use of the veto

b. BE + a noun group which is an event	
18	BE (80) SAFEGUARDS
19	BE (264) 'NO ELECTION'
20	BE (334) A "BOTCHED" ACT OF REVENGE
21	BE [- there WAS] [BE] (347) a "DIVISION OF THE WORK" between ...
22	BE (368) an increasing number of VIOLENT CLASHES
23	BE (384-conceptual) One of the most significant ROYAL EXITS in

Table 13: Six (6) examples of “BE + a noun group which is an event” comprising power Benefactive microscenes.

The following four microscenes are not included in **Table 14** as they are repeated occurrences of the predicators BE FREE, (both occurrences have been removed as they are considered to be parallel to - *to free*) and BE RESPONSIBLE:

Microscene 49

iii) 'You ARE [BE] (111) FREE to make the choice yourself

Microscene 50

iv) a department [that IS] [BE] (161) RESPONSIBLE for little more than taxation.

Microscene 51

v) Guantanamo Britons [WILL BE] (223) FREE in weeks

Microscene 52

iv) the security forces, who will BE [BE] (272) RESPONSIBLE for maintaining order

• BE + an adjective group	
1	BE (91) SUSCEPTIBLE TO JUDICIAL REVIEW
2	BE (124) REAL
3	BE (157) RESPONSIBLE for ...
4	BE (179) LAW-ABIDING
5	BE (250) UNSUSTAINABLE

Table 14: Five (5) examples of “BE + an adjective group” comprising power Benefactive microscenes.

Where predicators are documented as separate entries in the Cobuild Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs (Sinclair & Moon, 1995, abbreviated as CDPV) or another Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs such as the Cambridge online version, all individual entries have been included as options for selection. Before continuing to the analysis descriptions I shall say a few words about phrasal verbs.

3.2.2.2.4. An introduction to phrasal verbs

According to Sinclair & Moon phrasal verbs are “combinations of verbs with adverbial or prepositional particles [...] and] are extremely common in English” (1995, p. iv, authors’ italics). “A phrasal verb consists of a verb and one or more particles. Its meaning is different from that of the verb and the particle(s) taken separately” (Francis et al., 1996, p. xxi). Sinclair & Moon (ibid) also say that “the meaning of the combination [...] can differ greatly from the meanings of the two words used independently” (ibid), for example about, back, down, for, in, into, of, on, out, over, to, carry, give, pull, take, stand, want and make, put, out, off are all very common words “and yet the combinations [...] are not transparent. [...] The fact that phrasal verbs often have a number of different meanings adds to their complexity” (ibid) and also facilitates their lending themselves to new senses, including a power Benefactive one, as is revealed when the Nicolacópulos *et al* model of analysis is applied to my corpus. Importance has been given to stand-alone predicators separately to when accompanied by particles in phrasal verbs. “Particles often have particular meanings which they contribute to a variety of combinations, and which are productive: that is, these fixed meanings are used in order to create new combinations” (Sinclair & Moon, 1995, p. iv), giving rise to those new meanings, new basic senses. This is an indication for the need to place the point of departure of the metaphors as the basic sense of the ‘phrasal verb’ and not the stand-alone predicator. In:

Microscene 53

Voting has been extended by two hours in the Palestinian Authority presidential poll because *some voters have been HELD (58) UP by Israeli army checkpoints*

the predicator *hold up* is a phrasal verb and **not** the verb *hold* alone, accompanied by the preposition *up*. The online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary, bringing *four*

different definitions for *hold up*, shows examples of how *phrasal verbs* can also lend themselves to different meanings.

hold sb/sth up (STEAL) phrasal verb [M]	Benefactive
to steal from someone using violence or the threat of violence:	
They held the same bank up twice in one week.	
He was held up at gunpoint by a gang of masked youths.	
hold sb/sth up (DELAY) phrasal verb [M]	Time
to delay someone or something:	
Traffic was held up for several hours by the accident.	
hold up (REMAIN STRONG) phrasal verb	Basic
to remain strong or successful:	
Will his alibi hold up (= continue to seem true) in court?	
I hope the repairs hold up until we can get to a garage.	
hold sth up as sth phrasal verb (ALSO hold up sth as sth)	Experiential
to use someone or something as an example of something, especially something very good:	
Sweden is often held up as an example of a successful social democracy.	

Phrasal verbs are abundant in my corpus:- nineteen - *stand down*, *stand aside*, *make way*, *rein in*, *deal with*, *hold up*, *take over*, *take back*, *wanted for*, *bring to*, *hand in*, *give back*, *carry on*, *plunge into*, *pull into*, *accuse of*, *refuse to*, *throw out* and *set about*, are all among the first 100 pBen predicators of my corpus. Eighteen (18) of the 100 randomly selected pBen predicators are phrasal verbs - **stand (2) up for**, **deal (6) with**, **carry (19) on**, **rein (42) in**, **hold (58) up**, **move (71) towards**, **wanted (77) for**, **insist (99) on**, **shoot (121) down**, **carry (129) out**, **lead (133) to**, **get (193) back into**, **stand (208) aside**, **shut (247) down**, **take (310) back**, **preside (390) over**, **take (394) over**, **refer (400) to**, and will be discussed later.

The next section cites gerunds as predicators generating microscenes

3.2.2.2.5. Gerunds as predicators

The following compose microscenes in the present analysis:

i) predicators in prepositional phrases, that is where the predicator is introduced by a preposition, for example - by DECENTRALISING - in

Microscene 54

The Tory leaders said his second priority was to “*give power back to the people*” by *DECENTRALISING* (9) *services such as health and education*. His third priority would be to restore order.

and

ii) other gerunds such as *avoiding* in:

Microscene 55

But his decision to countenance the possibility of defeat yesterday surprised some of his MPs. One senior frontbencher said that *AVOIDING* (33) *another leadership contest immediately after an election defeat was sensible*.

The ensuing section explains how WordSmith 4 software (Scott, 2004) is used for the second stage of my analysis

3.2.2.3. Stage two procedure

My corpus for study, as previously discussed, consists of 20 files saved i) as *RTF* files which can be further tagged, and ii) as *TXT* files to enable Concord to read the files and locate the source texts if required. Readers familiar with this software may feel some details herein to be superfluous; however, as this is a multidisciplinary thesis, some procedures and terms may not be familiar to those specialising in areas other than Corpus Linguistics.

3.2.2.4. THE TELEGRAPH CORPUS

Taking first the 10 Telegraph files a set of concordance lines was obtained for the pBen microscenes, selected by the tagging on the pBen predicators. Concordance lines not tagged with Arabic numerals alone were removed. There were 190 concordance lines although 183 pBen predicators had been numbered because, as explained above, some of the brackets served a purpose other than tagging predicators, such as pro-verbs, abbreviations, e.g. the Palestinian Liberation Organisation (PLO). Those labelled (Arabic numeral-idiom) and (Arabic numeral-conceptual) were also

removed, along with repeated occurrences of any predicators, leaving a total of 123 variant power Benefactive predicators from the Telegraph corpus. The same procedure was later followed for the BBC corpus, also deleting concordance lines with items such as (*α-ellipsis*) in

Microscene 56

before the new Act [CAME INTO FORCE] (*α-ellipsis*)

In order to remove the lines mentioned the concordance lines were *resorted*²³, selecting the options *ascending* and *L1* to order alphabetically, facilitating the recognition of repeats. L1 represents the first column to the left of the tags (brackets), where the pBen predicators are situated.

The tagged items are highlighted in red as can be seen in the screen shot in **Figure 4**, over the page, notice the Concord software does not recognise the ‘*α*’, and registers ‘?’ instead. The search word for the concordance lines is centralised and highlighted in green, in this set the search word was (*) which identifies any single string of characters in brackets. (*) does not identify (Filed: 02/01/2005) which, because of the space between “(Filed:” and “02/01/2005)” this would count as two strings, and be recognised by (* *). The lines selected for deletion are highlighted in grey.

²³ *resort* is a term used in Corpus Linguistics to refer to the re-arrangement of concordance lines

yesterday " If my party want me to DO (i) that and I think I can continue to make overwhelmingly DOMINATED (134) by Shi'ite muslim parties. Iraqi "I found many people have DONE (ii) like me, because they are afraid that four election workers were DRAGGED (120) from their car and SHOT (121) to be keeping its promise to EASE (74) the passage of Palestinians at reform that would EMASCULATE (153) the Treasury even more brutally. HEADS (92), has not EMENDED (93) the Fol Act to ENSHRINE (94) the Tony Blair was accused of ENGAGING (146) IN an "obscene" power struggle (93) the Fol Act to ENSHRINE (94) the need for a collective Cabinet with Labour by ESPOUSING (38) the "values of the forgotten majority" Six other candidates are FIGHTING (75) the election including a Marxist PLO and car bombs after being FINGERED (118) as "collaborators". But three days polls, and Palestinian militants FIRED (64) at least two rockets into Israel from the new Act [CAME INTO FORCE] (?-ellipsis), but the Conservatives from insurgent's intent on FORCING (117) Iraq's January 30 poll into chaos. us in a moral quagmire, unable to GET (11-idiom) A GRIP ON rising crime and said his second priority was to "GIVE (8) power BACK to the people " by "nonsense" Labour's claims to HAVE (25-conceptual) A MOLE in Tory which the Lord Chancellor HEADS (92), has not EMENDED (93) the Fol Act

Figure 11: A screen shot of a concordance file showing lines selected for deletion.

I now go on to the description of randomly selecting predicators for further analysis.

3.2.2.4.1. Randomly selecting 50 pBen predicators from the Telegraph corpus

After removing duplicates of predicators, maintaining the first occurrences only, there were 128 concordance lines remaining. These were subsequently reduced to 50 random lines using WordSmith tools, and saved as a Concordance (cnc) file then as an Excel file to consequently include as **Table 18**, p. 125 below).

The first time this was done some of the microscenes seemed to be very similar. At an earlier stage *only* the first occurrence of the two items ELECT and RE-ELECT (cf. **Table 16**) had been included because the basic senses are the same and would give rise to parallel analyses. Therefore, only *one* of the items CUT DOWN TO and CUT (**Table 15**) was included on the same grounds, the lower numbered one, i.e. the

first occurrence. (In **Tables 15, 16** and **17** the predicators bullet pointed with arrows were included in the selection, the bold items partake of the 100 random sample).

⇒ "The <u>Prime Minister</u> is determined to CUT (44) <u>Gordon Brown</u> DOWN TO SIZE."
• "There is no truth in the suggestion that a recommendation to CUT (162) the size of the <u>Treasury</u> has been put forward."

Table 15: Two microscenes with CUT and CUT DOWN.

This goes for ENGAGE IN and RE-ENGAGE IN, FORCE and FORCE-FEED too in **Table 16**.

⇒ <u>Palestinians</u> head to the polls to ELECT (201) a <u>successor</u> to their deceased president <u>Yasser Arafat</u> .
• His only "motivation" was to ensure <u>Labour</u> was RE-ELECTED (207)
⇒ <u>insurgent's</u> intent on FORCING (117) Iraq's January 30 <u>poll</u> into <u>chaos</u>
• was FORCE-FED (293) pork and alcohol, against <u>Islamic law</u>
⇒ <u>Tony Blair</u> was <u>accused</u> of ENGAGING (146) IN an "obscene" <u>power struggle</u> with <u>Gordon Brown</u>
• <u>Tony Blair</u> has predicted that <u>George Bush</u> will RE-ENGAGE (185) IN <u>Middle East peace efforts</u>

Table 16: parallel analysis predicators

On the other hand, ENGAGE IN is basic sense Experiential and DISENGAGE is basic sense Holistic and they are both candidates for selection, as the analyses would be different (cf. Table 17).

⇒ <u>Tony Blair</u> was <u>accused</u> of ENGAGING (146) IN an "obscene" <u>power struggle</u> with <u>Gordon Brown</u>
⇒ the <u>Israelis</u> DISENGAGE (191) from part of the <u>occupied territories</u>

Table 17: Microscenes for the pBen predicators considered similar, or not.

The data was re-run in Concord after the adjustments and the final random selection of 50 Telegraph pBen predicators for further analysis obtained and laid out in the table over the page.

	Power Benefactive predicators		Power Benefactive predicators
1	ABDUCT (172)	26	HEAD (92)
2	ABOLISH (35)	27	HOLD (34)
3	ACHIEVE (23)	28	HOLD (58) UP
4	ASSASSINATE (173)	29	INSIST (99) ON
5	BE (73) AN INTERNATIONAL MONITOR	30	KNEEL (122)
6	BE (30) IN CHARGE	31	LEAD (133) TO
7	BE (124) REAL	32	LOSE (12)
8	BE (157) RESPONSIBLE	33	MOVE (52)
9	BE (56) UNDER	34	MOVE (71) TOWARDS
10	BE (76) UNDER HOUSE ARREST	35	PREVENT (81)
11	BOYCOTT (63)	36	QUIT (20)
12	BUILD (72)	37	REIN (45) IN
13	CARRY (19) ON	38	RESIGN (105)
14	CARRY (129) OUT	39	RESPECT (3)
15	COME (43)	40	SHOOT (121) DOWN
16	CONDUCT (126)	41	STAND (2) UP FOR
17	CURB (54)	42	STOP (177)
18	DEAL (6) WITH	43	TAX (7)
19	DECIDE (87)	44	TRANSFER(148)
20	DISMANTLE (49)	45	THREATEN (53)
21	EMASCULATE (153)	46	URGE (101)
22	ENSHRINE (94)	47	VETO (84)
23	FIGHT (75)	48	VOTE (132)
24	FIRE (64)	49	WANTED (77) FOR
25	FORCE (117)	50	WIN (22)

Table 18: Fifty (50) randomly selected pBen predicators from the Telegraph

3.2.2.5. THE BBC CORPUS

The BBC corpus came up with 278 concordance lines, although there were only 272 pBen predicators numbered. As had been done for the Telegraph corpus, lines were deleted until only those tagged with Arabic numerals and no further identification remained, a total of 265 BBC concordance lines. After repeated predicators were removed there were 167 concordance lines of microscenes containing 167 *variant* power Benefactive predicators.

In order to obtain 50 randomly selected pBen predicators from the BBC, without including any already randomly selected from the Telegraph corpus, the CONCORD tool was used as follows,

1. File B0011.cnc (167 lines) was merged with T0006.cnc, the one containing the 50 randomly selected Telegraph predicators, and the resulting 217 pBen predicators ordered alphabetically.
2. The higher numbered repeat predicators were removed.
3. The lines were *resorted* on centre to facilitate identification and deletion of those predicators numbered 183 or less (the 50 predicators randomly selected from the Telegraph corpus numbered between 1 and 183). This gave 158 variant BBC predicators, which were further randomly reduced to the 50 displayed in **Table 19**.

	Power Benefactive predicators		Power Benefactive predicators
1	ACT (245)	26	JUDGE (339)
2	APPEAR (452)	27	JUMP (311)
3	ARREST (232)	28	LEAVE (364)
4	ASK (365)	29	MANOEUVRE (219)
5	BE (250) UNSUSTAINABLE	30	NEGOTIATE (230)
6	BE (334) REVENGE	31	PERSUADE (381)
7	BE (347) a "DIVISION OF THE WORK"	32	PRESIDE (390) OVER
8	BEGIN (420)	33	PROVIDE (288)
9	CAPTURE (443)	34	PUNISH (242)
10	CONFRONT (324)	35	QUESTION (233)
11	CONVICT (303)	36	REFER (400) TO
12	DECLARE (371)	37	REINVIGORATE (198)
13	DEMAND (435)	38	RELEASE (229)
14	DENY (239)	39	REMAIN (423)
15	DEVELOP (188)	40	REPRESENT (244)
16	ELECT (201)	41	SEND (300)
17	EQUIP(274)	42	SHOOT (327)
18	EXPRESS (374)	43	SHUT (247) DOWN
19	FAIL (376)	44	STAND (208) ASIDE
20	FLY (363)	45	STRENGTHEN (271)
21	FREE (254)	46	SUCCEED (203)
22	FREEZE (437)	47	TAKE (310) BACK
23	GET (193) BACK INTO	48	TAKE (394) OVER
24	HUMILIATE (292)	49	THWART (406)
25	INTERVIEW (335)	50	VOICE (359)

Table 19: 50 randomly selected pBen predicators from the BBC

Two sets of 50 microscenes, each containing a pBen predicator, were then ready for study. The two tables of 50 arbitrarily selected items were merged and ordered

alphabetically, set out in **Table 20** (p. 131) of **Chapter 4**, which gives a descriptive the analysis for each of the 100 randomly selected predicators.

The final results are set out and discussed in **Chapter 5**, along with the graphs for the research on *detain* which brought pseudo-power Benefactive predicators to light.

CHAPTER 4

ANALYSIS

This chapter discusses the analysis of 100 power Benefactive microscenes enclosing each of the randomly selected power Benefactive predicators, the first section headed by a description of the arrangement of the analyses.

4.1. Descriptive analysis of 100 power Benefactive microscenes

For each of the 100 randomly selected power Benefactive predicators (the source file is in *curly* brackets {ASWnnnn}, see **Appendix 1**), the analysis involves:

- i) a general definition of the predicator under discussion
- ii) the *microscene* in *italics*, where

the power Benefactive *PREDICATOR* is in CAPITAL LETTERS

any composite phrases comprising semantic roles are underlined.

Size 8 text in [square brackets], as mentioned earlier, identifies text inserted to clarify the sentence for analysis, both here and in other microscenes. The extra [BE] is important as it acts as a tag for the Concord WordSmith tool to recognise the predicator as being anchored around BE

- iii) a description of the microscene
- iv) the semantic representation in the format:-

predicator [----- semantic role, *Obj / Obj-lex] {pBen}

the predicator is in italics preceding the square brackets

Inside the square brackets

“----- ” stands for “in the context of”, for example,

fall [----- Obj, Loc] stands for the predicator FALL in the context of *Obj, Loc*.

the underlying semantic roles of the microscene are identified

the asterisk - * - marks a semantic role, the reason for which is explained after the slash when present.

The basic sense for each predicator is in {*curly brackets*} on the far right.

If the predicator is power Benefactive, including the two qualities power Benefactive negative and quasi-power Benefactive, in its basic sense then *pBen* or *pBen_{neg}*, or *qpBen* is shown in the curly brackets. When the predicator is a metaphor, having taken a semantic move from another domain to the power Benefactive subdomain, i.e. it is *pBen*, *pBen_{neg}*, or *qpBen*, the contents of the curly brackets specify from which basic semantic domain the predicator originated.

For example:

{*Basic*→*qpBen*} represents a displacement from the Basic to the quasi-power Benefactive, that is, from the *Basic* semantic domain to the *power Benefactive* subdomain.

The need to search for further information to determine the semantic domain of a predicator is evidence of how important shared (world) knowledge is for the understanding of an utterance. At times, the information might be in the co-text (adjacent text), while at others, the author relies on the readers' knowledge. The text will have been written with a specific audience in mind, where that audience would be expected to belong to a specific linguistic community, possessing the necessary shared knowledge. The analysis of **power Benefactive microscene 4** (p. 134, below) illustrates the need for shared knowledge to interpret the meaning. That *Guantanamo Bay*, referred to in newsreport ASW0013B, **Appendix 1**, is a prison brings in the issue of intertextuality, it is world knowledge, possibly shared by the reader; if unknown to the reader s/he will not fully comprehend the essence of the text. The understanding that Mr. Abbasi and Mr. Mubanga are former Guantanamo Bay prisoners can be derived from the co-text.

The analyses of the 100 power Benefactive microscenes have been conducted in alphabetical order of the power predicators as set out in **Table 20**.

	Power Benefactive predicator	Source file		Power Benefactive predicator	Source file
1	ABDUCT (172)	ASW0009T	51	HOLD (58) UP	ASW0004T
2	ABOLISH (35)	ASW0002T	52	HUMILIATE (292)	ASW0015B
3	ACHIEVE (23)	ASW0002T	53	INSIST (99) ON	ASW0006T
4	ACT (245)	ASW0013B	54	INTERVIEW (335)	ASW0016B
5	APPEAR (452)	ASW0020B	55	JUDGE (339)	ASW0016B
6	ARREST (232)	ASW0013B	56	JUMP (311)	ASW0015B
7	ASK (365)	ASW0018B	57	KNEEL (122)	ASW0007T
8	ASSASSINATE (173)	ASW0010T	58	LEAD (133) TO	ASW0007T
9	BE (347) a "DIVISION OF THE WORK"	ASW0018B	59	LEAVE (364)	ASW0018
10	BE (73) AN INTERNATIONAL MONITOR	ASW0004T	60	LOSE (12)	ASW0001T
11	BE (30) IN CHARGE	ASW0002T	61	MANOEUVRE (219)	ASW0012B
12	BE (124) REAL	ASW0007T	62	MOVE (52)	ASW0003T
13	BE (157) RESPONSIBLE	ASW0008T	63	MOVE (71) TOWARDS	ASW0004T
14	BE (334) REVENGE	ASW0016B	64	NEGOTIATE (230)	ASW0013B
15	BE (56) UNDER	ASW0003T	65	PERSUADE (381)	ASW0018B
16	BE (76) UNDER HOUSE ARREST	ASW0004T	66	PRESIDE (390) OVER	ASW0018B
17	BE (250) UNSUSTAINABLE	ASW0013B	67	PREVENT (81)	ASW0006T
18	BEGIN (420)	ASW0019B	68	PROVIDE (288)	ASW0014B
19	BOYCOTT (63)	ASW0004T	69	PUNISH (242)	ASW0013B
20	BUILD (72)	ASW0004T	70	QUESTION (233)	ASW0013B
21	CAPTURE (443)	ASW0020B	71	QUIT (20)	ASW0002T
22	CARRY (129) OUT	ASW0007T	72	REFER (400) TO	ASW0019B
23	CARRY (19) ON	ASW0002T	73	REIN (42) IN	ASW0003T
24	COME (43)	ASW0003T	74	REINVIGORATE (198)	ASW0011B
25	CONDUCT (126)	ASW0007T	75	RELEASE (229)	ASW0013B
26	CONFRONT (324)	ASW0016B	76	REMAIN (423)	ASW0019B
27	CONVICT (303)	ASW0015B	77	REPRESENT (244)	ASW0013B
28	CURB (54)	ASW0003T	78	RESIGN (105)	ASW0007T
29	DEAL (6) WITH	ASW0001T	79	RESPECT (3)	ASW0001T
30	DECIDE (87)	ASW0006T	80	SEND (300)	ASW0015B
31	DECLARE (371)	ASW0018B	81	SHOOT (329)	ASW0016B
32	DEMAND (435)	ASW0020B	82	SHOOT (121) DOWN	ASW0007T
33	DENY (239)	ASW0013B	83	SHUT (247) DOWN	ASW0013B
34	DEVELOP (188)	ASW0011B	84	STAND (208) ASIDE	ASW0012B
35	DISMANTLE (49)	ASW0003T	85	STAND (2) UP FOR	ASW0012B
36	ELECT (201)	ASW0011B	86	STOP (177)	ASW0010T
37	EMASCULATE (153)	ASW0008T	87	STRENGTHEN (271)	ASW0014B
38	ENSHRINE (94)	ASW0006T	88	SUCCEED (203)	ASW0011B
39	EQUIP(274)	ASW0014B	89	TAKE (310) BACK	ASW0015B
40	EXPRESS (374)	ASW0018B	90	TAKE (394) OVER	ASW0019B
41	FAIL (376)	ASW0018B	91	TAX (7)	ASW0001T
42	FIGHT (75)	ASW0004T	92	THREATEN (53)	ASW0003T
43	FIRE (64)	ASW0004T	93	THWART (406)	ASW0019B
44	FLY (363)	ASW0018B	94	TRANSFER (148)	ASW0008T
45	FORCE (117)	ASW0007T	95	URGE (101)	ASW0006T
46	FREE (254)	ASW0013B	96	VETO (84)	ASW0006T
47	FREEZE (437)	ASW0020B	97	VOICE (359)	ASW0017B
48	GET (193) BACK INTO	ASW0011B	98	VOTE (132)	ASW0007T
49	HEAD (92)	ASW0006T	99	WANTED (77) FOR	ASW0005T
50	HOLD (34)	ASW0002T	100	WIN (22)	ASW0002T

Table 20: The 100 randomly selected power Benefactive predicators in alphabetical order

power Benefactive predicator 1 ABDUCT (172) {ASW0009T}

A person who is *abducted* is taken away by force if unwilling. The people, in the Agent role, abducting the person - Object - also control that person and therefore play the co-referential role – Agt=pBen – of having power over that person, placing *abduct* as a basic power Benefactive predicator. In

pBen microscene 1 Every day, *smaller numbers of police, national guards, municipal officials and drivers connected with the government or the Americans* (Obj) are **ABDUCTED** (172) or assassinated [by abductors] (Agt=pBen-del).

The whole of the noun phrase – *smaller numbers of police, national guards, municipal officials and drivers connected with the government or the Americans* is in the semantic role of Object. From *previous* co-text, and therefore marked as deleted, we can assume the abductors are insurgents - Agt=pBen-del - in Mosul. The semantic representation is:

abduct [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 2 ABOLISH (35) {ASW0002T}

To *abolish* means to declare an item, act or event as no longer being legally recognized by the Law in power at the time, and must stop. As it is the government that has the power to *abolish*, then the government is implicitly the agent in:

pBen microscene 2 So far, the *Conservatives* (Agt=pBen-del) have raised the possibility of **ABOLISHING** (35) or reducing *inheritance tax, capital gains tax and stamp duty* (Obj).

Paraphrasing **pBen microscene 2** as – if the *Conservatives* are elected to run the government they will move to abolish the mentioned taxes – the *Conservatives* would then be that government in power and therefore the Agent and the power Benefactive. The microscene is pivoted around a prepositional phrase, therefore, the Agt=pBen dual role of the *Conservatives* emerges only in the previous microscene and is marked as

deleted from the surface. The “inheritance tax, capital gains tax and stamp duty” compose the role of Object. The presence of the lexicogrammatical string *the possibility of* displaces **pBen microscene 2** towards the quasi-power Benefactive as the outcome of the action is unknown. The semantic representation for this microscene then changes to:

abolish [----- *Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 3 ACHIEVE (23) {ASW0002T}

The Oxford advanced learner’s dictionary entry for *achieve* reads:

achieve: to succeed in reaching a particular goal, status, or standard, especially in making an effort for a long time. *He had finally achieved success* (p. 10, author’s emphasis).

The M-WUD entry for *achieve* reads:

1 a : to bring to a successful conclusion : carry out successfully : ACCOMPLISH
achieving his purpose b obsolete : to cause to end : make to cease : bring about the end of : FINISH
2 : to get as the result of exertion : succeed in obtaining or gaining : WIN, REACH, ATTAIN *he achieved greatness*

Reaching a particular goal is Benefactive because the person is gaining something. In

pBen microscene 3 However, Mr Howard immediately went on to insist he was "working very hard to win this election “and that "*it's a victory (Obj) that I believe we [the Tories] (qpBen) can ACHIEVE (23)*".

it's a victory we can achieve

is a power Benefactive microscene, knowing that the victory is *being voted in*, i.e. taking on a position of power. *Achieve* as a power metaphor would firstly be power Benefactive. However, there is the lexicogrammatical item *can* in **pBen microscene 3**; this modal²⁴ displaces the microscene towards the *quasi*-power Benefactive as the outcome is uncertain. *We* refers to the Tory party, in the position of *maybe* taking on a position of power accounting for the semantic role of quasi-power Benefactive.

²⁴ *Modal* refers to a modality modification of the predicator here as opposed to usage elsewhere for *modal* elements being *circumstantial*.

The semantic representation is:

achieve [----- qpBen, Obj] {Ben→qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 4 ACT (245) {ASW0013B}

The first entry in the Cambridge dictionary online for *act* places this predicator in the Basic domain reading:

to do something for a particular purpose, or to behave in the stated way:
Engineers acted quickly to repair the damaged pipes.
She acted without thinking.

In

pBen microscene 4 Lawyer Louise Christian, who represents Mr Abbasi and Mr Mubanga, said *the government (Agt=pBen) should have ACTED (245) sooner.*

The lexical items: lawyer, Mr Abbasi and Mr Mubanga displace *act* to the power Benefactive domain. It being shared knowledge that Mr Abbasi and Mr Mubanga are political characters, former Guantanamo Bay prisoners. The government accounts for the dual role Agent and power Benefactive in **pBen microscene 4**. The semantic representation is:

act [----- Agt, *pBen / Agt=pBen] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 5 APPEAR (452) {ASW0020B}

A person or thing *appearing* in a place is Locative. There has been a semantic move in:

pBen microscene 5 He also defended the operation that led to the capture of *Mr Granda, who (Obj) APPEARED (452) in Colombian custody (pBen) [process] in December* after disappearing from the Venezuelan capital, Caracas.

The lexical item – *Columbian custody* displaces the microscene into the power Benefactive semantic subdomain. *Custody*, metonymic for the judicial system in power,

takes the power Benefactive role having authority over the person in the Object role, taken up by Mr. Granda. The microscene is a process as there is no Agent. The semantic representation is:

appear [----- Obj, pBen] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 6 ARREST (232) {ASW0013B}

The lexical item *arrest* is a basic power Benefactive 3-place predicator. *One* – an agent exerts *two* - power over *three* - another. The former assuming control over the latter’s freedom of movement. In

pBen microscene 6 But he added: "Once they are back in the UK, *the police* (*Agt=pBen-del*) will consider whether *to ARREST (232) them* [prisoners from the Guantanamo camp] (*Obj*) under the Terrorism Act 2000 for questioning in connection with possible terrorist activity."

the Object of the microscene is *them*, an anaphoric reference to the four prisoners from the Guantanamo camp, part of the co-text in File ASW0013B. The police are co-referentially both the Agent and at the same time the power Benefactive party in control over the situation, marked as deleted as the microscene is an infinitive clause. The semantic representation is:

arrest [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 7 ASK (365) {ASW0018B}

To ask is a cognitive procedure²⁵ and its basic sense falls in the Experiential domain. It is also worth noting that “asked to leave” is a euphemism for `fired` or

²⁵ *Cognitive* refers to: “of, relating to, or being conscious intellectual activity (as thinking, reasoning, remembering, imagining, or learning words)” (M-WUD entry)

`dismissed. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical item *he*, an anaphoric reference to *the Shah*, *appointed* and *prime minister* in:

pBen microscene 7 In fact, *he (Obj)* was **ASKED (365)** to leave *(Obj)* by the man he appointed prime minister (Agt=pBen) earlier this month.

One party asks another to do something. *To do something* is in the role of Object, in this microscene the Shah, also in an Object role position, was asked *to leave*, by the prime Minister, in turn playing the dual role of Agent and power Benefactive. The semantic representation is:

ask [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 8 ASSASSINATE (173) {ASW0010T}

Assassinate means to take away somebody's life, exerting power over them, and is power Benefactive in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 8 Every day, *smaller numbers of police, national guards, municipal officials and drivers connected with the government or the Americans* (Obj) are abducted or **ASSASSINATED (173)** [by assassigators] (Agt=pBen-del).

the analysis is the same as *abduct* in **pBen microscene 1**. The Object role is taken up by the *smaller numbers of police, etc.*, and the insurgents from Mosul are in the co-referential role - Agt=pBen-del - of the *assassigators*, again marked as deleted from the surface. The semantic representation is:

assassinate [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 9 BE (347) a "DIVISION of the work" {ASW0018B}

The M-WUD entry for *division* reads:

1 a : the act, process, or an instance of dividing into parts or portions : PARTITION
<made a division of his empire> <division of the day into hours, minutes, seconds>

Division is then an act of dividing and is a Basic action when talking in general. However, the example *made a division of his empire* has moved towards the Holistic, while *division of the day into hours, minutes, and seconds* has metaphorised towards a Time semantic microscene. The lexical items: *IAI, insurgent groups, Islamic militant* and *Abu Musab al-Zarqawit* prompt a semantic move from the Basic to the power Benefactive in

pBen microscene 9 *There WAS (347) a "DIVISION OF THE WORK" (Obj_s) between the IAI and other insurgent groups, including that led by Islamic militant Abu Musab al-Zarqawi (pBen)*

This microscene is a State, the State of there being a division accounting for the Object role, among the parties in power, that is among *the IAI and other insurgent groups, including that led by Islamic militant Abu Musab al-Zarqawi* accounting for the role of power Benefactive. The semantic representation is:

be a "division of the work" [----- pBen, Obj_s] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 10 BE (73) A MONITOR {ASW0004T}

To BE A MONITOR means to supervise an event or situation, and have the power to intervene when anyone or anything fails to follow the rules and regulations pertinent at that moment. In

pBen microscene 10 *Jimmy Carter, the former American president, who (pBen) WAS [BE] (73) AN INTERNATIONAL MONITOR (Obj_s) of the first Palestinian presidential election (Obj_s)*

Jimmy Carter is the power Benefactive role and both the ‘*international monitor*’ and ‘*the first Palestinian presidential election*’ are in the stative Object roles. The semantic representation is:-

be a monitor [----- pBen, Obj_s, Obj_s] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 11 BE (30) IN CHARGE {ASW0002T}

To *be in charge* of an event or situation means being responsible for it and constitutes a power Benefactive microscene. The online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary entry reads:

in charge being the person who has control of or is responsible for someone or something: *Who will be in charge of the department when Sophie leaves?*

In

pBen microscene 11 But senior Tories have told The Telegraph that Mr Howard is grooming David Cameron, 38, *the shadow cabinet member (pBen) [who IS] [BE] (30) IN CHARGE of policy co-ordination (Obj_s)*, to take over from him next year if the Tories lost

The shadow cabinet member, by being *in charge* of policy co-ordination is in a position of power, which accounts for the power Benefactive role. The Object role – Obj_s - is filled by the *policy co-ordination*, where, as explained previously, ‘s’ clarifies that the microscene is a *State*, as opposed to a *Process* or *Action*, and as such there is no Agent.

The semantic representation is:

be in charge of [----- pBen, Obj_s] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 12 BE (124) REAL {ASW0007T}

Be real is a Basic predicator. When something is real it is not false, it is not artificial, and would normally show the semantic representation as Object, marked as stative. This shifts to other different meanings, depending on what it is that is real.

The flowers (Obj_s) are real not plastic (my example 7)

This lexicogrammatical item lends itself to other senses, for example, the Experiential

in

The dream (Exp) was real (my example 8)

There is no Object, the obligatory Object rule (Cook, 1979, 1989) has been relaxed in the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach. There are lexical items throughout the utterance which prompt the content to displace to the power Benefactive semantic subdomain, i.e. *murdered, election officials* and *threats* in

pBen microscene 12 Horrifying images of the attack, which showed one of the men kneeling before being murdered were broadcast on television and served as a grim confirmation to any election officials still wondering whether *the threats (qpBen) [towards the election officials] (Obj_s-del) WERE (124) REAL*

BE REAL has displaced from the Basic to the power Benefactive subdomain, the threats take on the quasi-power Benefactive role. The threats are of death to anybody participating in the organisation of the elections, a challenge to authority, where the outcome of death or life is unknown; the threats represent a struggle for power accounting for a quasi-power Benefactive role. This microscene describes a situation, a state, so the power of authority, the election officials, accounts for the stative Object role marked *-del* for deleted, as it is not explicit who the threats are against. The semantic representation is:

be real [----- qpBen, *Obj_s / Obj_s-del] {Basic→qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 13 **BE (157) RESPONSIBLE** {ASW0008T }

The online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary definition for *be responsible for* reads:

be responsible for sb/sth/doing sth to have control and authority over something or someone and the duty of taking care of it or them: *Paul is directly responsible for the efficient running of the office.*

The lexical item *control* explicitly discloses *be responsible for* as power Benefactive. In

pBen microscene 13 Under this proposal, *the Treasury civil servants (pBen) [who ARE] [BE] (157) RESPONSIBLE FOR monitoring departmental spending plans (Obj_s)* would move to the Cabinet Office

the Treasury civil servants are in the role of - pBen -, the *monitoring of departmental spending plans* is in the stative Object role. The semantic representation is:

be responsible for [-----pBen, Obj_s] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 14 BE (334) an act of REVENGE {ASW0016B}

The MWUD entry for *revenge* reads:

1 : the disposition or desire to seek vengeance <a prey to revenge>

and for vengeance is:

1 a : the taking of revenge : infliction of punishment in return for an injury or offence : retributive action <to me belongeth vengeance and recompense Deut 32:35 (Authorized Version)

According to this *revenge*, that is to say, *vengeance* involves inflicting punishment. When somebody inflicts harm on another there is a power relationship where, at that moment, the person acting accounts for the power Benefactive role. In

pBen microscene 14 The court had previously heard *the shootings (Obj_s) WERE (334) A "BOTCHED" ACT OF REVENGE (pBen)*

the ‘*act of revenge*’ accounts for the power Benefactive role, and ‘*the shootings*’ accounts for the role of Object. Although it might at first seem to be agentive owing to the lexical item *act* this microscene is a description of what the *shootings* are, and so is a State of affairs, the Object marked s for stative. The semantic representation is:

be (an act of) revenge [-----Obj_s, pBen] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 15 BE (56) UNDER {ASW0003T}

The first entry for *under* in the online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary is for *under* (LOWER POSITION) and explicitly places *BE UNDER* as a Locative predicator in its basic sense since it reads:

1: in or to a position below or lower than something else, often so that one thing covers the other: *He hid under the bed*

There is an entry further down for the preposition *under* (CONTROL) which reads:

controlled or governed by a particular person, organization or force:

He's a Colonel, with hundreds of soldiers under him (= obeying his orders).

I wonder what Britain was like under the Romans (= during the time when the Romans controlled Britain).

Both the given examples incorporating i) *obeying his orders* and ii) *the Romans controlled Britain* explicitly detail *under* as generating power microscenes. *BE UNDER* has undergone a semantic move from the Locative to the power Benefactive. In

pBen microscene 15 The plan has echoes of Harold Wilson's disastrous attempt to curb Treasury power by setting up a *Department of Economic Affairs* (Obj_s), [*which WAS*] [BE] (56) *UNDER* George Brown (pBen) in the 1960s

the Department of Economic Affairs (Obj_s), marked as stative, is under George Brown (pBen). The semantic representation is:

be under [----- pBen, Obj_s] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 16 BE (76) UNDER HOUSE ARREST

The M_WUD (ibid) definition for *house arrest* is

confinement often under guard to one's house or quarters or a hospital instead of in a jail or prison

To *be under house arrest* means to be confined to a place, to have one's freedom of movement restricted by the authorities. In

pBen microscene 16 Six other candidates are fighting the election including a Marxist PLO official and a *professor* (Obj_s) [*who IS*] [BE] (76) *UNDER HOUSE ARREST* in the US [*by decree of the US government*] (pBen-del)

the professor is the subject, in the - Obj_s - role, confined to his house according to the law of the US government. The government being the power Benefactive is implicit, not

on the surface in the microscene, and labelled as deleted. The semantic representation is:

be under house arrest [----- Obj_s, *pBen / pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 17 BE (250) UNSUSTAINABLE {ASW0019B}

The M-WUD entry for *unsustainable* reads:

not capable of being sustained

There is no definition for *unsustainable* in the online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary, but the entry for *sustainable* has examples from the Basic domain and reads:

sustainable adjective

1 able to continue over a period of time:

That sort of extreme diet is not sustainable over a long period.

2 causing little or no damage to the environment and therefore able to continue for a long time: *A large international meeting was held with the aim of promoting sustainable development in all countries.*

By logic, the opposite *unsustainable* is also from the Basic domain. The term – *prosecution-* prompts a move from the Basic domain to the power Benefactive subdomain in

pBen microscene 17 "People get released from prison when it's found that *their prosecution (pBen) WAS (250) UNSUSTAINABLE* and they are quite rightly awarded sizeable sums of money.

The prosecution is a legal process with power being exerted, accounting for the role of power Benefactive. The microscene is a State, but as there is no obligatory Object (cf. 2.16.1., p. 100 above), there is no marking in the semantic representation to show it is a State. The semantic representation is:

be unsustainable [----- pBen] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 18 BEGIN (420) {ASW0019B}

To begin is a Basic action, to start something. The lexical items *coup*,

[*President Abdel Nasser*], *Libyanisation*, and *commerce and industry* displace *begin* from the

Basic to the power Benefactive subdomain in

pBen microscene 18 Soon after the coup [TOOK PLACE], *he* [*President Abdel Nasser*] (*Agt=pBen*) **BEGAN (420)** a process of Libyanisation of commerce and industry (*Obj*). Non-Libyans were FORCED (428) out of influential positions and even Latin characters were removed from street signs in the capital, Tripoli, and in Benghazi.

President Abdel Nasser plays the dual role of power Benefactive and the Agent who began the process of Libyanisation, which accounts for the Object role. The semantic representation is:

begin [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 19 BOYCOTT (63) {ASW0004T}

To *boycott* means to refuse to do something, for example, (i) attend an event, or (ii) use a product, as a form of protest. This protest is analogous to a competition, or a threat, it is a flat refusal and a demonstration of power. The M_WUD (2000) definition is as follows:

1 : to combine against (a person, employer, a group of persons, or a nation) in a policy of nonintercourse for economic or political reasons : withhold wholly or partly social or business intercourse from, as an expression of disapproval or means of coercion <a threat to boycott the Security Council>

In

pBen microscene 19 Groups such as Hamas (*Agt=qpBen*) have **BOYCOTTED (63)** the Palestinian Authority presidential polls (*Obj*), and Palestinian militants fired at least two rockets into Israel from the Gaza Strip as a show of strength today.

‘groups such as Hamas’ is in the dual role of Agent and quasi-power Benefactive, as they are challenging the power of the Palestinian Authorities. The polls are the Object, being the entity that is boycotted.

The semantic representation is:-

boycott [----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=qpBen] {qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 20 BUILD (72) {ASW0004T}

Build is a Basic predicator as can be seen from the M-WUD entry which reads:

- 1 : to construct for a dwelling <*birds building their nests*>
- 2 : to cause to be constructed [...] <*some contractors build hundreds of houses every year*>

The lexical items: *mandate*, *Israel* and *Mr Abbas* contribute to the semantic displacement from the Basic to the power Benefactive subdomain in

pBen microscene 20 *To BUILD (72) a popular mandate (Obj) for talks with Israel, Mr Abbas (Agt=pBen-del) needs at least 60 per cent of the vote and a large turnout among the 1.8 million eligible voters.*

The M-WUD entry for *mandate* reads:

- 1 [Medieval Latin *mandatum*, from Latin, command, mandate] : MAUNDY
- 2 a (1) : a formal order from a superior court or official to an inferior one; *especially* : the order or command that embodies the decision of a *United States appellate court* when final judgment is not entered and is sent to the court below (author's italics)

The lexical items *formal order*, *superior court*, *order or command*, *United States appellate court*, and *final judgment* explicitly reveal *mandate* to be power related. *Mandate* takes the role of Object in the microscene. *Mr Abbas* accounts for the dual role of Agent and power Benefactive, but as the microscene pivots around an infinitive, the role is marked as deleted, even though it is explicit who it is, *Mr Abbas* coming immediately after the comma at the end of the microscene.

The semantic representation is:

build [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 21 CAPTURE (443) {ASW0020B}

Capture means to use force to overpower, generates a power Benefactive microscene and is power Benefactive in its basic sense. However, in

pBen microscene 21 Venezuela froze diplomatic and trade links with Colombia on Friday, after *Colombia hired mercenaries (Agt=pBen-del) to CAPTURE (443) a guerrilla chief (Obj)* on Venezuelan soil.

Colombia hired mercenaries *to CAPTURE (442) a guerrilla chief (Obj)* – the microscene is introduced by the infinitive and therefore the Agentive and power Benefactive co-referential role of *the mercenaries* is a contingent of the previous microscene, marked as deleted from the surface. The guerrilla chief who is captured is in the role of Object. The semantic representation is:

capture [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 22 CARRY (19) ON {ASW0002T}

Carry on is a phrasal verb seen to be in the Basic semantic domain from the CDPV entry which reads:

carry on. 1 If you **carry on** with an activity, you continue doing it. *EG Are you telling me to carry on with my investigation?* (ibid, p. 42, author's emphasis)

The lexical items: *Conservative loss, John Major, William Hague, [Michael Howard]* and *a general election defeat* prompt the predicator to displace from the Basic semantic domain to the power Benefactive subdomain in

pBen microscene 22 He took the risk of openly discussing a possible Conservative loss to indicate that, unlike John Major and William Hague before him, *he [Michael Howard] (Agt=pBen) would CARRY (20) ON [doing his job in a position of power] (Obj-del)* rather than quit the day after a general election defeat.

Michael Howard is the Agent of the microscene and also the one in power in the coreferential role of Agent and power Benefactive. *His job in a position of power* takes the role of Object deleted.

The semantic representation is:

carry on [----- Agt, *pBen, *Obj / Agt=pBen, Obj-del] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 23 CARRY (129) OUT {ASW0007T}

Carry out is a phrasal verb and the CDPV entry for *carry out* reads:

carry out. 1 If you **carry out** a task, you do it. EG *They have to carry out many administrative duties... Woman magazine has just carried a survey out... The first experiments were carried out by Dr Preston McLendon* (ibid, p. 42, author's emphasis).

as *administrative duties, surveys* and *experiments* involve mental activity this definition places the basic sense of *carry out* in the Experiential semantic domain. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items the *Iraqi insurgents* and *promises* in:

pBen microscene 23 But unlike in Afghanistan, where fears of Taliban and al-Qaeda plans to disrupt October's elections proved largely unfounded, no one doubts *the Iraqi insurgents'* (Agt=pBen-del) willingness or capability to **CARRY (129) OUT** *their promises* (Obj).

The *Iraqi insurgents* are co-referentially in the Agent and the power Benefactive roles marked as deleted from the infinitive microscene. Their "promises" surmount to their *threats*. The insurgents are in the role of power Benefactive as they are exerting their power, carrying out their threats (accounting for the Object role) of harm; causing bodily harm overpowering the victim. The semantic representation is:

carry out [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 24 COME (43) {ASW0003T}

Someone or something *coming* from another location places the predicator *come* as Locative in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 23 the most direct challenge to Mr Brown's authority since *Labour CAME (46) to power*

there has been a semantic displacement from the Locative semantic domain to the power Benefactive subdomain, prompted by the presence of the lexical item *power*. The microscene is a process, where Labour accounts for the power Benefactive role, and power for the Object. The semantic representation is:

come [----- pBen, Obj] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 25 CONDUCT (126) {ASW0007T}

Conduct means to organise, for example, an event. The online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary provides the entry:

to organize and perform a particular activity

A person organising an event is in charge, that is has the power to give orders, so *conduct* is basically a power Benefactive predicator. In

pBen microscene 24 About 6,000 Iraqis (Agt=pBen-del) have been trained in how to **CONDUCT (126)** elections (Obj), and 130,000 will staff polling stations.

the 6000 Iraqis are in the role of Agent and also the power Benefactive as they will be conducting the elections. This co-referential role is marked as deleted from the surface of the microscene in question as it is an infinitive clause. The elections are in the Object role. The semantic representation is:

conduct [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 26 CONFRONT (324) {ASW0016B}

In a situation where the interactants are of equal standing, or not, *confront* means to challenge the other, often accusingly. The interpersonal relationship would place the confronter as temporarily at an advantage by making the other (temporarily) lose face

under the accusation of something. The outcome could swing either way, classifying *confront* as quasi-power Benefactive. If there are valid grounds to the confrontation the confronter would come out on top, if there were no grounds for the basis of the confrontation then the confronter would lose face, swinging the interpersonal power to the confronted. In

pBen microscene 25 A man (Obj-del) charged with the murders of two teenaged girls "lost the plot" when [he was] **CONFRONTED (324)** by police (Agt=qpBen) with a piece of evidence (Obj), a court has been told.

the police are the confronters in the co-referential role of Agent and quasi-power Benefactive. The man is the person confronted in the role of Object, deleted as he is defined only in a previous microscene. The piece of evidence is also in the Object role, giving the semantic configuration:

confront [----- Agt, *qpBen, *Obj, Obj / Agt=qpBen, Obj-del] {qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 27 CONVICT (303) {ASW0015B}

When a person is put on trial, the court has to come to a decision to acquit or *convict* a person. The predicator *convict* generates a power Benefactive microscene where the Law is in the power role. In

pBen microscene 26 [those who have been] **CONVICTED (303)** [by the court] (Agt=pBen-del):
Pte Jeremy Sivits
Sgt Ivan Frederick
Specialist Megan Ambuhl (Obj)

the three people mentioned are in the role of Object and the party that convicted them are co-referentially Agent and power Benefactive, marked deleted from the surface. The semantic representation is:

convict [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 28 CURB (54) {ASW0003T}

To *curb* means to reduce or stop an action. Where someone or something impinges on another, then this is power Benefactive.

pBen microscene 27 The plan has echoes of *Harold Wilson's (Agt-del) disastrous attempt to CURB (54) Treasury (pBen_{neg}-del) power (Obj)* by setting up a Department of Economic Affairs, under George Brown in the 1960s

expresses the diminishing, the cutting back, or, in some form, the reducing of Treasury – pBen - power. A power Benefactive microscene emerges with *curb* as the central pivot, reinforced by the presence of the lexical item *power*. Harold Wilson is the Agent – marked as deleted because his name is in only the previous microscene and not on the surface of the one under analysis. Although Wilson is in a position of power to *be able* to reduce somebody else's power, the Treasury is in the power Benefactive negative role, deleted from the surface, yet explicit by way of the adjective – Treasury-. The loss of *power*, in the Object role, suffered by the Treasury is foregrounded and the pBen role is marked negative for loss of power. The semantic representation is:-

curb [----- *Agt, *pBen_{neg}, Obj / Agt-del, pBen_{neg}-del] {pBen_{neg}}

power Benefactive predicator 29 DEAL (6) WITH {ASW0001T}

Deal with is a phrasal verb and the CDPV entry for *deal with* reads:

Deal with. 1 When you **deal with** something that needs attention, you do what is necessary in order to achieve the result that is wanted. EG *They learned to deal with any sort of emergency... The Finance Officer deals with all the finances of the university... The work is dealt with by a Stipendiary Magistrate* (ibid, p. 77, author's emphasis).

The first example referring to something that can be learned shows *deal with* to be a cognitive action. In the second example the predicator has moved towards the power Benefactive where the Finance Officer is a figure of power. When an *official deals with public spending* then this generates a power scene, because the officer has control over

how money is to be spent. The predicator *deal with* can take a semantic move from the Experiential domain to the power Benefactive subdomain. In

pBen microscene 28 Identifying three areas in which Britain needed to change direction, *Mr Howard (Agt=pBen-del)* said his first priority was *to DEAL (6) WITH the tax burden (Obj)*.

Mr. Howard, as the leader of the opposition intends for his Conservative government to use their authority, if he is elected, to make some official adjustments to the tax situation. A power microscene emerges where Mr Howard's government (Agt=pBen-del) is in the dual role of Agent and power Benefactive, marked as deleted, not only because the role is *implicitly* – the governing body – but also because of the *infinitive clause* composing the microscene. The *tax burden* is the (Obj) to be dealt with. The semantic representation is:

deal with [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 30 DECIDE (87) {ASW0006T}

Decide is a cognitive procedure and in its basic sense it falls in the Experiential domain. The lexical item *Cabinet* displaces *decide* to the power Benefactive subdomain. The *Cabinet* is a body that has authority. When a body in power *decides* on an item it is exerting power to do so. In

pBen microscene 29 "The whole Cabinet, we (Agt=pBen) have DECIDED (87), must agree before it [the veto] is used. [the whole Cabinet must agree before the veto is used] (Obj-lex).

the *we* is the participant in the power Benefactive role. The participant in the Object role is the decision (lexicalised), that was decided upon, that is - *the whole Cabinet must agree before it [the veto] is used*. The semantic representation is:

decide [----- Agt, *pBen, *Obj / Agt=pBen, Obj-lex] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 31 DECLARE(371) {ASW0018B}

To declare is a cognitive procedure and its basic sense falls in the Experiential domain. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items *martial law* and *[by the authorities]* in:

pBen microscene 30 *Martial law (Obj) was **DECLARED** (371)*
in many cities on 8 September *[by the authorities] (Agt=pBen-del)*.

The authorities are understood as taking the hidden *by Agent role*, marked as deleted, co-referential with the power Benefactive role. Martial Law is the Law which comes into action, accounting for the Object semantic role. The semantic representation is:

declare [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 32 DEMAND (435) {ASW0020B}

To demand is to forcefully ask someone *for* or *to do* something. A person who *demand*s would be expected to be further up in a hierarchy than the one demanded of. The interpersonal relationship could be one of equality, two siblings for example, where the *demand*er taking the (temporary) role of the more powerful participant in the interaction fills the semantic role of power Benefactive, and places *demand* as power Benefactive in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 31 *Chavez (Agt=pBen) has **DEMANDED***
(435) an apology from Uribe (Obj)

an issue of power is apparent as Chavez is the President of Venezuela and in a position of power. However, Uribe is his counterpart of the same hierarchical level - the President of Columbia, which means the ‘swing of the pendulum’ is in action. The lexical item *demand* assumes that Chavez is momentarily in the role of power Benefactive, co-referential with Agent in this microscene. He is demanding an apology from Uribe in the role of Object.

The semantic representation is:

demand [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 33 DENY (239) ASW0013B

To deny is a cognitive procedure and its basic sense falls in the Experiential domain. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items *civil rights* and *due process* in:

pBen microscene 32 "Their civil rights were systematically and deliberately abused and *they* [the Britons about to be released from Guantanamo] (*Obj*) were **DENIED (239)** *due process (Obj)*" [by the authorities in charge of Guantanamo Bay] (*Agt=pBen-del*)

the authorities of Guantanamo Bay are the Agents and the power Benefactive participants who denied the Britons, in the role of Object, a fair trial, i.e. *due process*, also in the role of Object. Agt=pBen is marked deleted as there is a hidden *by* Agent. The semantic representation is:

deny [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 34 DEVELOP (188) {ASW0011B}

Develop is a Basic predicator as can be seen from the M-WUD entry which reads:

1 a : to go through a process of natural growth, differentiation, or evolution by successive changes from a less perfect to a more perfect or more highly organized state : advance from a simpler form or state of existence to one more complex either in structure or function <a blossom develops from a bud>

The lexical items: *Palestinians*, *state* and *President Bush* prompt a semantic move from the Basic to the power Benefactive subdomain in

pBen microscene 33 If Britain helped *the Palestinians* (*Agt=pBen*) **DEVELOP (188)** *the "basic infrastructure of a viable state"* (*Obj*), then President Bush would make it viable territorially.

The *basic infrastructure of a viable state* accounts for the Object role, developed by the Palestinians, who take the dual role of Agent and power Benefactive. The semantic representation is:

develop [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predictor 35 DISMANTLE (49) {ASW0003T}

When you take something apart you *dismantle* it. You remove parts from the whole, constituting a Holistic microscene. However, the occurrence of *dismantling* a ‘*power base*’ causes a power microscene to emerge. *Dismantle*, being used metaphorically, has now displaced from the Holistic to the power Benefactive. In

pBen microscene 34 Mr Blair, however, is understood [_{governing body}] (Agt-del) to favour the option of **DISMANTLING (49)** *Mr Brown's (pBen_{neg}) power base (Obj)*.

the microscene - **DISMANTLING (52)** *Mr Brown's power base* - is a prepositional phrase, where the Agent is not clear, it is not present on the surface and thus marked as deleted. Blair is in favour of *dismantling* the power base, but it is not explicit that it is *him* who will actually do it. The Object is the *power base*, and it is Mr Brown (pBen_{neg}) who is losing his power base, bearing in mind that a power Benefactive microscene may involve not only gaining power, but also a reduction or loss of power, when it is marked as pBen_{neg}. The reduction of power for Mr Brown is foregrounded. The semantic representation for this microscene

is:-

dismantle [----- *Agt, pBen_{neg}, Obj / Agt-del] {Hol→pBen_{neg}}

power Benefactive predictor 36 ELECT (201) {ASW0011B}

The Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English entry for *elect* reads:

To choose (someone) for an official position by voting (1987, p. 328).

placing *elect* as power Benefactive in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 35 The comments come as *Palestinians (Agt-del)* head to the polls to *ELECT (201)* a successor (*pBen*) to their deceased president Yasser Arafat. (*Obj*)

the Palestinians are in the role of Agent, electing a new President as the successor (accounting for the power Benefactive semantic role) to someone, in this case Arafat, who then accounts for the Object role. The semantic representation is:

elect [----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 37 EMASCULATE (153) {ASW0008T}

The Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English entry for *emasculate*

reads:

To take away all the strength from; weaken: *The proposed reform has been emasculated by changes made to it by parliament* (1987, p. 331).

placing *emasculate* as power Benefactive negative in its basic sense as power is being removed. In

pBen microscene 36 There is also speculation in Whitehall that Mr Blair is considering *a second reform (Agt) that would EMASCULATE (153)* [remove power from] *the Treasury (pBen_{neg}) (Obj-lex)* even more brutally.

the abstract entity *a second reform* accounts for the Agent role, which will be put into force by Mr Blair, the head of the government. The Treasury will lose power, accounting for the *pBen_{neg}* semantic role. The issue of *power loss* is embedded within the microscene, not visibly present on the surface. As the definition states *emasculate* is to remove power, power is lexicalised and registered as the Obj-lex role in the semantic representation:

emasculate [----- Agt, pBen_{neg}, *Obj / Obj-lex] {pBen_{neg}}

power Benefactive predicator 38

ENSHRINE (94)

{ASW0006T}

To enshrine something means to wrap a covering around something, i.e. put ‘x’ in a place, comprising a Locative microscene. The M-WUD entry for *enshrine* reads:

- 1 a** : to enclose in or as if in a shrine <*enshrined* the cheese in close folds of bright tinfoil> **b** : to preserve or cherish as or as if something
2 : to serve as a shrine for <my heart *enshrines* his memory>

The M-WUD entry for *shrine* reads:

shrine [transitive verb] - 1 archaic: to place in or provide with a shrine <a goddess *shrined* in every tree Alexander Pope> 2 : to enclose as if in a shrine : ENSHRINE <has the feeling of truth already *shrined* in his own breast William Hazlitt>

Entries for *shrine* and *enshrine* show that by *enshrining* something reverence is being paid to that ‘thing’, understood by the lexical items *cherish* and *goddess*. In

pBen microscene 37 But the Department for Constitutional Affairs, which the Lord Chancellor heads, has not emended the FoI Act (Agt=pBen-del) to **ENSHRINE (94)** the *need for a collective Cabinet decision* (*Obj_s*)

the microscene - *has not emended the FoI Act* - represents an action performed on, or rather not performed on, the FoI Act, the result of which brings around the state of – the FoI Act including, i.e. *enshrining*, the need for a collective Cabinet decision. The *to* causativizes the microscene, paraphrased as in order to, the *FoI Act* accounting for the Agent role. In **pBen microscene 41**, the ideology behind the FoI Act, the shared knowledge, that it contains rules and regulations, and is an official document, places it in the semantic role of power Benefactive, and coreferential with Agent - marked as deleted from the microscene. This power Benefactive participant *enshrines* the *need for a collective decision*, this *need* is in the semantic role of Object. There has been a semantic move from the Locative to the power Benefactive. The semantic representation is:

enshrine [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 39 EQUIP (274) {ASW0014B}

The M-WUD entry for *equip* reads:

to provide with what is necessary, useful, or appropriate: as a (1) : to supply with material resources (as implements or facilities)

placing *equip* as Benefactive in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 38 "We (Agt-del) need to **EQUIP (274)** the police and army (pBen) with the new modern weaponry (Obj) that will enable them to protect the country,"

there has been a semantic displacement from the Benefactive to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items: *the police, army, new modern weaponry*, and *protect the country*. Iraqi Prime Minister Iyad Allawi is in the inclusive we referring to the Iraqi government accounting for the Agent, marked as deleted as the predicator under analysis is an infinitive in this microscene. The weaponry is in the Object role, and the power Benefactive is accounted for by the police and the Army. Once they are equipped they will be protecting the country, a power role. The semantic representation is:

equip [----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del] {Ben→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 40 EXPRESS (374) {ASW0018B}

To express is a cognitive procedure and its basic sense falls in the Experiential domain. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items *Western governments, US, UK, West Germany* and *the Shah* in:

pBen microscene 39 Western governments (Agt=pBen-del), like the US, UK and West Germany, have continued to **EXPRESS (374)** *support* (Obj) *for the Shah*.

The US, UK and *West Germany* are all referring to governments and take the co-referential role of Agent and power Benefactive. This dual role is marked deleted as the

microscene is pivoted around an infinitive. Their *support for the Shah* is in the Object role. The semantic representation is:

express [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 41 FAIL (376) {ASW0018B}

The online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary shows more than one entry for *fail*:

fail (NOT SUCCEED) verb [I] *The example is Benefactive*
to not succeed in what you are trying to achieve or are expected to do:
She moved to London in the hope of finding work as a model, but failed.

fail (NOT DO) verb [I] *The example is Basic*
to not do something which you should do: [+ to infinitive] *He failed to arrive on time.*

fail (NOT HELP) verb [T] *The example is Benefactive*
to not help someone when they expected you to: *He failed her when she most needed him.*

fail (EXAMINATION) verb [I or T] *The example is Experiential*
to be unsuccessful, or to judge that someone has been unsuccessful in a test or examination: *I passed in history but failed in chemistry.*

The basic sense of *fail* is Benefactive negative in **pBen microscene 41**, as it originates from the sense fail (NOT SUCCEED). There has been a displacement from the Benefactive to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items: [*a new military government*], *support* and *Ayatollah*. In

pBen microscene 40 The Shah appointed a new military government in early November. But *it* [*a new military government*] (*pBen*) **FAILED (376)** *to stem the rising tide of support* (*Obj*) for the *Ayatollah* (*pBen_{neg}*).

the rising tide of support for the *Ayatollah* can be understood as an increase of power for the *Ayatollah*. The new military government, accounting for the power Benefactive role, *failed* *to stem the rising tide of support*, accounting for the role of Object. This gives a negative prosody (Louw, 1993, 2004) to the microscene, *fail* is a negative power

Benefactive predicator and like *win* or *lose* composes a Process. The semantic representation is:

fail [----- pBen_{neg}, Obj] {Ben_{neg}→pBen_{neg}}

power Benefactive predicator 42 FIGHT (75) {ASW0004T}

The M-WUD entry for *fight* reads:

1 a : to contend physically for victory with vigor, fierceness, and determination

placing *fight* as quasi power Benefactive, the final outcome being uncertain. In

pBen microscene 41 *Six other candidates (Agt=qpBen) are FIGHTING (75) the election [for a position of power] (Obj) including a Marxist PLO official and a professor [who IS] under house arrest in the US.*

The candidates are the Agents and also the possible winners of the elections. As winners they would be in the power Benefactive role, however, they are competing and thus in the quasi-power Benefactive role. The semantic representation is:

fight [----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=qpBen] {qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 43 FIRE (64) {ASW0004T}

Fire is a Basic predicator explicitly seen through the lexicogrammatical

item – *cause* – in the M-WUD entries which read:

1 a : to set on fire : set fire to [...] b (1) : KINDLE, LIGHT, IGNITE [...] (2) : to cause to explode by lighting or igniting [...] (3) : to cause (an internal-combustion engine) to start operation

The lexical items: *Palestinian militants*, *rockets*, *Israel* and *the Gaza Strip* contribute to the semantic displacement from the Basic to the power Benefactive subdomain in

pBen microscene 42 Groups such as Hamas have boycotted the Palestinian Authority presidential polls, and *Palestinian militants (Agt=qpBen) FIRED (64) at least two rockets (Obj) into Israel (Obj) from the Gaza Strip as a show of strength today.*

By *firing* rockets into Israel the *Palestinian militants* are trying to destroy the target. It is not defined in the microscene as to whether damage was actually caused, so the microscene displaces further to the quasi-power Benefactive, which is an intra-domain move. The *Palestinian militants* take the dual role of Agent and quasi-power Benefactive; they fire two rockets, which take the role of Object, into *Israel*, also taking the semantic role of Object. The semantic representation is:

fire [----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=qpBen] {Basic→qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 44 FLY (363) {ASW0018B}

Flying from one place to another falls explicitly under the Locative semantic domain in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 43 *Shah Mohammed Reza Pahlevi and his wife, Empress Farah (Agt=pBen_{neg}), left Tehran [and the position of power] and **FLEW** (363) to Aswan in Egypt (Obj).*

the Shah and Empress are *flying* from one place to another, but there has been a semantic move, understood when considered in context. What is foregrounded is the fact that they *left* Tehran, flying, paraphrased as *fleeing*, to Egypt (in the semantic role of Object) because of the increasing violence against his regime (cf. ASW0018B). The fact that his regime had been in power, by fleeing he is distancing himself from his post, from his power and semantically power Benefactive negative by *losing* power. In **pBen microscene 44** the Shah and his wife are co-referentially *Agent*, taking themselves away from Tehran and their position of power, *the power Benefactive negative* semantic role. There has been a move from the Locative to the power Benefactive negative. The semantic representation is:

fly [----- Agt, *pBen_{neg}, Obj / Agt=pBen_{neg}] {Loc→pBen_{neg}}

power Benefactive predicator 45 FORCE (117) {ASW0007T}

To *force* means to use power do achieve something and constitutes a power microscene. In

pBen microscene 44 Mr Dawood is among a growing number of election workers who are quitting their posts after threats from *insurgents* (Agt=pBen-del) intent on **FORCING (117)** Iraq's January 30 poll(Obj) into chaos (Obj).

the microscene is pivoted around a prepositional phrase, therefore, the Agt=pBen co-referential role of the *insurgents*, emerging in the previous microscene, is marked as deleted. The *poll* plays the role of Object, being provoked to do something, in this case *go into chaos*, also Object. The semantic representation is:

force [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 46 FREE (254) {ASW0013B}

In order to *free* a party they must be captive, that is under somebody's control, in the first place. In

pBen microscene 45 Director Shami Chakrabarti called on the government (Agt=pBen-del) to "practise what it preaches" and either **FREE (254)** or charge 12 detainees (Obj) at Belmarsh and Woodhill prisons.

the microscene is introduced by an infinitive clause so the Agent is marked as deleted. The *government* accounts for the role of Agent deleted *freeing* the *detainees*, who are in the Object role from under the government's power, the government accounting for the dual role Agent - power Benefactive role as *they* maintain the twelve imprisoned. The semantic representation is:

free [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 47 FREEZE (437) {ASW0020B}

Freeze means to change in form from liquid to solid, a Basic Process. The lexicogrammatical items *Venezuela, diplomatic, trade links, Columbia, mercenaries* and *guerrilla chief* contribute to the semantic move from the Basic to the power Benefactive in

pBen microscene 46 Venezuela (*Agt=pBen*) **FROZE (437)** diplomatic and trade links (*Obj*) with Colombia on Friday, after Colombia hired mercenaries to capture a guerrilla chief on Venezuelan soil.

This metaphorical use is made possible by the sense derived from the “metaphorical concept” (Lakoff & Johnson, 1980, p. 7) of, I would say, TRADING IS A RIVER. Utterance 1 - *The river was frozen*, which comprises a Basic State microscene, is now being used metaphorically to mean *diplomatic and trade links* were stopped by order of the Venezuelan government. These *diplomatic and trade links* are in the Object role of being acted upon. *Freeze* has undergone an intra domain semantic movement. It is no longer a Process, but rather an Action now. Venezuela stands for the Venezuelan government and is in the power Benefactive role, co-referential with the Agent *freezing* the trade links. The semantic representation is:

freeze [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 48 GET (193) BACK INTO {ASW0011B}

Get back into is a phrasal verb and the CDPV entry shows it as a Basic action and reads:

get back into. If you **get back into** an activity you were doing before, you start being involved in it again. EG. *Maybe you could get back into journalism...* (ibid, p. 121, author’s emphasis).

The lexical items: *Israelis, occupied territory, President Bush* and *final status resolution* prompt a semantic move from the Basic to the power Benefactive in

pBen microscene 47 "If we can get that conference successfully moving ahead and then the Israelis disengage from part of the occupied territories, then I believe that *President Bush* (*Agt=qpBen*) will be willing in those circumstances to get back into the roadmap and **GET (196) BACK INTO the conferences that can lead to a proper final status resolution** (*Obj*)"

President Bush is in the role of power Benefactive and also the Agent getting back into the conferences. However, *can lead to* moves the microscene to the quasi-power Benefactive as the modal *can* means the final result is not defined. *Bush* then plays the coreferential role of Agent and quasi-power Benefactive, while *the conferences that can lead to a proper final status resolution* is in the role of Object. The semantic representation is:

get back into [----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=qpBen] {Basic→qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 49 HEAD (92) {ASW0006T}

The M-WUD entry for *head* reads:

transitive verb

1 : BEHEAD

2 a : to lop off the top branches of : POLL *head a tree* b : to cut back (the shoots of plants) to induce branching or check growth

4 : to put oneself at the head of : act as leader to <head a revolt>

In the first entry the lexicogrammatical item *behead* is a candidate for the power Benefactive, to remove somebody's head. For example:

The pirates *were beheaded* (my example 9)

The fourth entry is clearly power Benefactive. To *lop off the top branches* is familiar to a linguistic community of farmers, however a general community would appreciate head as power Benefactive. In fact, the American Heritage dictionary places *to be in charge of* as the first entry for *head*, and therefore power Benefactive. In

pBen microscene 48 But *the Department for Constitutional Affairs* (*Obj_s*), which the Lord Chancellor (*pBen*) **HEADS (92)**, has not emended the FoI Act to enshrine the need for a collective Cabinet decision

where the position of Lord Chancellor is one of hierarchical power meaning he is in the semantic role of power Benefactive, in charge of *the Department for Constitutional Affairs* which, in turn, is in the Object semantic role, marked –s for a State microscene.

The semantic representation is:

head [----- pBen, Obj_s] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 50 HOLD (34) {ASW0002T}

When somebody *holds* something it is in their possession, even if only temporarily, a Benefactive microscene emerges. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items *Conservative constituencies* and *Labour* in:

pBen microscene 49 "We cannot continue down the path of ever-rising taxes," said the Tory leader during a tour of four Conservative target constituencies (Obj_s) **HELD (34)** by *Labour* (pBen)

Labour is the power Benefactive party in this microscene. The microscene is a State and *constituencies* is the Object marked stative.

The semantic representation is:

hold [----- pBen, Obj_s] {Ben→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 51 HOLD (58) UP {ASW0004T}

As described above *hold*, on its own, is Benefactive. Adding the preposition *up*, it appears to emerge as Locative, e.g. the bottle is moved upwards. The online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary brings four entries for *hold up*:

hold sb/sth up (STEAL) phrasal verb [M]
Benefactive
to steal from someone using violence or the threat of violence:
They held the same bank up twice in one week.

He was held up at gunpoint by a gang of masked youths.

hold sb/sth up (DELAY) phrasal verb [M] Time
to delay someone or something:
Traffic was held up for several hours by the accident.

hold up (REMAIN STRONG) phrasal verb] Basic
to remain strong or successful:
Will his alibi hold up (= continue to seem true) in court? . [Experiential]
I hope the repairs hold up until we can get to a garage.

hold sth up as sth phrasal verb (ALSO **hold up sth as sth**)] Experiential
to use someone or something as an example of something, especially something
very good:
Sweden is often held up as an example of a successful social democracy.

Taking the first entry, the phrasal verb *hold up* is placed as Benefactive in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 50 Voting has been extended by two hours in the
Palestinian Authority presidential poll because *some voters (Obj) have been
HELD (58) UP by Israeli army checkpoints* [at the checkpoints] (Obj) [by the Israeli
Army] (Agt=pBen-del),, election officials said.

the microscene - *some voters (Obj) have been HELD (58) UP by Israeli army
checkpoints* - does not contain the Benefactive meaning of holding someone up in the
air, but rather holding them in a place, there has been a semantic move from the
Benefactive to the power Benefactive. In this microscene it is implicit that the Israeli
Army are the Agents and power Benefactors - deleted in this passive microscene -
holding up the voters (Obj) at the checkpoints (Obj). The semantic representation is:

hold up [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Ben→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 52 HUMILIATE (292) {ASW0015B}

When someone humiliates another person there is a display of power
difference, be that temporarily or not. To humiliate somebody is to cause them to be
submissive, where the person doing the humiliating at that moment is in the power
Benefactive role.

In

pBen microscene 51 *Two Muslim detainees at Iraq's Abu Ghraib prison have told a court martial that they [Two Muslim detainees] (Obj) were tortured and HUMILIATED (292) by a US soldier (Agt=pBen) on trial for abuse.*

they is an anaphoric reference to the Muslim detainees who were humiliated and in the Object role. The US soldier is co-referentially the Agent and the person in power at the moment of the humiliation. The semantic representation is:

humiliate [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 53 INSIST (99) ON {ASW0006T}

The CDPV entry for *insist on* reads:

Insist on. If you **insist on or upon** something, you ask for it firmly V+PREP: and refuse to accept any alternative. EG *Most universities insist on an interview before they accept a student...* (ibid, p. 174, author's emphasis).

The lexicogrammatical item – *ask* – suggests *insist in* to be expressing cognition, however, the issue of asking firmly and not taking *no* for an answer is foregrounded and generates a power Benefactive microscene. In

pBen microscene 52 But after 14 vetoes in four years, *it* [*the freedom of information Act*] (Agt=pBen-del) was amended to **INSIST (99) ON** *collective agreement (Obj)*.

the Freedom of Information Act, *it*, modifies the limitations of power, either becoming stricter or less austere, acting by altering the degree of power over a party²⁶. When a Law, Rule, Regulation, although an inanimate object, comes into force, behind these there is metonymically, a political force, an authority, or a party representing the legal system concerned, for example. People should obey the law, and respect the power behind the stated Law, Rule, Act, etc. The FoI Act –in the role of Agt=pBen-del - is

²⁶ 'party', likewise 'body', refers in general terms to 'a person', or 'group of people' or 'some entity' and NOT a political party.

absent from the surface of this infinitive microscene and marked deleted. ‘The collective agreement’ is what is being insisted on and therefore in the Object role.

The semantic representation is:

insist on [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 54 INTERVIEW (335) ASW0016B

To interview is a cognitive procedure and its basic sense falls in the Experiential domain. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items *police* and *suspects* in:

pBen microscene 53 *Police (Agt=pBen) INTERVIEWED (335)*
the suspects (Obj), including Mr Martin, on 11 November last year

The Police are in the power Benefactive role, exerting their power role when they interview the suspects, who are in the Object role.

The semantic representation is:

interview [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 55 JUDGE (339) {ASW0016B}

To judge is power Benefactive in its basic sense as revealed by the following dictionary definitions. The Longman dictionary of Contemporary English (1987, p. 568) reads:

1. To act as a judge in (a law case);
2. To decide the result (of a competition) or give an official decision.

In

pBen microscene 54 "*He grabbed the exhibit and the interview became disorderly [...]*" You [the jury] (Agt=pBen-del) will have *to JUDGE (339)* if that [grabbing an exhibit] (Obj) *represents the actions of an innocent man who had nothing to do with these things,*" he told the jury.

The jury are in the co-referential role of Agent and power Benefactive as they hold the power to decide on *something*, which occupies the Object role. In this microscene the *something* is whether *that*, [a man grabbing an exhibit] *represents* the actions of an innocent. The semantic representation is:

judge [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 56 JUMP (311) {ASW0015B}

When somebody jumps there is a physical upward movement, or on the same spot, or from one place to another, comprising a Locative microscene. In

pBen microscene 55 After being injured in the gun fight, he said, he was taken back to his cell, where *Spc Graner (Agt=pBen) JUMPED (311) on his (Syrian fighter's) (Obj) wounded leg* and hit his wounds with a metal baton.

Graner jumps from where he is standing onto Syrian fighter Amin al-Sheikh's wounded leg (cf. newsreport ASW0015B), is basically Locative. However, considering the context this sequence of microscenes relates a scene of torture, which is power Benefactive where the prisoner is under the rule of his captive. The wounded leg, metonymically Amin, is in the Object role, powerless against Graner, placing Graner in the co-referential role of Agent and power Benefactive. The predicator *jump* has displaced to the power Benefactive subdomain. The semantic representation is:

jump [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 57 KNEEL (122) {ASW0007T}

When a person kneels he bends his knees, accounting for a lexicalised Object role, he goes down on to the floor which comprises a Locative microscene. In

pBen microscene 56 Horrifying images of the attack, which showed *one of the men (Agt) KNEELING (122) [on his knees] (Obj-lex)* before being murdered [by

his torturers] (pBen-del) were broadcast on television and served as a grim confirmation to any election officials still wondering whether the threats were real

it is understood that the man, accounting for the Agent role, bends his knees, (the lexicalised Object) to kneel before his warders, in turn accounting for the power Benefactive role. He is a pawn in the hands of these torturers. There has been a semantic move from the Locative domain to the power Benefactive. The semantic representation is:

kneel [----- Agt, *pBen, *Obj / pBen-del, Obj-lex] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 58 LEAD (133) TO {ASW0007T}

The online Cambridge Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs entry for *lead to* reads:

if an action or event leads to something, it causes that thing to happen or exist.

There is no entry in the COBUILD dictionary of Phrasal Verbs for *lead to*, only for *lead up to*. I consider *lead up to* as a possible paraphrase for *lead to*, the entry reads:

lead up to. 1 The events and periods of time that **lead up to** a final situation happen one after the other until that situation is reached (ibid, p. 195, author's emphasis).

Both dictionaries placing *lead to* in the Basic semantic domain as a cause and effect predicator. In

pBen microscene 57 *A widespread boycott by Sunnis* (Agt) – who represent 30 per cent of the population – *could LEAD (133) TO a government (qpBen) overwhelmingly dominated by Shi'ite Muslim parties.*

the *boycott* – Obj - is powerful enough to maybe *lead to* a Shi'ite dominated government. The *boycott by Sunnis* accounts for the Agent role in the microscene *leading to* a possible *government overwhelmingly dominated by Shi'ite Muslim parties*, accounting for the power Benefactive. The presence of the modal *could* has displaced the microscene to the quasi-power Benefactive by creating an uncertainty in the result of the boycott.

The semantic representation is:

lead to [----- Agt, qpBen] {Basic→qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 59 LEAVE (364) {ASW0018}

Leave was used as a paraphrase for *fly*, and is Locative in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 58 Official reports say *the Shah* (Agt=*pBen_{neg}*)
has **LEFT (364)** [*Tehran*] (*Obj-del*) for a "vacation" and medical treatment.

there has been a semantic move towards the power Benefactive negative following the same reasoning as *fly* in **pBen microscene 49**. The writer has made a point of using the term "vacation" in inverted commas insinuating that the Shah didn't really just go on holiday. The writer is writing for a particular audience, an audience that has some background knowledge on the political situation in the Middle East. The writer is in fact suggesting the official reports are not what they seem, and that the general public know the *Shah* is leaving his position of power, thus taking the semantic role of power Benefactive negative, co-referential with Agent as he is taking himself away from Tehran (in the semantic role of Object deleted), shared knowledge from **microscene 49**.

The semantic representation is:

leave [----- Agt, *pBen_{neg}, *Obj / Agt=pBen_{neg}, Obj-del] {Loc→pBen_{neg}}

power Benefactive predicator 60 LOSE (12) {ASW0001T}

When somebody (Ben) *loses* something (Obj) this is not done on purpose, it may be causativised if intention is added, to deceive for example, consequently there is no Agent, the microscene is a Process, a non-agentive event, and *lose* is a two-place Benefactive negative predicator in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 59 "In an age of global terrorism *we* [*the Tory leaders*] (*pBen_{neg}*) have **LOST (12)** control (*Obj*) of our borders.

the lexical item – *control* in the Object role – plays an important role in association with its predicator in the microscene. *Lose* is no longer a Benefactive predicator, rather *control* has displaced the microscene to the power Benefactive subdomain, where *we [the Tory leaders]* accounts for the role of power Benefactive. In my discussion on the power Benefactive subdomain (cf. 3.1.1) There is a distinction between ‘in-power’, ‘not-in-power’ and ‘struggling for power’ (quasi pBen, cf. 3.1.2). *Lose* is a ‘not-in-power’ pBen predicator as ‘we’ stands without power in the microscene ‘we are *losing* control’, the pBen role being marked pBen_{neg}, the semantic representation being:

$$\textit{lose} \text{ [----- pBen}_{\text{neg}}, \text{ Obj]} \quad \{ \text{Ben}_{\text{neg}} \rightarrow \text{pBen}_{\text{neg}} \}$$

power Benefactive predicator 61 MANOEUVRE (219) {ASW0012B}

In its basic sense *manoeuvre* is Locative as it means *to move something from one place / position to another*. In

pBen microscene 60 But he then changed his mind in June 2004, following intervention from allies in the Cabinet and the suspicion that *the chancellor (Agt) was deliberately MANOEUVRING (219) against him (qpBen) (Obj-del)*, according to the book.

him refers to Tony Blair (cf. ASW0012B). The *chancellor, by manoeuvring against him* could be paraphrased as - the chancellor is trying to *remove* Blair’s power, composing a quasi-power Benefactive microscene. The predicator has displaced from the Locative to the quasi-power Benefactive. Another indication that **microscene 61** falls under the quasi-power Benefactive subdomain is the lexical item *trying to* in the paraphrase. Blair, *him*, although in the apparent position of object on the surface is in fact in the position of power, or rather *quasi-power* Benefactive, *power* being in the semantic role of Object deleted. The *chancellor* is the Agent in the microscene.

The semantic representation is:

manoeuvre [----- Agt, qpBen, *Obj / Obj-del] {Loc→qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 62 MOVE (52) {ASW0003T}

Move means to change places and in its basic sense is unequivocally the Locative domain. In

pBen microscene 61 Another key function of the Treasury, *the Financial Services directorate (Obj)*, would be **MOVED (52)** to the *Department of Trade and Industry (pBen)*. *[by the person in charge](Agt-del)*

the *Financial Services directorate* is in the Object role being moved to another department by the person in charge who is not present in the microscene and marked as Agent deleted. The *Department of Trade and Industry* is a body responsible, as the name says, for Trade and Industry, occupying the semantic role of power Benefactive. The predicator *move* has metaphorised from the Locative semantic domain to the power Benefactive subdomain. The semantic representation is:

move [----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 63 MOVE (71) TOWARDS {ASW0004T}

Move towards is a phrasal verb and the CDPV entry for *move towards* reads:

move towards. If you **move towards** a different way of organizing something, you make preparations to introduce the new methods. EG. *The group has moved towards direct selling, cutting out agents' commission...* (ibid, p. 226, author's emphasis)

as organising involves mental activity this definition places the basic sense of *move towards* in the Experiential semantic domain. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical item *democracy* in:

pBen microscene 62 "The elections are going very well and this proves that *the Palestinian people (Agt=qpBen) are MOVING (71) TOWARDS democracy (Obj)*.

The M-WUD entry for *democracy* reads:

1 a : government by the people : rule of the majority **b (1)** : a form of government in which the supreme power is vested in the people and exercised by them directly (as in the ancient Greek city-states or the New England town meeting) called also direct *democracy (2)* : a form of government in which the supreme power is vested in the people and exercised by them indirectly through a system of representation and delegated authority in which the people choose their officials and representatives at periodically held free elections called also *representative democracy*

pBen microscene 63 could be paraphrased as *Palestinian people are MOVING (71) TOWARDS their governing themselves*. Governing is power Benefactive, the Palestinian people account for the coreferential role of Agent and power Benefactive. *Democracy* accounts for the Object role. The Palestinians are not yet in the office of governing which means the outcome is not definite and so the microscene is quasi-power Benefactive. The semantic representation is:

move towards [----- Agt, qpBen, Obj] {Exp→qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 64 NEGOTIATE (230) {ASW0013B}

To negotiate is a cognitive procedure and its basic sense falls in the Experiential domain. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items *government* and *trainees* in:

pBen microscene 63 He said *the government (Agt) had been NEGOTIATING (230) [with the authorities in charge of Guantanamo Bay] (pBen-del) [for] the return of the detainees [their release from Guantanamo] (Obj) since 2003*.

The *government* is an institution in power. If there are *detainees*, which would be in the Object role, there must be a party detaining *them*. Both comprise power Benefactive microscenes. The *return of the detainees to the UK* is the *release of them from Guantanamo*, where Guantanamo would be in the power Benefactive role and the

detainees in the Object role. In **pBen microscene 64** the government, in the role of Agent, negotiated with the authorities in charge of Guantanamo Bay, in the role of power Benefactive, for the release of the Britons, or, *return of the detainees to the UK*, in the Object role. The semantic representation is:

negotiate [-----Agt, *pBen, Obj / pBen-del] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 65 PERSUADE (381) {ASW0018B}

To persuade is a cognitive procedure and its basic sense falls in the Experiential domain. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items *prime minister* and *the Shah* in:

pBen microscene 64 Earlier this month he appointed a new prime minister, Dr Shapur Bahktiar. [...] Dr Bahktiar (Agt=pBen) PERSUADED (381) the Shah (Obj) it was time to leave (Obj).

although being the Shah is a position of power, in this microscene the Shah is no longer in the power Benefactive role, as his power has been challenged by the Ayatollah, and the Shah has already lost his authority in Iran, but still holds the title. Dr Bahktiar, who the Shah had appointed prime minister recently, is in the power Benefactive role. In fact he is co-referentially the power Benefactive and the Agent, persuading the Shah who is now in the position of being influenced, and therefore in the semantic role of Object. What he is being persuaded about i.e. *it was time to leave* is also in the role of Object. The semantic representation is:

persuade [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 66 PRESIDE (390) OVER {ASW0018B}

The Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs defines *preside over* as:

to be in charge of an event or situation and have official responsibility for it ... *Judge Langdale is to preside over the official enquiry into the case.*

The CDPV entry for *preside over* reads:

Preside over. 1 If you **preside over** an official occasion or event, you are in charge of it and are considered by other people to be in control of it or responsible for it; a formal use. EG. *He had presided over a seminar for theoretical physicists...* (ibid, p. 261-262, author's italics).

The lexical items *in charge of* and *in control of* and hence *preside over* are basically power Benefactive. In

pBen microscene 65 *Khomeini* guided his country's revolutionary social, legal, and political development until his death in 1989. *He* [Khomeini] (*pBen*) **PRESIDED (390) OVER** the country (*Obj_s*) during the Iran/Iraq war only reluctantly agreeing a ceasefire.

He, an anaphoric reference to Khomeini, is in the role of power Benefactive, presiding over the *country* which is in the role of stative Object. *Presiding* over a meeting would be agentive, while *presiding over a country* is stative. The semantic representation is:

preside over [----- pBen, Obj_s] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 67 PREVENT (81) {ASW0006T}

Prevent is a basically power Benefactive predicator, where a party blocks another's action, as can be seen from the M-WUD entries which read:

1 obsolete : to act or come before
2 : to make something impossible <*we shall come if nothing prevents*> [...] PREVENT implies an advance move or provision that blocks the occurrence or possible occurrence of something (as a calamity) or the success of something (as a plan) <*the surest way to prevent aggression is to remain strong enough to overpower and defeat any who might attack D.L.Lawrence*>

The lexicogrammatical items *overpower*, *defeat* and *attack* in the example reassure the power Benefactive. The lexicogrammatical items: *Government*, *veto*, *Freedom of Information Act* and *the Cabinet* contribute to the power Benefactive subdomain in

pBen microscene 66 The Government's (Agt=pBen-del) last-ditch veto to **PREVENT (81) secrets** (*Obj*) [from] *being disclosed* (*Obj*) under the Freedom of Information Act will only be used with the full agreement of the Cabinet

The last-ditch veto is metonymically the Government, taking the dual semantic role of Agent and power Benefactive, marked deleted as the microscene pivots around an infinitive. One prevents another from doing something, reveals two Object roles, in this case, the veto prevents the *secrets (Obj)* from *being disclosed (Obj) under the Freedom of Information Act*. The semantic representation is:

prevent [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 68 PROVIDE (288) {ASW0014B}

The M-WUD entry for *provide* reads:

1 archaic : to procure in advance : get ready beforehand : PREPARE <*provide us all things necessary Shakespeare*>
 2 a : to fit out or fit up : EQUIP used with with <provided the children with the books they needed>

The online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary entry for *provide* reads:

provide (SUPPLY) verb [T]
 to give someone something that they need:
This booklet provides useful information about local services.
All meals are provided throughout the course.

All dictionary entries place *provide* in the Benefactive domain. Several lexical items help displace *provide* towards the power Benefactive: *Syria, security, border, Iraq* in

pBen microscene 67 The US has made no comment, but has said in the past that *Syria (Agt=pBen-del)* is not doing enough to **PROVIDE (288)** *security (Obj) on its border (Obj) with Iraq*.

Syria is metonymic for the Syrian government and is the Agent and power Benefactive in the microscene, marked deleted as the predicator is an infinitive. Security accounts for one Object role, at its borders, which takes the role of a second Object. The semantic representation is:

provide [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Ben→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 69 PUNISH (242) {ASW0013B}

When a person is punished it is because they have done something wrong, that is they have broken a written or unwritten law. They are punished by the Law enforcer, giving rise to a power Benefactive microscene. In

pBen microscene 68 He added: "If they have done something wrong, of course *they (Obj) should be PUNISHED (242) [by the law in force] (Agt=pBen-del)* but if they haven't, they shouldn't have been there."

They is an anaphoric reference to two car thieves who drove away from a hit and run scene. *They* is in the role of Object, the Agent is the punishing body i.e. the *law in force* at that time and plays the co-referential role of Agent and power Benefactive, though absent from the surface and marked as deleted. The semantic representation is:

punish [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 70 QUESTION (233) {ASW0013B}

To question is a cognitive procedure and its basic sense falls in the Experiential domain. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items *police, arrest, the Terrorism Act* and *terrorists* in:

pBen microscene 69 But he added: "Once they are back in the UK, *the police (Agt=pBen-del)* will consider whether to arrest them [the Britons about to be released from Guantanamo] (Obj-del) under the Terrorism Act 2000 *for QUESTIONING (233) in connection with possible terrorist activity (Obj)*."

When the *police* question somebody they are exerting their authority over the interviewee. The police are in the dual role of Agent and power Benefactive, while *them*, the Britons about to be released, take up the Object role. As the microscene is around a prepositional phrase these roles are marked deleted. There is one more Object role, the content of the questioning – *in connection with possible terrorist activity*. The semantic representation is:

question [----- *Agt, *pBen, *Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del, Obj-del] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 71 QUIT (20) {ASW0002T}

Quit posed quite a problem to determine the basic sense. The online American Heritage® Dictionary of the English Language (2000) entry for *quit* is:-

To cease performing an action.

placing *quit* in its basic sense as being from the Basic semantic domain. The M-WUD entries for *quit* read:

transitive verb

1 : to set free : RELIEVE, RELEASE <quit me of fear>, *the example is Experiential*

2 : to pay up : DISCHARGE <may fairly quit the debt> *the example is Benefactive*

3 : CONDUCT, ACQUIT <youths quit themselves like men> *the example is Experiential*

4 : to leave or leave off from: *the example is Locative as*

a : to depart from or out of <as soon as she quitted the room he returned to it> *the example is Locative*

b : to leave especially peremptorily the company of <the hero quitted him with some contempt George Meredith> *the example is Comitative*

c : to give over (as a way of thought, acting, or living) *the example is Experiential*: RELINQUISH, ABANDON, FORSAKE <a tribe that quitted the plains for the mountains> *the example is Locative*

d : to terminate (as an action, activity, or employment) especially with finality : LEAVE <quit a job> *the latter example is Benefactive*, but terminate an action is *Basic*

intransitive verb 1 : to leave off or cease normal, expected, or necessary action <the engine coughed, sputtered, and quit> *the example is Basic*

2 : to give up employment : stop working : LEAVE <a worker quitting because of poor pay> *the example is Benefactive*

3 : to give up : admit defeat : *the example is Experiential*

It can be seen that *quit* lends itself to various domains. I have chosen to consider it as basically Benefactive, taking the sense of *quitting a job* as being the predecessor to *quitting a position of power*. In

pBen microscene 70 He took the risk of openly discussing a possible Conservative loss to indicate that, unlike John Major and William Hague before him, *he* [*Mr. Blair*] (*Agt=pBen_{neg}*) would carry on **RATHER than QUIT (20)** [*his position of power*] (Obj) the day after a general election defeat.

quit has metaphorised from the Benefactive to the power Benefactive. The Agent is Mr Blair, and *he* holds a position of power, taking a dual role of Agt and pBen. If he had decided to leave his power position (which is the argument in the Object role), he would be relinquishing his power giving rise to a not-in-power microscene. However, the

presence of the lexicogrammatical item – *rather* – turns the polarity around, the negative of a negative makes a positive; although as a pBen metaphor *quit* would most likely be pBen_{neg} in **microscene 71** the negative polarity is annulled and the semantic representation is:-

quit [----- Agt, * pBen_{neg}, *Obj / Agt= pBen_{neg}, Obj-del] { Ben_{neg} → pBen_{neg} }

power Benefactive predicator 72 REFER (400) TO {ASW0019B}

Refer to, a phrasal verb, is a cognitive procedure, its basic sense falling in the Experiential domain, as can be deduced from the CDPV entry for *refer to*:

refer to 1 If you refer to a particular subject or person, you talk about them or mention them. EG. *In his letters to Vita he rarely referred to political events...* (ibid, p. 296, author's emphasis).

The entries for *refer to* in the online Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs are all in the Experiential semantic domain and *read*:

refer to sb/sth: to talk about or mention someone or something
In his autobiography he repeatedly refers to his unhappy school days.
He always referred to his father as 'the old man'. [often + as]

refer to sth: to read something in order to get information
Refer to the users' guide if you have any problems.
She spoke for an hour without once referring to her notes.

refer sb/sth to sb/sth: to send someone or something to a different place or person in order to get information or help or in order to be dealt with
Her doctor wants to refer her to a specialist.
They are hoping their case will be referred to the European Court.

The first entry for *refer to* in the M-WUD (ibid) reads:

“to think of, regard, or classify under a subsuming principle or with a general group”

and also places the basic sense in the Experiential domain. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items [*civilian ministers*], *Revolutionary Command Council*, and *matters of state* in:

pBen microscene 71 But *they* [civilian ministers] (Agt – del) were obliged to **REFER (400) TO** the so-called Revolutionary Command Council (pBen) on matters of state (Obj) and twice threatened to resign.

they are the deleted Agents who have to discuss matters of state - in the Object role - with the higher authorities, the Command Council – in the power Benefactive role. This means the council has the power of decision on the matters, as a result of an inter-domain displacement *refer to* has emerged as a linguistic mark of power, with the semantic representation:-

refer to [----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 73 REIN (42) IN {ASW0003T}

When a rider or jockey reins in a horse he is controlling the beast, *rein in* being basically power Benefactive. The M_WUD (2000) entry says *rein* means “to put a check or restraint upon as if by the use of reins, often used with in or up”.

rein sth in/back (ACTIVITY) phrasal verb [M] to control an emotion, activity or situation to prevent it from becoming too powerful: We tried to rein in our excitement and curiosity. Reports today suggest consumers are already reining back spending.

The CDPV entry for *rein in* reads:

rein in. 1. If you are riding and you **rein in** the horse, you make it stop or go more slowly by pulling its reins. EG. He **reined in** his horse to a walk... They proudly reined in their horses before the park gates.

2. To **rein in** someone who is behaving in an extreme or unacceptable way means to control them and make them behave properly; a formal use. EG. The colonels were going too far and would have to be reined in (ibid, p. 297, author’s emphasis).

Both these examples demonstrate power Benefactive microscenes. The first can be recognised through *make* it stop and the second one, through the lexical item – control.

pBen microscene 72 *Mr Blair* (Agt=pBen–del) is under pressure from some ministers to **REIN (42) IN** *Mr Brown*.

is a power Benefactive microscene where Mr Blair is to control Mr Brown. Mr Blair is co-referentially the Agent and the body in the power Benefactive role, marked as deleted from the surface as the microscene is introduced by an infinitive clause.

The semantic representation is:-

rein in [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 74 REINVIGORATE (198) {ASW0011B}

The Oxford learner's dictionary entry for *invigorate* reads:

Invigorate 1 [often passive] to make somebody feel healthy and full of energy (p.716).

Because of the lexicogrammatical item *feel*, I place *invigorate* as basically Experiential.

The M-WUD entry for *reinvigorate* reads:

to give renewed or fresh vigor to <studies designed to reinvigorate the humanities
W.H.Whyte>

The M-WUD entry for *vigour* reads:

1 : active strength or force of body or mind : capacity for physical, intellectual, or moral exertion :
effective energy or power <the vigor of youth> <the vigor of a storm>
4 : effective legal status : VALIDITY <laws that are still in vigor>

This entry is of mixed domains, but again there are examples from the Experiential domain – intellectual, moral exertion. Entry 4 shows a metaphoric use of vigour as effective legal status becoming power Benefactive. In

pBen microscene 73 "We have got *a new Israeli government*
(Agt=pBen-del) that is committed to **REINVIGORATING (198)** *the peace*
process (Obj-lex)

a new Israeli government is the Agent who is committed to giving vigour to the peace process. The Israeli government is also the power Benefactive being able to reinvigorate the peace process, which is in the role of Object. The dual role Agent=power Benefactive is marked as deleted as again the predicator is in the infinitive form. The giving of vigour is incorporated within the predicator and so is in the role of Object

marked as lexical. The semantic representation is:

reinvigorate [----- *Agt, *pBen, *Obj / Agt=pBen-del, Obj-lex] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 75 RELEASE (229) {ASW0013B}

To *release* means to set free. When a party has the capacity to set another party free, this means they had control over them in the first place constituting a power Benefactive microscene. In

pBen microscene 74 Mr Straw said the US (Agt-del) had agreed to **RELEASE (229)** the four (Obj) [from the Guantanamo camp] (pBen-del) after "intensive and complex discussions" over security.

The US government is the Agent of the microscene. They decide on who, [the prisoners - in the role of Object], are to be released from the Guantanamo camp. The camp is the body in the power Benefactive role. The semantic representation is:

release [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt-del, pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 76 REMAIN (423) {ASW0019B}

To *remain* means to stay in a place and is Locative in its basic sense. There has been a semantic move from the Locative to the power Benefactive by hierarchical power in the oil industry. In

pBen microscene 75 However Libya's oil industry continues to thrive and *she* [Libya's oil industry] (Obj) **REMAINS (423)** the fourth largest oil producer in the world (pBen).

she refers to the *Libyan oil industry* which has considerable esteem and power as it is none less than the *fourth largest in the world*. Again world knowledge plays a part in the analysis. The positioning in the oil industry hierarchy is foregrounded and therefore classified as power Benefactive. The Libyan oil industry is then the Object in the Process of continuing in a state. In this analysis the concern has moved away from

explicit political power. Here the issue is of *money* is power, fourth position in any slice of society is high enough up in a *worldwide* hierarchy to be considered power Benefactive.

The semantic representation is:

remain [----- pBen, Obj] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 77 REPRESENT (244) {ASW0013B}

The predicator *represent* is from the Basic semantic domain, for example –

A flag is a symbol representing a country (**my example 10**)

which is a stative Basic microscene. However, if somebody is representing the company they work for, then they are the *Agent* and the microscene becomes agentive and thus an action. When there is no agent in the microscene, the basic sense of *represent* would be a 2-place predicator, with the semantic representation of a state encompassing a basic verb type codified as: [-----Obj_s, Obj_s]. When a person is acting on behalf of, for and in favour of, the group the semantic representation changes to [-----Agt, Obj], where the microscene is now an action. The sense continues to be in the Basic semantic domain. In

pBen microscene 76 Lawyer Louise Christian, (*pBen*) who **REPRESENTS** (244) Mr Abbasi and Mr Mubanga (*Obj_s*), said the government should have acted sooner.

there has been a metaphorical move from a Basic state towards a power Benefactive state, as the issue of power comes into play. The lexicogrammatical item, *lawyer*, which is directly related to acting on somebody's behalf in court, and the fact that the lawyer (*pBen*) represents the two men (*Obj_s*), influences the analysis. The presence of the lexical item *lawyer* places Louise as an individual (*pBen*) in a role of power in court.

The semantic representation is:

represent [----- pBen, Obj_s] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 78 RESIGN (105) {ASW0097T}

Resign is a power Benefactive predicator. It is shared knowledge, accepted by our linguistic community, that *resign* represents somebody giving up a position in a hierarchy, the tendency being to *quit* rather than *resign* from a low status job. In

pBen microscene 77 *Iraq's election officials (Agt=pBen_{neg})*
RESIGN (105) [from their jobs] (*Obj-del*) fearing reprisals

the officials - in the Agent role - are relinquishing their power, their position of power, which is implicit and marked as deleted - *Obj-del*. The resultant microscene is a “not-in-power” one, a negative condition, as explained in the theoretical perspectives (cf. 3.1.2), polarity is not considered in the microscene, but it is marked negative, i.e. pBen_{neg} and the semantic representation is:

resign [----- Agt, *pBen_{neg}, *Obj / Agt=pBen_{neg}, Obj-del] {pBen_{neg}}

power Benefactive predicator 79 RESPECT (3) {ASW0001T}

To *respect* somebody is a cognitive procedure and therefore Experiential in its basic sense. The lexicogrammatical item ‘*the law*’ displaces *respect* to the power Benefactive in the following microscene. *Respect* can now be paraphrased as *owe obedience to*, to *obey* the body of power – *the Law*. In

pBen microscene 78 The Tory leader said his policies would reward *people (Agt) who* worked hard, **RESPECTED (3)** [showed respect for] (*Obj lex*) *the law (pBen)*, and took responsibility for their families.

the people are the Agents who respect the Law – the power Benefactive, they show respect (accounting for the lexicalised Object role) for the law.

The semantic representation is:

respect [----- Agt, pBen, *Obj / Obj-lex] {Exp→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 80 SEND (300) {ASW0015B}

The M-WUD entry for *send* shows this predicator is from the Locative semantic domain reading:

1: to cause to go by physical means or direct volition: as a: to propel or discharge with an aim: throw or direct in a particular direction <send an arrow> <send a bullet> <send a rocket to a distant planet>

In

pBen microscene 79 *Hussein Mutar, an Iraqi (Obj) SENT (300)*
to Abu Ghraib (pBen) [by the court of justice] (Agt-del) for stealing a car, was
forced to masturbate in public and piled onto a pyramid of naked men.

Abu Ghraib is a prison, an institute holding power over the prisoners, meaning the predicator has displaced to the power Benefactive. The prison is in the power Benefactive semantic role. The court that tried *Hussein Mutar*, on another occasion not described in this newsreport, is the deleted Agent, and Mutar the Object of the microscene, the participant being sent to prison. The semantic representation is:

send [----- *Agt, pBen, *Obj / Agt-del, Obj-del] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 81 SHOOT (327) {ASW0016B}

When somebody is intentionally killed by someone this comprises a power Benefactive microscene, it is an imposition of someone's power over another, likewise if the person is wounded. However, when a person is *shot at* they are not necessarily hit, but there is intention to wound or kill behind the action. As there is only a *probability* of hitting the person then the microscene is quasi-power Benefactive. In

pBen microscene 80 *Leon Harris (Obj) was also SHOT (327) at [by a shooter] (Agt=qpBen-del), but escaped injury.*

the shooter is in the dual role of Agent and quasi-power Benefactive deleted, and Harris is in the role of Object. The semantic representation is:

shoot [----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=qpBen, Obj-del] {qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 82 SHOOT (121) DOWN {ASW0007T}

When somebody intentionally kills, the power is in their hands as they annihilate another life. Shoot somebody down is a power Benefactive predicator as it means they are hit, that they have been overpowered. The online Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs definition for *shoot down* is:

to kill or injure someone by firing a bullet at them, especially when they cannot defend themselves. *Five protesters were shot down by police during the anti-government demonstration.*

The CDPV entry for *shoot down* reads:

Shoot down. 1. If someone **shoots** something or someone **down**, they make them fall to the ground by hitting them with a bullet or missile. EG. *The enemy claim to have shot down 22 of our planes...* (ibid, p. 330, author's emphasis).

In

pBen microscene 81 *four election workers (Obj) were dragged from their car and SHOT (121) [DOWN] dead in broad daylight in Baghdad's Haifa Street district. [by shooters] (Agt=pBen-del)*

the election workers are in the semantic role of Object of the action. Who the Agents doing the shooting are does not appear on the surface so the dual role of Agt=pBen-del is marked as deleted. The semantic representation is:

shoot down [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 83 SHUT (247) DOWN {ASW0013B}

Shut down is a phrasal verb. The CDPV entry (p. 333, editors' emphasis) for *shut down* reads:

shut down. 1 If someone **shuts down** a factory or business or if it shuts down, it closes and stops working. EG. *British Petroleum has permanently shut down its massive refinery in Kent.*

When a factory closes down it stops working which is a basic Action. There has been a semantic move from the Basic to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical items *International Law, American and British Government* and *Guantanamo Bay* in:

pBen microscene 82 "They should at the outset have said quite clearly to the American government that they were behaving in breach of international law and that the British government wanted no part of it and wanted *Guantanamo Bay* (Obj) **SHUT (247) DOWN** [by *International Law enforcers*] (Agt=pBen-del).

The British government wants *Guantanamo Bay* to be closed down. *Guantanamo Bay* is a US prison for terrorists, accounting for the Object role, being acted upon by International Law enforcers, possibly the actual US government. The latter accounts for the dual role of Agent and power Benefactive doing the closing down, marked as deleted as the microscene is a passive form with a masked *by* agent. The semantic representation is:

shut down [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 84 STAND (208) ASIDE {ASW0012B}

The power Benefactive predicator *stand aside* is another phrasal verb. The CDPV entry for *stand aside* reads:

stand aside. 1 If you **stand aside**, you move to a position where you will not block other people. EG *Gareth stood aside to let him pass...* **2** If you **stand aside** from a disagreement or difficult situation, you separate yourself from it and refuse to become involved in it. EG *We wish to stand aside from these quarrels...* (ibid, p. 359, author's emphasis).

placing *stand aside* as Locative in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 83 *Mr Blair* (Agt-del) earlier dismissed the claim he had reneged on a promise *to STAND (208) ASIDE for Gordon Brown (pBen)* [to take over Blair's position of power] (Obj-del) as old news.

there is an infinitive predicator so Mr Blair as the Agent, is marked as deleted. The microscene could be paraphrased as – *Mr Blair will give Gordon Brown his position of power*. This power is the participant in the semantic role of – Obj-del. Gordon Brown is the participant receiving the power and is then power Benefactive in the microscene.

The semantic representation is:

stand aside [----- *Agt, pBen, *Obj / Agt-del, Obj-del] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 85 STAND (2) UP FOR {ASW0012B}

The criteria for considering when a predicator is a) a verb accompanied by prepositions or b) a phrasal verb, is if there is an entry for the predicator in a phrasal verb dictionary, as defined in the methodology part II. The importance of this is that the basic sense is taken as that of the phrasal verb, in this instance - *stand up for* - and not that of *stand*. The entry for *stand up for* in the CDPV (1995) is:

stand up for. If you stand up for a person or principle that is being attacked or criticized, you take forceful action in order to defend that person or principle. *EG I'm glad to see that he's standing up for himself...* (Sinclair & Moon, 1995, p. 361).

The fact that *you take forceful action* is part of the first entry places *stand up for* as power Benefactive in its basic sense. In

pBen microscene 84 *Michael Howard* (Agt=pBen-del) pledged *to STAND (2) UP FOR Britain's "forgotten majority"* (Obj) yesterday as he published the first instalment of the Conservative Party's general election manifesto.

Michael Howard, in a position of power, is the power Benefactor and also the Agent *standing up for the forgotten majority* – in the role of Object. Howard accounts for the dual role of Agent and pBen. The role is marked as deleted as it is in a clause previous to

the microscene - to **STAND (2) UP FOR** *Britain's "forgotten majority"*. The semantic representation is:

stand up for [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {pBen}
 power Benefactive predicator 86 STOP (177) {ASW0010T}

In this microscene I understand stop as being to finish and have chosen to include the entries for stop (finish) from the online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary. The examples are both Basic actions and read:

stop (FINISH)

1 [I or T] to finish doing something that you were doing:

Once I start eating chocolate, I can't stop.

2 [I or T] to not continue to operate:

My watch must have stopped.

The lexicogrammatical item *lawlessness* prompts a semantic move from the Basic to the power Benefactive in

pBen microscene 85 *The lawlessness (Agt=pBen) has got to STOP (177); it can't go on any more."*

This double negative can be paraphrased as the Law must rule again, where “ ‘must’ however, is a deontic modal which means to say it expresses power by insisting on compliance with specifications” (Butler & Keith, 1999:15). The presence of ‘has got’, a synonym for *must*, also causativizes ‘to stop’ placing ‘the lawlessness’ as accounting for the dual role Agent and power Benefactive. Once more the Obligatory Object rule has been relaxed. The semantic representation is:

stop [----- Agt, *pBen / Agt=pBen] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 87 STRENGTHEN (271) {ASW0014B}

Strengthen means to give strength to something, in its basic sense this would mean give physical or mental strength to something and composes a basic microscene.

The lexical items *Iraq*, *interim government*, *security forces* and *polling day* displace *strengthen* to the power Benefactive subdomain in

pBen microscene 86 Iraq's interim government (Agt-del) has announced it has set aside \$2.2bn of this year's budget *to STRENGTHEN* (271) [*give more strength to*] (*Obj-lex*) *the security forces* (pBen), who will be responsible for maintaining order on polling day, 30 January.

The *Iraqi interim government* is the Agent giving more strength to the *security forces*, accounting for the power Benefactive role. Giving more strength to, places *strength* as a lexicalised Object. The semantic representation is:

strengthen [----- *Agt, pBen, *Obj / Agt-del, Obj-lex] {Basic→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 88 SUCCEED (203) {ASW0011B}

To succeed means to *be successful*, or, another sense could be to follow. In pBen microscene 88 the point of departure is to *follow*. This is not to follow in the Locative sense but rather to take a person's place in a hierarchy when that person leaves the post and is power Benefactive in its basic sense, explicit in the M-WUD entry for *succeed* which reads:

intransitive verb

1 a : to come next after or replace another in an office, position, or role or in possession of an estate : fill a vacancy in an inherited, elective, or appointive position <upon the death of his father he succeeded to a considerable fortune and to his father's position as rector J.D.Wade>; specifically : to inherit sovereignty, rank, or title <upon the death of the president the vice-president would succeed>

The terms *to replace another in an office*, *fill a vacancy in an inherited, elective, or appointive position*, *rector*, *president* and *vice-president* are all power lexical items. The position acquired is a *voted in one* or a *right of birth*. In

pBen microscene 87 Palestinian Liberation Organisation chairman Mahmoud Abbas (pBen-del) is the front-runner in the race *to SUCCEED* (203) Mr Arafat (Obj).

Mr Arafat is in a position of power accounting for the Object role. Mahmoud Abbas, on succeeding Arafat is assuming a position of power and is therefore in the power Benefactive role in this Process.

The semantic representation is:

succeed [----- pBen, Obj] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 89 TAKE (310) BACK {ASW0015B}

The predicator *take back* is a phrasal verb. The entry for *take back* in the CDPV reads:

take back. 1 When you **take** something **back** to the place where you were or where it was before, you go to that place with it. EG '*More hot coffee?*' *She shook her head so he took the tray back... ...spending an hour shopping for gifts to take back with me...* (ibid, p. 385, author's emphasis).

placing *take back* as Locative in its basic sense, where a person or thing (Obj) is taken back to a place (Loc), by an Agent (Agt). In

pBen microscene 88 After being injured in the gun fight, he said, he (Obj) was **TAKEN (310) BACK** to his cell (Obj), [by the prison staff] (Agt=pBen-del), where Spc Graner jumped on his wounded leg and hit his wounds with a metal baton.

there is a metaphoric use of the predicator *take back*, where a prisoner – Obj - is taken back to his cell - Obj - by a soldier in charge of him - Agt=pBen-del -, not on the surface in the microscene so marked as deleted and having a dual role . *Take back* has undergone a semantic move from Locative to power Benefactive. The semantic representation is:

take back [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 90 TAKE (394) OVER {ASW0019B}

The predicator - *take over* - is a phrasal verb. The entry in the CDPV reads:

take over. 1 To **take over** a company or business means to gain control of it by buying it or buying a majority of its shares. EG *Some people wanted to take over my father's oil importing business...* (ibid, p. 391, author's italics).

The clause – to gain control – in the definition explicitly shows *take over* generates a power Benefactive microscene. In

pBen microscene 89 ON THIS DAY 1970 *Gaddafi (Agt=pBen)*
TAKES (394) OVER as Libya's premier (Obj).

Gaddafi is in the dual role of Agent taking over the leadership (accounting for the power Benefactive) of the Libyan government in a position of power, *premier* accounting for the Object role. The semantic representation is:

take over [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 91 TAX (7) {ASW0001T}

The M-WUD entry for *tax* reads:

1 a archaic: to place a value upon: estimate the worth of or fix the price of b : to assess, fix, or determine judicially the amount of <tax the costs of an action in court>
2: to make subject to the payment of a tax: levy a charge on; especially: to exact money from for the support of government.

1a is an archaic usage; considering entries 1b and 2 it is clear that to *tax* is power Benefactive in its basic sense, made explicit by the lexicogrammatical terms: *judicially, court, make subject to, levy and exact*. In

pBen microscene 90 "Government (Agt=pBen) is too big – it is spending too much, wasting too much and *TAXING (7)* [the population] (Obj) *too much*. This threatens our economic stability."

the government is in the semantic dual role of Agent and power Benefactive, wielding power over the population – in the role of Object. The semantic representation is:

tax [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 92 THREATEN (53) {ASW0003T}

When we talk about *challenging somebody to a game of chess*, we do not know what the outcome will be, we do not know who will win. Such a microscene (in italics) is labelled as quasi-Benefactive. Threaten, on the other hand is more aggressive and involves a power relationship.

The M-WUD entry for threaten reads:

1: to utter threats against: promise punishment, reprisal, or other distress to <threaten trespassers with arrest>

Threaten is quasi-power Benefactive in its basic sense because it is warning of a harmful or prejudicial situation that could occur under specific circumstances. Somebody – Agt - informs another – qpBen - that they will act upon the first to cause prejudice - Obj. The body in the qpBen role suffers a negative Benefaction, by having their well-being at risk. As stated earlier, polarity is not portrayed in the semantic representations, even though the flow of power is negative in the microscene. In the situation of a threat to authority in:

pBen microscene 91 The Treasury's only remaining responsibility would be taxation. *The scheme (Agt=qpBen) could also THREATEN (53) the Chancellor's authority over the five economic tests for Britain to join the Euro (Obj).*

the scheme is the instrument or Agent of the threatening, coreferential with the power Benefactive. To *threaten* is to question authority. Authority is the Object (although it is referentially power) that is being questioned, generating a quasi-power Benefactive microscene. The semantic representation is:-

threaten [-----Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=qpBen] {qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 93 THWART (406) {ASW0019B}

The online Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary entry for *thwart* reads:

to stop something from happening or someone from doing something:
My holiday plans have been thwarted by the strike.

The online American Heritage® Dictionary of the English Language reads:

To prevent the occurrence, realization, or attainment of: *They thwarted her plans.*

The Compact Oxford English Dictionary entry reads:

prevent from succeeding in or accomplishing something

In the Cambridge example the lexicogrammatical item *strike* is a candidate for the power Benefactive. If the microscene had been *my holiday plans were thwarted by the rain*, or maybe by *the aviation disaster*, this would clearly be a Basic microscene. The other examples are power Benefactive, one fine element of power exerted by the Agent sways the microscene. The lexicogrammatical item – *coup* – confirms *thwart* as power Benefactive in

pBen microscene 92 Last month *Col Gaddafi* (Agt=pBen)
THWARTED (406) *an attempted coup by his Defence and Interior Ministers (Obj)*
 and took charge of the main ministries single-handedly.

This microscene represents a complex situation, the presence of *attempted* means the coup was a challenge to authority that did not work out. What is foregrounded in the context has to be taken into consideration. In the microscene:

The ruling government (pBen_{neg}) is overthrown in a coup [by the challenging party] (Agt)
 (my example 11)

the leader of the coup is the Agent challenging the party in power – the pBen; the coup being successful the Agent then becomes the ruling party. In the newsreport Gaddafi is in power, in

Gaddafi's (qpBen) power (Obj) is challenged by the Ministers (Agt) (my example 12)

the microscene is quasi-power Benefactive, but as the coup is unsuccessful in **pBen microscene 93** Gaddafi remains in power. If the coup *had* been successful, the resultant situation would be Gaddafi not-in-power, i.e. pBen_{neg}, as in **my example 11**. However,

Gaddafi continues in power despite the intended overthrowal, he is the Agent and the power Benefactive in the microscene, the attempted coup being in the semantic role of Object. The *Defence and Interior Ministers* are part of that Object role underlined. The semantic representation is:

thwart [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 94 TRANSFER (148) {ASW0008T}

The M-WUD entry for *transfer* reads:

1 a: to carry or take from one person or place to another

placing transfer in the Locative semantic domain. In

pBen microscene 93 Downing Street is looking at plans for *the Treasury's responsibilities for the financial services industry (Obj) to be TRANSFERRED (148) to the Department for Trade and Industry (pBen) [by the government] (Agt-del)*.

the lexical items *Downing Street*, *Treasury*, *Department for Trade and Industry* promote a semantic displacement to the power Benefactive. After the transfer the *Department for Trade and Industry* will be responsible for the financial services industry and therefore take the position of the power Benefactive role, the industry taking the role of Object. The government is the deleted Agent of the passive microscene. The semantic representation is:

transfer [----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del] {Loc→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 95 URGE (101) {ASW0006T}

Urge is a cognitive procedure and in its basic sense it falls in the Experiential domain. However, in:

pBen microscene 94 The Tories (Agt=qpBen) called the information commissioner, Richard Thomas, a "*Government lap-dog*"

*yesterday and **URGED (101)** him [the information commissioner, Richard Thomas] (Obj)
to consider quitting (Obj).*

the lexical item *commissioner* displaces *urge* to the power Benefactive subdomain. *The Tories* are the Agents and quasi power Benefactive participants coreferential in the microscene urging Thomas – in the semantic role of Object - to *quit his job in a position of power*. The latter underlined lexical item is also in the role of Object. *Urge* has displaced from the Experiential to the quasi-power Benefactive.

The semantic representation is:

urge [----- Agt, qpBen, Obj, Obj] {Exp→qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 96 VETO (84) {ASW0006T}

The M_WUD entry for *veto* is:

to refuse to admit or approve : NEGATIVE, PROHIBIT; *also* : to refuse assent to (a legislative bill) so as to prevent enactment or cause reconsideration (author's emphasis).

where *veto* generates a power Benefactive microscene, emphasised by the lexical item *prohibit*. In

pBen microscene 95 The wording of the Act, which comes into force today, states *that individual Cabinet ministers (Agt=pBen) can **VETO (84) decisions by lower tribunals*** (Obj) that information should be disclosed.

there is a power hierarchy and the Cabinet ministers are in the co-referential semantic role of Agt and pBen having more power to act than the lower tribunals. The former has the power / authority to rule against decisions – in the Obj role - taken by the latter. The semantic representation is:

veto [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 97 VOICE (359) {ASW0017B}

To voice is a communicative procedure and its basic sense falls in the Experiential domain. The lexical item *kidnappers* makes the following microscene a candidate for the power Benefactive in:

pBen microscene 96 But he admitted France had not made concessions on three issues *that the kidnappers (Agt=qpBen) had VOICED (359) opposition to: the ban on Muslim headscarves in French schools, France's military contingent in Afghanistan and France's position on Darfur (Obj).*

By voicing their opposition the kidnappers are questioning authority. In **microscene 97**, they are the Agents in voicing *opposition to three issues*. What is foregrounded here is the ‘*three issues*’ and not the kidnapping. The *ban on headscarves* accounts for the Object role, along with the other two issues which are concepts metonymically representing power referentially. The kidnappers, by challenging the power in force, account for the dual role of Agent and quasi-power Benefactive, quasi because the end result is not defined at that moment in time and space. The semantic representation is:

voice [----- Agt, qpBen, Obj] {Exp→qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 98 VOTE (132) {ASW0007T}

When somebody *votes* they give somebody there vote and a Benefactive microscene emerges. There has been a semantic move to the power Benefactive prompted by the lexical item *polls* in:

pBen microscene 97 the polls should not go ahead if *people (Agt=pBen) in their heartlands could not VOTE (132) [for their candidate] (Obj).*

The issue here, what is being foregrounded, is that being able to *vote* is a right of the people. By voting a person has a say in who is voted in, has *voting power* so to speak.

The semantic representation is:

want [----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] {Ben→pBen}

power Benefactive predicator 99 WANTED (77) FOR {ASW0005T}

The Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs online dictionary definition for *want for* reads:

if someone does not want for anything, they have everything they need in order to have a satisfactory life. Examples: *As a child, I wanted for nothing. I made sure that they should never want for anything.*

composing Benefactive microscenes. However, this does not appear to be the point of departure for *wanted for* in

pBen microscene 98 Man (Obj) [is] WANTED (77) FOR student's murder
(Obj) [by the police] (Agt=qpBen-del) found dead

The Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary entry for *want* reads

to desire a particular thing or plan of action. *I want some chocolate.*

and is Experiential. This also does not satisfy as the basic sense. It occurs to me rather that the predicator in **Microscene 99** is BE WANTED, the predication revolving around the adjective *wanted* and not the passive form of the phrasal verb *want for*. The Cambridge online learner's dictionary definition for *wanted* as an *adjective* reads:

If someone is wanted, the police think they have committed a serious crime and are trying to find them. Example: *He is wanted for murder.*

where a party²⁷ is wanted by the police, army, or other authority, under the suspicion of having committed a crime, or possessing valuable information about a crime, whether innocent or not. In **Microscene 99** the man accounts for the Object semantic role; the police account for the Agent and *quasi*-power Benefactive, as it is not known if they

²⁷ By *party* I mean a 'person', a 'group', or an 'institution' – which could be a political party.

will be successful in putting him behind bars. This coreferential role is deleted in this passive microscene. The *for* invites a second Object role, the man is wanted for something – the murder of the student. The semantic representation is:

be wanted for [----- *Agt, *qpBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=qpBen-del] {qpBen}

power Benefactive predicator 100 WIN (22) {ASW0002T}

When somebody wins a game, or, competition, they are the Benefactors, however, if they win an election, they are winning a position of power and the microscene moves to the power Benefactive subdomain. In

pBen microscene 99 However, *Mr Howard* (Agt=pBen-del) immediately went on to insist he was "working very hard to **WIN (22)** this election (Obj)

there is no Agent, this is a process, whereby the Labour party, in the power Benefactive role, wins, that is gains a position of power. *Win* has metaphorised from the Benefactive domain to the power Benefactive subdomain, taking an “*intra-domain*” move (cf. 2.12.), i.e. visualising this displacement within Cook’s matrix model (1989), *win* has taken a vertical move within the Benefactive domain. *Win* comprises a Process, but in this case the whole scene is taken into consideration, the intentional *working hard* makes it Agentive. The microscene is introduced by an infinitive, and the dual role *Agt=pBen* marked as deleted. The semantic representation revealing the intra-domain character is:-

win [----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] {Ben→pBen}

The presence of different classes of semantic displacements logged at the side of each semantic configuration allows a division of the power Benefactive predicators into categories according to their basic sense. The concordance lines for the

CHAPTER 5

DISCUSSION OF THE RESULTS AND CONCLUSIONS

This final chapter sets out the results of the analysis and discusses them, drawing conclusions, and then putting forward suggestions for future research.

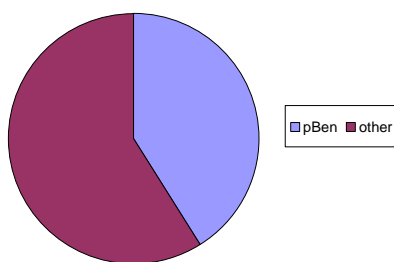
5.1. Results of the Analysis

The WordSmith 4 Concord tool was used to annotate the power Benefactive predicator concordance lines for basic senses, according to dictionary definitions, in the set column. The data was sorted by *set* in order to group the power Benefactive predicators, facilitating the calculation of percentages of each type of sense shift, if any. The concordance file was then saved as an Excel file to calculate the statistics of the data, that is count the items in each group and produce graphs. The predicators with the basic sense of power Benefactive, including the two qualities pBen_{neg} and quasi-pBen, have not displaced, all the others “are metaphorical or extended uses of pre-existing words” in Knowles & Moon’s terms (2006, p. 4), or, “extended meanings” in Sandywell’s terms (1996, p. 142). The following section shows how the 100 randomly selected predicators fall into categories.

5.1.1. Tables according to the basic sense of the predicators.

Of the 100 power Benefactive microscenes analysed, the results showed that forty-one (41%) encompass basically power Benefactive predicators, the other fifty-nine (59%) encompass metaphors from other semantic domains. **Graph 1** shows the proportion 41% power Benefactive predicators to 59% power Benefactive metaphors.

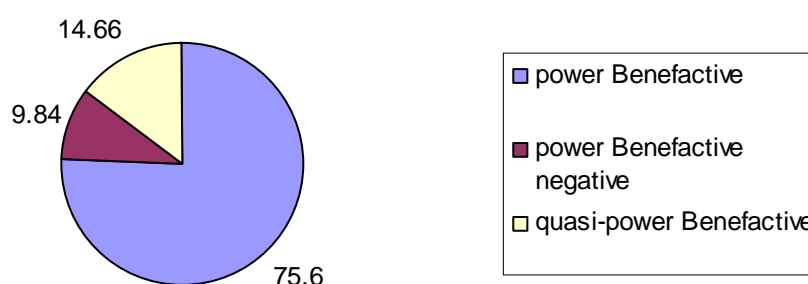
basic sense of 100 predicators



Graph 1: Displaying 41% basically pBen predicators to 59% from other semantic domains.

The group of 41 basically power Benefactive predicators is divided into three qualities: thirty-one (75.6%) are power Benefactive [positive], six (14.6%) are quasi-power Benefactive predicators and four (9.8%) are pBen_{neg} as represented in **Graph 2** based on **Tables 21, 22** and **23** below. They are all power Benefactive despite having varying qualities. The graph shows the percentage for each quality in the total of 41 occurrences.

pBen qualities



Graph 2: Display of percentages of the three qualities of the power Benefactive

In the tables below the power Benefactive predicators are in alphabetical order and the source text (**Appendix 1**) logged in the centre column.

1	ABDUCT (172)	ASW0009T	pBen
2	ABOLISH (35)	ASW0002T	pBen
3	ARREST (232)	ASW0013B	pBen
4	ASSASSINATE (173)	ASW0010T	pBen
5	[BE] (73) AN INTERNATIONAL MONITOR	ASW0004T	pBen
6	[BE] (30) IN CHARGE	ASW0002T	pBen
7	[BE] (157) RESPONSIBLE	ASW0008T	pBen
8	[BE] (334) REVENGE	ASW0016B	pBen
9	[BE] (76) UNDER HOUSE ARREST	ASW0004T	pBen
10	CAPTURE (443)	ASW0020B	pBen
11	CONDUCT (126)	ASW0007T	pBen
12	CONVICT (303)	ASW0015B	pBen
13	DEMAND (435)	ASW0020B	pBen
14	ELECT (201)	ASW0011B	pBen
15	FORCE (117)	ASW0007T	pBen
16	FREE (254)	ASW0013B	pBen
17	HEAD (92)	ASW0006T	pBen
18	HUMILIATE (292)	ASW0015B	pBen
19	INSIST (99) ON	ASW0006T	pBen
20	JUDGE (339)	ASW0016B	pBen
21	PRESIDE (390) OVER	ASW0018B	pBen
22	PREVENT (81)	ASW0006T	pBen
23	PUNISH (242)	ASW0013B	pBen
24	RELEASE (229)	ASW0013B	pBen
25	SHOOT (121) DOWN	ASW0007T	pBen
26	STAND (2) UP FOR	ASW0012B	pBen
27	SUCCEED (203)	ASW0011B	pBen
28	TAKE (394) OVER	ASW0019B	pBen
29	TAX (7)	ASW0001T	pBen
30	THWART (406)	ASW0019B	pBen
31	VETO (84)	ASW0006T	pBen
		pBen Count	31

Table 21: List of basically power Benefactive predicates

Table 22 lays out predicates emerging in microscenes where there is

	predicator		basic sense
32	BOYCOTT (63)	ASW0004T	qpBen
33	CONFRONT (324)	ASW0016B	qpBen
34	FIGHT (75)	ASW0004T	qpBen
35	SHOOT (329)	ASW0016B	qpBen
36	THREATEN (53)	ASW0003T	qpBen
37	WANTED (77) FOR	ASW0005T	qpBen
		qpBen Count	6

Table 22: quasi-power Benefactive predictors
 competition for power and the final outcome of the power relationship is unknown. The association is labelled *quasi-power Benefactive*. When a subaltern *confronts* a principal then he is challenging the dominator, struggling for control. *Fighting* for power is also competition for power, and in both cases the outcome could swing either way.

Table 23 lays out the pBen_{neg} predictors representing a microscene where there has been a loss of power, either by a ‘dominator’ exercising their power, for example *curbing* the subaltern’s authority; or a ‘principal’ handing in his notice and *resigning* from a position of authority.

38	CURB (54)	ASW0003T	pBen _{neg}
39	EMASCULATE (153)	ASW0008T	pBen _{neg}
40	REIN (42) IN	ASW0003T	pBen _{neg}
41	RESIGN (105)	ASW0007T	pBen _{neg}
		pBen_{neg} Count	4

Table 23: power Benefactive negative predictors

The other fifty-nine (59) power Benefactive predictors are metaphors; they have taken a semantic move lending themselves to the power Benefactive meaning. The meaning extension offers a new sense, where the intended sense is construed by considering the microscene wherein the predictor occurs.

The following tables divide the metaphors into their basic senses. Seventeen (17) from the Experiential; sixteen (16) are from the Basic semantic domain; Fifteen (15) occurrences originate in the Locative domain, ten (10) from the Benefactive, of which three (3), *fail*, *lose* and *quit* are Benefactive negative, while there is one (1) from the Holistic, They are set out in alphabetical order in **Tables 24 to 28**, and visually represented in **Graph 3**.

The majority of the metaphors – 17% - are pseudo-Experiential predictors, meaning their basic sense is Experiential. For example in the case of *ask*, if a person asks a question this is a cognitive activity and classified as Experiential. However, if the

President asks for a job to be carried out, it is considered an order, the President exercising his authority and generating a power Benefactive microscene. *Ask* has displaced from the Experiential semantic domain to the power Benefactive, becoming a power Benefactive metaphor. The other pseudo-Experiential predicators from my data accompany *ask* in the table below.

42	ASK (365)	ASW0018B	Exp
43	CARRY (129) OUT	ASW0007T	Exp
44	DEAL (6) WITH	ASW0001T	Exp
45	DECIDE (87)	ASW0006T	Exp
46	DECLARE (371)	ASW0018B	Exp
47	DENY (239)	ASW0013B	Exp
48	EXPRESS (374)	ASW0018B	Exp
49	INTERVIEW (335)	ASW0016B	Exp
50	MOVE (71) TOWARDS	ASW0004T	Exp
51	NEGOTIATE (230)	ASW0013B	Exp
52	PERSUADE (381)	ASW0018B	Exp
53	QUESTIONING (233)	ASW0013B	Exp
54	REFER (400) TO	ASW0019B	Exp
55	REINVIGORATE (198)	ASW0011B	Exp
56	RESPECT (3)	ASW0001T	Exp
57	URGE (101)	ASW0006T	Exp
58	VOICE (359)	ASW0017B	Exp
		Exp Count	17

Table 24: Seventeen (17) power Benefactive metaphors, from their basic sense of *Experiential*

The next group, number wise, are those from the Basic semantic domain, 16%, just 1% less than from the Experiential domain. *Build*, for example, is a Basic predicator, however, when a politician is building a mandate the new sense is one of power Benefactive. *Build* displaces from the Basic to the power Benefactive subdomain, the new sense generating a power Benefactive microscene.

59	ACT (245)	ASW0013B	Basic
60	[BE] (347) a "DIVISION of work	ASW0018B	Basic
61	[BE] (124) REAL	ASW0007T	Basic
62	[BE] (250) UNSUSTAINABLE	ASW0013B	Basic
63	BEGIN (420)	ASW0019B	Basic
64	BUILD (72)	ASW0004T	Basic
65	CARRY (19) ON	ASW0002T	Basic
66	DEVELOP (188)	ASW0011B	Basic

67	FIRE (64)	ASW0004T	Basic
68	FREEZE (437)	ASW0020B	Basic
69	GET (193) BACK INTO	ASW0011B	Basic
70	LEAD (133) TO	ASW0007T	Basic
71	REPRESENT (244)	ASW0013B	Basic
72	SHUT (247) DOWN	ASW0013B	Basic
73	STOP (177)	ASW0010T	Basic
74	STRENGTHEN (271)	ASW0014B	Basic
		Basic Count	16

Table 25: Sixteen (16) power Benefactive metaphors have displaced from the *Basic* semantic domain

The next group, again just 1% behind in number, with 15 occurrences out of 100 is the Locative group. When an individual jumps up, for example, the microscene is Locative. However, when an individual jumps, intent on hurting another, s/he is at that moment the dominator in the microscene, the dominated being momentarily powerless. There has been a semantic displacement from the Locative to the power Benefactive. The list of Locative predicators becoming power Benefactive metaphors is set out in **Table 26**.

75	APPEAR (452)	ASW0020B	Loc
76	[BE] (56) UNDER	ASW0003T	Loc
77	COME (43)	ASW0003T	Loc
78	ENSHRINE (94)	ASW0006T	Loc
79	FLY (363)	ASW0018B	Loc
80	JUMP (311)	ASW0015B	Loc
81	KNEEL (122)	ASW0007T	Loc
82	LEAVE (364)	ASW0018	Loc
83	MANOEUVRE (219)	ASW0012B	Loc
84	MOVE (52)	ASW0003T	Loc
85	REMAIN (423)	ASW0019B	Loc
86	SEND (300)	ASW0015B	Loc
87	STAND (208) ASIDE	ASW0012B	Loc
88	TAKE (310) BACK	ASW0015B	Loc
89	TRANSFER (148)	ASW0008T	Loc
		Loc Count	15

Table 26: Fifteen (15) basic sense *Locative* predicators

Pseudo-Benefactive predicators make up a slightly smaller set of 10 occurrences. The basically Benefactive predicators divide into two qualities, seven (7) of positive polarity and three (3) negative. When an individual loses a book, for example, the microscene is

Benefactive negative; an example of the opposite polarity would be to *win*. When the government lose control of their borders, then the process is of negative polarity and the microscene considered $pBen_{neg}$, while if the Leader of the opposition wins the elections, he will take on the position of Prime Minister generating a (positive) power Benefactive microscene. The Benefactive predicators listed in Table 27 all lend themselves to the power Benefactive subdomain.

90	FAIL (376)	ASW0018B	Ben_{neg}
91	LOSE (12)	ASW0001T	Ben_{neg}
92	QUIT (20)	ASW0002T	Ben_{neg}
		Ben_{neg} Count	3
93	ACHIEVE (23)	ASW0002T	Ben
94	EQUIP (274)	ASW0014B	Ben
95	HOLD (34)	ASW0002T	Ben
96	HOLD (58) UP	ASW0004T	Ben
97	PROVIDE (288)	ASW0014B	Ben
98	VOTE (132)	ASW0007T	Ben
99	WIN (22)	ASW0002T	Ben
		Ben Count	7

Table 27: Ten (10) power Benefactive metaphors which have displaced from their basic sense of *Benefactive*, three (3) are of negative quality.

The final predicator is Holistic in its basic sense (**Table 28**), and could be classified as Holistic negative as a ‘whole’ is being taken apart. *Join* on the other hand would be the opposite polarity, an individual becoming part of a group. *Dismantle* has displaced from the Holistic to the power Benefactive subdomain in **pBen Microscene**

35:

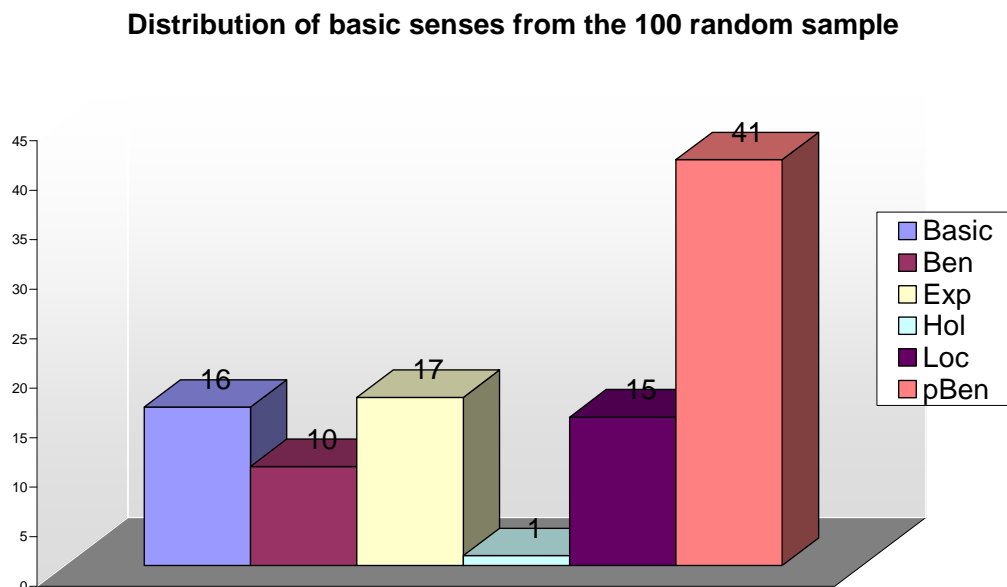
Mr Blair, however, is understood [governing body] (Agt-del) to favour the option of **DISMANTLING** (49) *Mr Brown's* ($pBen_{neg}$) power base (Obj).

when a power base is dismantled, representing a loss of control.

100	DISMANTLE (49)	ASW0003T	Hol
		Hol Count	1

Table 28: The power Benefactive metaphor from the basic sense of *Holistic*

Graph 3 shows the number of predicators from various basic senses which lend themselves to the power Benefactive semantic subdomain.



Graph 3: Proportion of basic senses giving rise to power Benefactive predicators

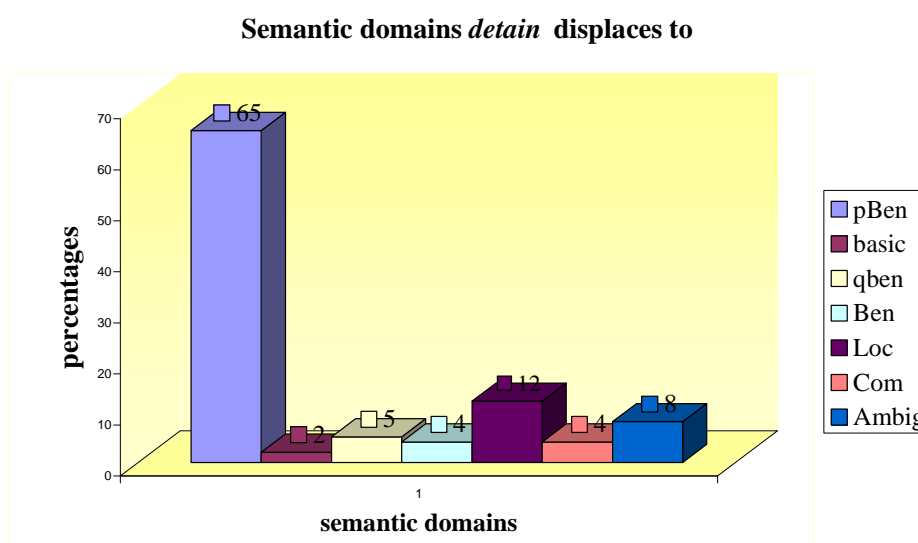
The larger proportion of power Benefactive predicators stands out, the Experiential, Basic and Locative are fairly evenly distributed. Unlike Oliveira's (1999) and Rocha's (2003) research whose findings pointed out the Locative semantic domain as the main MATRIX for semantic moves in this research, in comparison, there has been an increase in the proportion of Experiential predicators. This is understandable as the Nicolacópulos *et al* considers Experiential microscenes where an individual is, for example, *persuading*, *coercing*, *convincing*, and the other party is influenced into changing their behaviour or their mind as generating a power Benefactive microscene. The Experiential predicator becomes a power Benefactive metaphor.

The ensuing section is a summary of the pseudo-power Benefactive predicators generated by *detain* a basically power Benefactive predicator which came to light in the 2003 pilot study. The procedure was described above.

5.2. The pseudo-power Benefactive based on *detain* (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2006)

Detain, a basically power Benefactive predicator, reveals itself to be strongly polysemic, offering itself to senses in at least five other semantic domains.

Graph 4 shows in a sample of 100 concordance lines that *detain* displaces 2% of the



Graph 4: The level of polysemy of *detain*

time to the Basic Semantic domain, 5% to the quasi-power Benefactive, 4% to the Benefactive, 12% to the Locative, 4% to the Comitative, the 8% remaining are ambiguous as there is insufficient co-text to determine the context and the sense. Apart from the 8% impossible to categorise, this predicator did show the Locative to be the semantic domain most displaced towards when implementing the Nicolacópulos *et al* 2005 model (Steele Weickert, 2005; Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a, 2005b).

The following section answers the research questions leading to the conclusions and finalizing with some suggestions for future research.

5.3. The research questions

1. Is it possible to register power at the level of the microscene (clause as representation in context)? If so
2. Is there evidence to show power issues could be expressed linguistically by a case grammar model?
3. What lexicogrammatical items constitute power microscenes?
 - a. Can nouns or adjectives constitute power microscenes?
4. Can power microscenes be subdivided into specific groups?

This thesis proposes the *power Benefactive* to register marks of power linguistically. The application of the Nicolacópulos *et al* model (**encompassing the power Benefactive refinement**) to a corpus of hard news reports implemented the new metalinguistic category, the **power Benefactive**, and was *then* able to identify power Benefactive predicators and microscenes. This new concept has made it possible to identify power at the level of the microscene. The review of the notion of literature clarified ideas on the ‘dominator’ / ‘principal’ and the ‘dominated’ / ‘subaltern’ facilitating the recognition of power Benefactive roles in the microscenes, and allowing their registration as power Benefactive participants, and identifying linguistic marks of power in the form of power Benefactive predicators.

From the research I conclude that in any relationship between parties there is a ‘principal’ / ‘dominator’ and a ‘subaltern’ / ‘dominated’, and this power distribution may sway from one interactant to another according to the context of situation.

According to Scott (2001)

Hegel saw power relations as occurring between a ‘master’ and a ‘slave’, but this implies a far too one-sided view of power. The terms ‘principal’ and ‘subaltern’ allow for more variation in the forms taken by asymmetrical power relations. The term ‘subaltern’ derives from Gramsci’s (1926-37: 52) description of subordinate classes. (ibid, p. 158).

Janks and Ivanic (1996) talked about an immigrant worker who is the subaltern at work and is the topdog, principal, in his own home. A person may be in a role of relative power in one set of circumstances and at a completely different rank in another. This idea surfaced at various times throughout the thesis, giving rise to the power cline on page 47. As “individuals are the vehicle of power, not its point of application” (Foucault, 1980, p. 98, apud Talbot et al, 2003, p. 2), the participants /semantic roles accounting for Agent and power Benefactive can give an indication of the ‘dominators’ / ‘principals’ and the ‘dominated’ / ‘subalterns’.

Recognising the power issues taking place in a microscene, by considering the context, allows the allocation of linguistic categories. The Nicolacópulos *et al* approach offers categories to register the ‘dominator’ and ‘dominated’, i.e. the participants or semantic roles in the microscene. The power Benefactive predicators linguistically express the content of the relationship between the participants, while implementing the concepts of power Benefactive negative and quasi-power Benefactive allows further logging of the various qualities of the power relationship.

In **Appendix 1** the referential lexical items are underlined, any (verb-) predicators recognised as power lexical items are candidates for power Benefactive predicators. There is a list of power lexical items on page 66 above, forming a cohesive chain in newsreport **ASW0001T**, for example: *borders, taxes, human rights*, etc. A (verb-)predicator is most often the pivot of a predication; however, there are a substantial number of occurrences incorporating noun phrases and adjectives pivoted around the lemma ‘BE’ (cf. 3.2.2.2.3., p.126 above).

The review of literature brought some contradicting ideas. Chafe takes the position that “it is the verb that dictates the presence and character of the noun, rather than vice versa” (1970, p. 97), recognising that “essentially the opposite position is

taken in Chomsky 1965 and Fillmore 1968” (ibid, p. footnote). As just stated there are predications pivoted around adjectives and noun phrases in the corpus, and not only (verb-)predicators. My conclusion is that *verbs*, *nouns* or *adjectives* may dictate the ‘character’, or the semantic association, of the microscene.

Chafe also appears to be contradictory in his views on context. At one time he states: “A noun is like a planet whose internal modifications affect it alone, and not the solar system as whole” (1970, p. 97-98). On another occasion he says:

It remains possible for us to focus on the semantic structures which underlie sentences, so long as we keep in mind that this focus is artificially narrow and that many things will be explainable only when we extend our view beyond it (Chafe, ibid, p. 96).

assuming that by extending our view beyond the microscene he means involving the context, context and intertextual features in the interpretation of the intended sense.

The analyses showed the microscene may be subdivided into various groups, initially those incorporating predicators in their basic sense, others incorporating metaphors. There are eight semantic domains providing the opportunity of eight starting points for a semantic move, to a possible seven other semantic domains, the subdomains and various qualities could be added to the 8 and 7. The divisions according to *semantic representations* follow patterns as can be seen in **Appendix 7**. This research is on the power Benefactive, and in 100 randomly selected predicators their microscenes showed predominant semantic representations:

[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] - 21 occurrences, e.g.: abduct, capture, judge

[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen] - 13 occurrences, e.g.: demand, humiliate, thwart,

[----- pBen, Objs] - 8 occurrences, e.g.: head, hold, preside over,

[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del] - 6 occurrences, e.g.: deny, force, prevent

[----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del] - 5 occurrences, e.g.: elect, equip, transfer.

Restating the answers to the research questions:

1. It is possible to represent power at the level of the microscene by means of the power Benefactive. This is illustrated by the analysis of 100 microscenes, and the registration of 100 randomly selected power Benefactive predicators.
2. The present research provides evidence that power issues could be expressed linguistically by an *extended* case grammar model. The models of the 1970s and 1980s were not so efficient as, unlike the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach, they made little of the context, referring to the context but not *explicitly* applying it during analysis.
3. Lexicogrammatical items which are power lexical items, that is, which belong to a lexical chain of power issues, constitute power microscenes when they are predicators. In general power predicators such as *force*, *control*, *sentence* to life imprisonment generate power microscenes. This family of predicators are significantly prolific; in 20 newsreports 455 power Benefactive microscenes emerged. Some of these, supported by the lemma BE, were pivoted around adjectives and nouns.
4. Power microscenes can be subdivided into specific groups, those portraying being '*in-power*', '*not-in-power*', and '*quasi-power*', along with the quality of '*losing power*', '*surrendering power*', or '*having power removed*', which portray the quality of power Benefactive negative.

5.4. Conclusions

This research brings out the importance of the concept of the *power Benefactive*, a semantic association. Case grammar started off in the 1960s as a way of representing the deep structure of sentences. Today that has been remodelled and refined arriving at the state-of-the-art version of the semantic-pragmatic Nicolacópulos *et al* approach to study the association of the predicator and participants in their environment in a particular microscene, which is the proposition placed within its **context**. The FUNDAMENTAL difference between previous logical semantics-case grammar models and our model is that the in-text search for power microscenes (where power predicators compose power microscenes) produces the "intended sense" which comprehends the sense effect intended by the speaker. In so doing, this approach

accounts for the similarity between the backgrounded and the foregrounded sense in connection with metaphorical semantic moves (as opposed to homonymy - a special case of polysemy), because metaphors deal with similarities, as do Wittgenstein's (1958) family resemblances. The "similarity" is codified as, e.g., {Loc→pBen} alongside the semantic representation logged in the analysis.

There is a traditional distinction made in lexicology between homonymy and **polysemy**. Both deal with multiple senses of the same phonological word, but polysemy is invoked if the senses are judged to be related [...] polysemous senses are listed under the same lexical entry, while homonymous senses are given separate entries (Saeed, 1997, p. 64, author's bold).

The power Benefactive, quasi-power Benefactive *microscene*; the power Benefactive, quasi-power Benefactive *semantic subdomain*; the power Benefactive, the quasi-power Benefactive *semantic role*; the power Benefactive, the quasi-power Benefactive *predicators* and pseudo-[domain] *predicators*, the latter being polysemous metaphors, have been talked about in this thesis. From the beginning of the text, a proposal was made for a new *metalinguistic category*, the **power Benefactive subdomain**, as a refinement to the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach to semantic-pragmatic analysis. My conclusion is that the *power Benefactive* is a *relationship*, the *what's happening in the world* in a text, when the context involves a power issue. The following figure lays out this relationship in an environment, that is, a specific context wherein the microscene emerges.

The microscene gives rise to a semantic representation dependent on the *relationship* between the verb, or predicator, and its participants, or semantic roles, in a particular context, hence Oliveira's concept that a microscene is the *proposition* in **context** (1999).

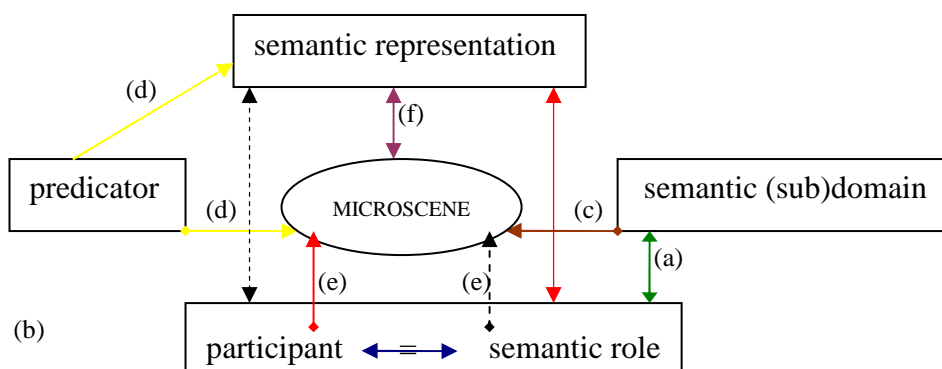


Figure 12: Interconnections between *the MICROSCENE* and the representation of meaning

Figure 12 is a visual representation of the multi-directionality of the interrelationships among the components of the representation of reality at, in Halliday's (2004) terms, the Ideational level of text. The *microscene* is the central element, bearing in mind that the microscene embodies the *context*, where

(a) there is a dialectical relationship between the semantic (sub)domain of the microscene and the semantic role/ participant of the differential semantic/participant role. The differential role is power Benefactive when the semantic domain of the microscene is power Benefactive, the other semantic roles / participants are Object and/or Agent. When the association among the elements of **Figure 12** is Locative, then the semantic domain for the microscene will be Locative, and the differential semantic role Locative, likewise for the other semantic relationships. **Figure 12**, subsequently, applies for any type of microscene, although at the present moment my focus is the power Benefactive microscene.

(b) the *participants* or *semantic roles* compose the semantic representation; any role may be a dual role, for example, Agent=power Benefactive, when there is coreferentiality. The lexical item representing the participant / semantic role takes on a

certain value. As Oliveira says “[e]ach word is not only a word but a value inserted in the discursive web determined by its relationship with the other words” (2003, p. 28, my translation).

(c) a *microscene* belongs to a specific *semantic (sub)domain*,

(d) for each *microscene* there is a single *predicator*,

(e) a lexical item in a *microscene* accounts for a corresponding *semantic role / participant* in the semantic representation

(f) a *microscene* has a specific *semantic representation*

The term *power Benefactive* is used as an umbrella term referring to *the power Benefactive*, and its other qualities *the quasi-power Benefactive*, or, *the power Benefactive_{neg.}* The term *power Benefactive predicator*, is used for a power Benefactive predicator in its basic sense in contrast to a *power Benefactive metaphor*, which is a power Benefactive predicator that has metaphorised, i.e. displaced from another semantic domain towards the power Benefactive, becoming a *polysemous metaphor* and at the same time a pseudo-[domain] predicator. A pseudo-Locative being a predicator that is basically Locative and has lent itself to another semantic domain.

In this case the *semantic association* tying the elements together determines all the other factors, so in **Figure 12** when the *microscene* is one of a power issue, the associative concept is the power Benefactive relationship. If the context, or the scene (Fillmore, 1977), were *Prince Charles playing polo*, one might anticipate for example,

Microscene 1 (cf. p. 65):

Prince Charles has again fallen from his horse

where the *context* would be reflected *locatively*. On the other hand

Microscene 2 (cf. 2.6.):

Kandahar will eventually fall

could be a Locative microscene, but owing to the political context becomes *power Benefactive*. The underlined participants are power lexical items, and candidates for the power Benefactive role. Kandahar, a city in Afghanistan, because it was undergoing political pressure at that time of writing, and Prince Charles because he is next in line for the Monarchy, although **Microscene 1** is not power Benefactive because the context is not a power issue. On the other hand Kandahar could be considered a candidate for the Locative, but was selected as a power lexical item during an identification process for power lexical chains in my corpus of newsreports on ‘war’. The CONTEXT swings the meaning of a microscene into a particular relationship. In **Figure 12**, the power Benefactive relationship (emerging in all of the one hundred microscenes analysed incorporating the randomly selected power Benefactive predicators) means there will be:

- i) at least a *power Benefactive* semantic role, and *possibly* an Agent and / or one or more Object semantic roles in the semantic representation.
- ii) *the microscene* will be placed as *power Benefactive*
- iii) and will present a *power Benefactive* predicator, or, *power Benefactive* metaphor.
- iv) that is, both the microscene and the predicator will belong to the *power Benefactive* semantic subdomain.

In the same way that the semantic roles have no fixed order, moving around like parts of “a mobile” Cook, 1979, p. 14), I conclude that the associations in the rectangular boxes of **Figure 12** are non-orderly; i.e. there is no specific chronological order of attribution, rather the attribution is **simultaneous** once the *context*, is determined.

On the subject of context Miller & Leacock (2000) say they

think that it is clear, however, that an important part of each word meaning is a contextual representation - a representation of the contexts in which a word form can be used to express that particular meaning [... and suggest that if it were feasible to] characterize what a contextual representation should look like [... it

might be possible to come up with an] account of the lexical aspects of sentence processing (p.160).

This research has perhaps come close to providing means for such a characterisation of the notion of power. There are differing power relations within all social systems throughout the world (Fairclough, 1992). Variations range from the layman or child, to a professor, manager, royalty, a bishop and even forces and powers beyond our mundane reality. The intensity of personal power depends on who is interacting with whom. Whenever there are two beings communicating a power relation arises, a manifestation of or struggle for dominance. The link between people and society is envisaged by means of language through social interaction. Fairclough (1989, 1992) discusses at length the transparency of power relations within the dialectic relationship between language and society in social practice, yet not withholding the variance between cultures. Different statuses of power arise among family, friends, colleagues, within school, the neighbourhood, the workplace, be it a small company or a multi-national (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos *et al*, 2005a, 2005b). All these stem from a hierarchical division at an interpersonal level right up into more explicit institutional, government and religious ladders, and reflected, in the prototype for a power cline on page 60 above.

Closing this thesis the final section offers some suggestions for future research.

5.5. Suggestions for future research

There is currently other research under way in our department, PGI-UFSC. The most recent public presentation using the UFSC 1995 model (Nicolacópulos *et al*, 1995) is Mara Bonfanti's (2006) MA defence entitled: *Benefactive microscenes in the context of news reports*, the first in the area of semantic-pragmatic analysis conducted in

English, from the Post-Graduate English department (PGI, UFSC). She mentioned how the power Benefactive relationship (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a, 2005b) recognised power relationships in microscenes from her corpus. The Nicolacópulos et al model could be applied to Bonfanti's data to further investigate linguistic marks of power.

Julissa Silva (unpublished) is finishing her MA in the same area, her research is on Experiential movements, she also found power Benefactive relationships in her data. Vilmar de Souza (unpublished) who is involved in the study of Padre Cicero's discourse, is also interested in applying the power Benefactive relationship to his data. Miquéias Rodrigues' analysis in research on the Locative (unpublished) perceived a significant percentage of power Benefactive relationships represented by the pseudo-Locative. These researchers belong to the PGI graduate program in English language and literature.

WordSmith 4 software (Scott, 2004) assisted in the documentation of quantitative and qualitative data on types of *linguistic marks of power* (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2005a, 2005b), enabling the listing of semantic roles and semantic representations facilitating the identification of *Agents* and *power Benefactive* participants subsequently allowing the listing of "principals" (Scott, 2001, p. 2) or 'dominators' and *Object* participants for listing the "subalterns" (ibid) or 'the dominated'. This additional research showed that when the Agent is not the power Benefactive, the Agent participant is a case candidate for the power Benefactive. Therefore, the journalistic text in the corpus, compiled and tagged for "*power Benefactive microscenes*" (ibid) might provide for a Critical Discourse Study on "the 'principal' and the 'subaltern' [...] in asymmetrical power relations" (Scott, 2001, p. 2).

Berber Sardinha's (2007a, 2007b) research (PUC, São Paulo) fertilised my understanding that a statistical reference to the percentages of power Benefactive predicators in comparison to power Benefactive metaphors gives an indication to the probability of pBen metaphors appearing in a certain type of corpus. The term *type of corpus* is reaching out to Discourse analysis once more, and Genre. A paper accepted for SIGET (Steele Weickert & Nicolacópulos, 2007) for the investigation of a Harry Potter novel using the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach was a proposal to see how the *power Benefactive* concept behaved in application to literary text. This is a different genre to newsreports, notwithstanding that *Harry Potter* novels are widely read, and therefore a valid source of real language in use. A significant number of readers worldwide have access to this 'Children's' literature. Lincoln Fernandes'²⁹ (unpublished, 2006) research on the *Brazilian Practices of Translating Names in Children's Fantasy Literature*, a corpus based study, includes parallel corpora and part of his corpus is *Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone*. The Nicolacópulos *et al* approach could be employed to analyse *source* and *target* texts, in parallel corpora, offering statistical results to compare one corpus to another, for concordances in meaning. *Meaning* being represented by *semantic representations* according to the Nicolacópulos *et al* model.

Research could be conducted on verb and noun patterns in the production of power Benefactive corpora based on Hunston's pattern research, especially as patterns have emerged, both in semantic moves and semantic representations. The patterns of

²⁹ Fernandes also defended his doctoral thesis (2004) on Translation Studies, one of the areas of research at PPGI.

facets could be introduced into a database, which functions on the basis of relationships among the entities, and facilitates the retrieval of information from large databases.

Dr. Howard Somers, from Manchester University, UK, worked on a computer programme (Somers & Johnson, 1979) for the registering of semantic roles. Somers (personal communication, 2006) insists that this is old data, but may be of use as a starting point towards future software for automatic retrieval of power Benefactive predicators and metaphors. Somers (1982) is quoted in Artificial Intelligence research (Lakemeyer & Nebel, 2003, p. 202), along with Case Grammar (ibid, p. 71) suggesting that the Nicolacópulos *et al* model might be applied in Artificial Intelligence research.

The Nicolacópulos *et al model* might be of use in future research towards a graphic design of a power cline, where the axis could be superimposed on Meurer's and Giddens theoretical perspectives on the structure of society. The power issues possibly being classified according to allocative and authoritative resources, rules and regulations.

Dr. Ronice Müller de Quadros (personal communication, 19th October, 2007) said there has been some research on *sign language* done on the use of metaphors, for example the representation in sign language of *worms going across the stomach* meaning *really hungry / starving*. She was unaware of any research on the polysemous metaphor, and led me to believe such a study would be of interest to the area. A slide projected question regarding sign language was "Are verbs categorised lexically or can they change classification in different contexts" (ibid, my translation), is answered positively in my thesis. The Nicolacópulos *et al* model identifies the polysemous metaphor and future research might open up semantic-pragmatic research on *sign language*.

There are other possible applications to be made, in teaching language, second language, foreign language; lexicography, lexicography and dictionary making. In fact traditional Case Grammar is being implemented by Fearghail at the University of Wuppertal, Germany, to create an Irish verb lexicon.

The *power Benefactive* has been put forward in this thesis as a valuable concept along with my suggestions for the possible application of the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach in various fields of research. The **power Benefactive** as the state of the art of the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach is a proposal to make a contribution to the following items listed by Halliday when he says linguistics is likely to be useful

to understand the nature and functions of language [...] to understand what all languages have in common (i.e. what are the properties of language as such), and what may differ from one language to another; to understand how languages evolve through time; to help people learn their mother tongue: reading and writing, language in school subjects, etc.; [...] to help people learn foreign languages; to help train translators and interpreters; to write reference works (dictionaries, grammars, etc.) for any language; to understand the relationship between language and the brain; [...] to design computer software that will produce and understand text, and translate between languages (Halliday, 1994, p. xxix-xxx).

This thesis takes on analysis of power from a semantic-pragmatic point of view, incorporating Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA), as Wodak says: “Critical discourse analysis is an instrument whose purpose is precisely to expose veiled power structures” (Wodak, 1996, p. 16). The Nicolacópulos *et al* approach may be an appropriate tool to unveil and catalogue power structures, via marks of power registered linguistically. In his article ‘The importance of Corpus linguistics (CL) to understanding the nature of language’ Chafe tries to “articulate some ideas about how corpora further the ultimate goal of understanding the nature of language” (1992, p. 80). The support from Corpus Linguistics assists in the contemplation of texts. Systemic Functional Linguistics, CDA, CL, along with the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach are all interconnected and the analyses converge.

Application of the Nicolacópulos *et al* approach as a tool for semantic-pragmatic analysis has proved valuable for the demonstration of metaphorisation, revealing that a significant percentage of predicators are polysemous metaphors. The thesis found a very high density of power scenes which composed power microscenes of ‘*in-power*’, ‘*not-in-power*’ and ‘*quasi-power*’ in journalistic discourse, more specifically *newsreports*. These emerged (i) in their basic sense and (ii) as metaphors, assuming a new sense.

The focus of this research was to demonstrate the value of the **power Benefactive** as a metalinguistic category to *identify and register linguistic marks of power* in the representation of microscenes *in* journalistic text. I trust I have come close to doing so.

“These thoughtful lines are taken from a poem by Japanese poet, Mitsuo Aida” (Gay, 2006)

*Because there are employees,
There can be company presidents;
Because there are juniors,
There can be seniors;
Because there are students,
There can be teachers.
Because there are people who buy,
Things can be sold;
Because there are people who sell;
Things can be bought.
And because there are people who read my clumsy work,
I can become a writer.*

(Monday December the 4th, no page number)

REFERENCES

- Åkerman, M. (2005). What does 'natural capital' do? The role of metaphor in economic understanding of the environment. In J. Foster & S. Gough (Eds.), *Learning, natural capital and sustainable development: Options for an uncertain world* (pp. 33-48). Oxford: Routledge (UK).
- Allen, A. (1999). *The power of feminist theory: Domination, resistance, solidarity*. Boulder, CO: Westview Press.
- Anderson, J. M. (1971). *The Grammar of Case. Towards a localistic theory*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- _____ (1976). *The Grammar of Case. Towards a localistic theory*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- _____ (1997). *A notional theory of syntactic categories*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Anselmi, D., & Haberlandt, K. (1992). Language: A mirror of mind. In R. Morelli (Ed.), *Minds, brains, and computers: Perspectives in cognitive science and Artificial Intelligence minds, brains, and computers* (pp. 36-81). Bristol: Intellect Books.
- Ashley, K., & Sheingorn, P. (1999). *Writing faith: Text, sign, and history in the miracles of Sainte Foy*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Austin, J. L. (1961). *How to do things with words*. London: OUP.
- Bach, E., & Harms, R. T. (1968). *Universals in Linguistic theory*. New York/London: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.
- Bachrach, P., & Baratz, M. S. (1970). *Power and poverty: Theory and practice*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Barnbrook, G. (2005). *A sense of belonging*. Paper presented at the Postgraduate and Research Methods Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Bates, F. L. (1970). Power behavior and decentralization. In M. N. Zald (Ed.), *Power in organizations*. Nashville, Tennessee.: Vanderbilt University Press.
- Bathke, E. d. S. (1990). *Transitividade e significado oracional: Contribuição ao estudo da sinonimia*. Unpublished Master dissertation. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- Baxter, J. (2003). *Positioning discourse in gender: A feminist methodology*. Basingstoke: Palgrave MacMillan.
- _____ (2005). *Feminist post-structural discourse*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.

- _____ (2007). *Positioning gender in discourse: A feminist methodology*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Bellei, S. (1999/1). *Disciplina: Estudos de gêneros literários e de cinema*. Florianópolis.
- Berber Sardinha, T. (2007a). *Metáfora*. São Paulo: Parábola.
- _____ (2007b). Metaphor probabilities in corpora. In M. S. Zanotto, L. Cameron & M. Cavalcanti (Eds.), *Confronting metaphor in use: An applied linguistic approach*. Amsterdam/Atlanta, GA: Benjamins.
- Berry, M. (1975). *An introduction to systemic linguistics. 1. Structures and systems*. London: Batsford.
- _____ (1977). *An introduction to systemic linguistics. 2. Levels and links*. London: Batsford.
- _____ (1981). Systemic linguistics and discourse analysis: A multi-layered approach to exchange structure. In M. Coulthard & M. Montgomery (Eds.), *Studies in discourse analysis*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul.
- Biber, D. (1998). *Corpus linguistics: Investigating language structure and use*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Bierstedt, R. (1970). *The social order*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Blackledge, A. (2005). *The men say "they don't need it": Multilingualism, gender and identity in political discourse*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Blake, B. J. (2001). *Case*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Blasko, D. G. (1999). Only the tip of the iceberg: Who understands what about metaphor? *Journal of Pragmatics*, 31, 1675-1683.
- Blommaert, J. (2005). *Discourse*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Bloor, T., & Bloor, M. (1995). *The functional analysis of English*. London: Arnold.
- Borba, F. S. (1987). Gramática de casos – um apresentação geral. In N. M. H. de M (Ed.), *Gramática de casos. Publicação do curso de pós-graduação em lingüística e língua portuguesa. Ano 11 (Vol. 1)*. Arararquara: SériEncontros, UNESP.
- _____ (1996). *Uma gramática de valências para o português*. São Paulo: Editora Ática.
- Bourdieu, P., & Wacquant, L. J. D. (1992). *An invitation to reflexive sociology*. Cambridge: Polity Press.

- Brandão, H. H. N. (1994). *Introdução à análise de discurso*. Campinas, S. P. Brazil: Editora UNICAMP.
- Bréal, M. (1908). *Essai de sémantique: Science des significations* (4th ed.). Paris: Librairie Hachette et Cie.
- Brinton, L. J. (2000). *The structure of modern English*. Amsterdam, Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Browning, D. C. (1982). *Dictionary of quotations and proverbs*. London: Chancellor Press.
- Budach, G. (2005). *Women acquiring institutional power? Gender, discourse and power in French adult literacy centres in Canada*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Budwig, N. (1995). *A Developmental Functionalist approach to language*. Mahwah, New Jersey: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Burri, A. (1993). *Relativismus und kontextualismus*. Amsterdam and Atlanta, GA: Rodopi.
- Burridge, R. A. (2004). *What are the gospels?* Grand Rapids MI: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing.
- Butler, M., & Keith, G. (1999). *Language, power and identity*. Norfolk: Hodder & Stoughton.
- Butt, M. (2006). *Theories of Case*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Button, C., Coulter, J., Lee, J. R. R., & Sharrock, W. (1997). *Computadores, mentes e conduta*. São Paulo: Fundação Editora da UNESP.
- Calbi, M. (2005). *Approximate bodies: Gender and power in early modern drama and anatomy*. London: Routledge.
- Caldas-Coulthard, C. R. (1997). *News as social practice: A study in critical discourse analysis*. Florianópolis: Pós-Graduação em Inglês, UFSC.
- _____ (2005a). *Gender issues in travel advertisements*. Paper presented at the Postgraduate and Research Methods Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- _____ (2005b). *Troubled identities: Getting old and suffering to be young and beautiful*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Cameron, D. (2005) *Meet the Flintstones: Language, gender and evolutionary psychology*. Paper presented at the Postgraduate and Research Methods Seminar, University of Birmingham.

- _____ (1992). *Researching language: Issues of power and method*. London: Routledge.
- Capistrano, M. (1986). *O verbo transitivo não-ativo*. Unpublished Master dissertation. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- Capurro, R., & Hjørland, B. (2003). The concept of information. Vol. 37, chapter 8, pp. 343-411. In B. Cronin (Ed.), *Annual review of information science and technology* (Vol. 37, pp. 343-411.). Medford, NJ: Information Today [accessed 18th May, 2006 from: <http://www.capurro.de/infoconcept.html>].
- Carvalho, M. B. d. (1986). *Uma introdução as gramáticas de casos*. Viçosa: Impr. Univ. da UFV.
- Case, T., 0521014913, I., Press, P. C. U., Blake, A. s. B. J., Paperback, F., Publication Date: Sep 20, et al. (1996). *The Grammar of discourse*. New York & London: Plenum.
- Chafe, W. L. (1970). *Meaning and the structure of language*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- _____ (1992). The importance of corpus linguistics to understanding the nature of language. In J. Svartvik (Ed.), *Directions in corpus linguistics. Proceedings of nobel symposium 82* (pp. 79-97.). Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Chan, S. W. K. (2005). A treebank-based Case role annotation using an attributed string matching. In M. A. Bramer, F. Coenen & T. Allen (Eds.), *Research and development in intelligent systems xxi* (pp. 117-129). New York: Springer.
- Chokri, A. (2005). *BBC monitoring service, western european coverage*. Paper presented at the Global Terror. A debate, University of Aston, Birmingham.
- Clare, J. (1999). *"Art made tongue-tied by authority": Elizabethan and Jacobean dramatic censorship*. Manchester: Manchester University Press.
- Coggeshall, J. M. (1991). Those who surrender are female: Prisoner gender identities as cultural mirror. In P. R. Frese & J. M. Coggeshall (Eds.), *Transcending boundaries: Multi-disciplinary approaches to the study of gender* (pp. 81-96). Westport, CT: Praeger/Greenwood.
- Cohen, I. J. (1989). *Structuration theory: Anthony Giddens and the constitution of social life*. Basingstoke: Macmillan.
- Cole, P. (1975). The synchronic and diachronic status of conversational implicature. In P. Cole & J. L. Morgan (Eds.), *Syntax and semantics* (Vol. 3, pp. 257-258). New York, San Francisco and London: Academic Press.
- Congress, U. S. (1948). *Speculation in commodity markets*. Hearings before the subcommittee of the committee on appropriations, united states senate by united states congress. Senate. Committee on appropriations. Special subcommittee on speculation in commodity markets. Washington, D. C.: Washington, U.S. Govt.

- Conley, J. M., & O'Barr, W. M. (1998). *Just words: Law, language, and power*. Chicago and London: University of Chicago press.
- Cook, W. A. (1979). *Case Grammar: Development of the matrix model (1970-1978)*. Washington, D.C.: Georgetown University Press.
- _____ (1989). *Case Grammar theory*. Washington, D.C.: Georgetown University Press.
- Cotterill, J. (Ed.). (2002). *Language in the legal process*. Basingstoke: Palgrave.
- Coulthard, M. (2002). Whose voice is it? Invented and concealed dialogue in written records of verbal evidence produced by the police. In J. Cotterill (Ed.), *Language in the legal process* (pp. 19-34.). Basingstoke: Palgrave.
- Cruse, D. A. (1973). Some thoughts on agentivity. *Journal of linguistics*, 9, 11-23.
- Crystal, D. (2003). *Dictionary of linguistics and phonetics*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing.
- Dabrowska, E. (1997). *Cognitive semantics and the polish dative*. Berlin New York: Walter de Gruyter.
- Dahl, Ö. (1987). Case Grammar and prototypes. In R. Dirven & G. Radden (Eds.), *Concepts of Case* (pp. 147-161). Tübingen: Gunter Narr.
- Danielsson, P. (2005a). *Research methods in corpus linguistics*. University course. University of Birmingham.
- _____ (2005b). Personal communication. University of Birmingham. (pp. see <http://www.english.bham.ac.uk/who/danielsson.htm>).
- Darwin, C. (1928). *The origin of species*. London, New York: Dent Dutton.
- Davidse, K. (1987). M. A. K. Halliday's functional grammar and the Prague school. In R. Dirven & V. Fried (Eds.), *Functionalism in linguistics*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- de Souza, W. (unpublished). *A critical discourse analysis of the linguistic marks of power in Padre Cícero's political letters*. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- Diderot, M. (1754). *Encyclopédie: Ou dictionnaire raisonné des sciences:Des arts et des métiers /par une société de gens de lettres /mis en ordre*. Paris: Briasson.
- Dietle, R. L., & Micale, M. S. (Eds.). (2000). *Enlightenment, passion, modernity: Historical essays in european thought and culture*. Stanford, Calif: Stanford University Press.
- Dijk, T. A. v. *Text and context of parliamentary debates*.

- Dinneen, F. P. (1968). Linguistics and classic philosophy. In R. O'Brien (Ed.), *Georgetown university round table. Selected papers on languages and linguistics 1961-1965*. Georgetown: Georgetown University Press.
- Donnelly, C. (1994). *Linguistics for writers*. Albany: SUNY Press.
- Dowty, D. R. (1989). On the semantic content of the notion "thematic role". In G. Chierchia, B. Partee & R. Turner (Eds.), *Properties, types and meanings* (pp. 69-130). Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- Duffy, J. H. (1998). *Reading between the lines: Claude simon and the visual arts*. Liverpool: Liverpool University Press.
- Durkheim, E. (1964 [1915]). *The elementary forms of the religious life - formes élémentaires de la vie religieuse*. (J. W. Swain, Trans.). London: George Allen & Unwin.
- Echerd, S. (1979). Of men, machines, and planets. Papers on case grammar, *Research papers of the Texas SIL at Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics* (pp. 1-20). Dallas.
- Eco, U. (1984). *Role of the reader*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Eggins, S. (1994). *An introduction to systemic functional linguistics*. London: Pinter.
- Egudu, R. N. (2002). *Prayer of the powerless*. Nigeria: Fourth Dimension Publishing Company.
- Ehrlich, S. (2005). *Interpretations of gendered discourse: Critical discourse analysis and cultural background assumptions*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press, University of Birmingham.
- Elias, N. (1998). *On civilization, power, and knowledge: Selected writings*. London; Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Ellece, S. E. (2005). *Cultural identity and gender in a tv talk show in botswana: A CDA approach*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Fairclough, N. (1989). *Language and power*. London: Longman.
- _____ (1992). *Discourse and social change*. Cambridge: Polity.
- _____ (1995). *Critical discourse analysis*. Harlow, Essex: Longman.
- _____ (1996). Technoligisation of discourse. In C. R. Caldas-Coulthard & M. Coulthard (Eds.), *Texts and practices: Readings in critical discourse analysis* (pp. 71-83.). London: Routledge.

- Fairclough, N. L., & Wodak, R. (1997). Critical discourse analysis. In T. A. v. Dijk (Ed.), *Discourse studies. A multidisciplinary introduction. Discourse as social interactio* (Vol. 2, pp. 258-284). London: Sage.
- Fawcett, R. P. (1973). Generating a sentence in systemic functional grammar. In M. A. K. Halliday & J. R. Martin (Eds.), *Readings in systemic linguistics*. London: Batsford.
- Fearghail, S. Ó. (2005). *A semantic analysis of Irish verbs: The Case Grammar matrix model applied to the Irish language*. Unpublished PhD, University of Ulster, Ulster.
- Fernandes, L. (2006). Practices of translating names in children's fantasy literature: A corpus-based study. *New Voices in Translation Studies*, 2, 44-57.
- _____ (unpublished). *Brazilian practices of translating names in children's fantasy literature: A corpus-based study*. Ph.D thesis. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- Figueiredo, D. d. C. (2002). Discipline and punishment in the discourse of legal decisions on rape trials. In J. Cotterill (Ed.), *Language in the legal process* (pp. 260 – 273). New York: Macmillan.
- Fillmore, C. J. (1965). *Indirect object constructions in English and the ordering of transformations*. The Hague: Mouton.
- _____ (1968). The Case for Case. In E. Bach & R. T. Harms (Eds.), *Universals in Linguistic theory* (pp. 1-88). New York/London: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.
- _____ (1971). Some problems for case grammar. In R. J. O'Brien (Ed.), *Georgetown university round table on languages and linguistics* (pp. 35-36). Washington, D.C.: Georgetown University Press.
- _____ (1975). *Principles of Case Grammar: The structure of language and meanings* (H. Tanaka & M. Funaki, Trans.). Tokyo: Sanseido Publishing Co.
- _____ (1977). The Case for Case reopened. In P. Cole & J. Sadock (Eds.), *Syntax and semantics* (Vol. 8, pp. 59-81). New York: Academic Press.
- _____ (1981). Pragmatics and the description of discourse. In P. Cole (Ed.), *Radical pragmatics* (pp. 143-166). New York: Academic Press.
- Fillmore, C. J., & Atkins, B. T. (2000). Describing polysemy: The case of “crawl”. In Y. Ravin & C. Leacock (Eds.), *Polysemy*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Fillmore, C. J., & Langendoen, D. T. (Eds.). (1971). *Studies in linguistic semantics*. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston.
- Firth, J. R. (1957). *Papers in linguistics 1934-1951*. London: Oxford University Press.

- Flores, L. L. (1994). *Teoria da correferencialidade com especial atenção ao português*. Unpublished Master dissertation. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- Foster, J. (2005). Making sense of stewardship: Metaphorical thinking and the environment. In J. Foster & S. Gough (Eds.), *Learning, natural capital and sustainable development: Options for an uncertain world* (pp. 21-32). London: Routledge.
- Foucault, M. (1980). *Power/knowledge: Selected interviews & other writings 1972-1977*. New York: Pantheon Books.
- Fowler, H. W., & Fowler, F. G. (1991). *The concise Oxford dictionary*. London; New York: BCA.
- Fowler, R. (1996). On critical linguistics. In C. R. Caldas-Coulthard & M. Coulthard (Eds.), *Texts and practices: Readings in critical discourse analysis*. London: Routledge.
- Francis, G. (1994). Labelling discourse: An aspect of nominal group lexical cohesion. In M. Coulthard (Ed.), *Advances in written text analysis*. London, New York: Routledge.
- Francis, G., Hunston, S., & Manning, E. (Eds.). (1996). *Grammar Patterns 1: Verbs*. London: HarperCollins Publishers Ltd.
- Fries, P. H. (1985). How does a story mean what it does? A partial answer. In J. Benson & W. Greaves (Eds.), *Systemic perspectives on discourse: Selected theoretical papers from the ninth international systemic workshop* (Vol. 15, *Advances in Discourse Processes*, pp. 295 - 321). Norwood, NJ: Ablex Publishing Corporation.
- _____ (1992). Lexico-grammatical patterns and the interpretation of texts. *Discourse Processes*, 15, 73-91. Accessed on 20th August, 2007, from http://www.chsbs.cmich.edu/Peter_Fries/friespub.htm#1965.
- Fries, P. H., & Fries, N. M. (Eds.). (1985). *Current issues in Linguistic theory* (Vol. 40). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Fromkin, V., & Rodman, R. (1998). *An introduction to language*. New York/London: Harcourt Brace College Publishers.
- Gardner, R. T. (1975). 'Meaning'. In P. Cole & J. L. Morgan (Eds.), *Syntax and semantics* (Vol. 3, pp. 289-303). New York, San Francisco and London: Academic Press.
- Gay, F. (2006) *The Friendship Book of Francis Gay*. London, Glasgow, Manchester, Dundee: D. C. Thompson & co., Ltd.
- Giddens, A. (1984). *Elements of the theory of structuration*. Cambridge: Polity Press.

- Gil, G. (2004). *T. E. A. D.: Play and metaphor in discourse analysis*. University Course: UFSC. Florianópolis.
- Givón, T. (1993). *English Grammar. A function based introduction II*. Amsterdam and Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Govt., U. S. (1948). *Speculation in commodity markets. Hearings before the subcommittee of the committee on appropriations, united states senate, eightieth congress, second session.*, Washington, U.S. Govt.
- Graffi, G. (2001). *200 years of syntax*: Amsterdam, Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Grice, H. P. (1975). Logic and conversation. In P. Cole & J. L. Morgan (Eds.), *Syntax and semantics* (Vol. 3). New York, San Francisco and London: Academic Press.
- Grillo, E. (2005). *Power without domination: Dialogism and the empowering property of communication*. Amsterdam, Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Groom, N. (2005). *Introduction to corpus linguistics*. University course. University of Birmingham.
- Gruber, J. S. (1965). *Studies in lexical relations*. Bloomington: Indiana University Linguistics Club.
- _____ (1976). *Lexical structure in syntax and semantics*. Amsterdam: North Holland.
- Habermas, J. (1981). *The theory of community action* (T. McCarthy., Trans. Vol. 1. Reason and the rationalisation of society). Boston: Beacon press.
- Halliday, M. A. K. (1961). Categories of the theory of grammar. *Word*, 17(3), 241-292.
- _____ (1985). *An introduction to functional grammar*. London: Edward Arnold.
- _____ (1994). *An introduction to functional Grammar* (2nd ed.). London: Edward Arnold.
- _____ (2004). *An introduction to functional grammar* (3rd ed.). London: Hodder Arnold.
- Halliday, M. A. K., & Hasan, R. (1976). *Cohesion in English*. Harlow: Longman.
- _____ (1989). *Language, context and text: Aspects of language in a social semiotic perspective*. (2 ed.). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Halliday, M. A. K., & Matthiessen, C. M. I. M. (2004). *An introduction to functional grammar*. (3rd. Edition). London: Arnold.

- Harris, J. (1990). *Early language development*. London and New York: Routledge (UK).
- Harvey, E., & Mills, R. (1970). Patterns of organizational adaptation: A political perspective. In M. N. Zald (Ed.), *Power in organizations* (pp. 181-213). Vanderbilt University, Nashville, Tennessee: Vanderbilt University Press.
- Hasan, R. (1967). Linguistics and the study of literary texts. *Études de Linguistique Appliquée*, 5.
- Haser, V. (2005). *Metaphor, metonymy and experientialist philosophy: Challenging cognitive semantics*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Hay, C. (2002). *Political analysis*. Basingstoke: Palgrave.
- Hayes, G. A. Contemporary metaphor theory and alternative views of Krishna and Radha in Vaishnava Sahajiya tantric traditions. In G. L. Beck (Ed.), *Alternative Krishnas: Regional and vernacular variations on a hindu deity* (pp. 19-32). Albany: SUNY Press.
- Heberle, V. M. (1997a). Substantivos anafóricos. In J. L. Meurer & D. Motta-Roth (Eds.), *Parâmetros de textualização*. Santa Maria: Editora UFSM.
- _____ (1997b). *An investigation of textual and contextual parameters in editorials of women's magazines*. Unpublished thesis. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- _____ (1999a). *Discourse, language and gender issues*. University course. UFSC. Florianópolis.
- _____ (1999b). *Critical reading: Integrating principles of critical discourse analysis and gender studies*. Florianópolis: UFSC.
- _____ (2000). *Língua inglesa e lingüística aplicada*. University Course: UFSC. Florianópolis.
- _____ (2001). *Interfaces between critical discourse analysis and systemic functional linguistics*. University course. UFSC. Florianópolis.
- _____ (2002). *Systemic-functional Grammar and CDA*. University course. UFSC. Florianópolis.
- _____ (2004). Personal communication. NUPdiscurso meeting. November, 2004. Florianópolis.
- _____ (2006). Personal communication. NUPdiscurso meeting. March, 2006. Florianópolis.
- Hjörne, E. (2006). Pedagogy in the 'ADHD classroom': An exploration of 'The Little group'. In G. Lloyd, J. Stead & D. Cohen (Eds.), *Critical new perspectives on ADHD*. London: Routledge.

- Holland, B. (2005). *Discourse, culture and ideology*. University course. University of Birmingham.
- Honneth, A. (1991). *The critique of power: Reflective stages in a critical social theory* (S. Verlag, Trans.). London; Cambridge, Mass: MIT.
- Hope, V. (2005). *Social pecking order in the roman world*. Retrieved 01/09/2005, http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/ancient/romans/social_structure_01.shtml
- Howard, J. M. (2001). *Pecking order: Support of a mechanism that affects human evolution*. Retrieved 01/09/2005., <http://www.anthropogeny.com/Pecking%20Order.htm>
- Hunston, S. (2002). *Corpora in applied linguistics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- _____ (2005). *Corpus linguistics*. University course. University of Birmingham.
- Hunter, F. (1953). *Community power structure: A study of decision makers*. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press.
- Hurst, M. J. (1990). *The voice of the child in American literature*. Lexington: University Press of Kentucky.
- Hutson, K. L. (1978). Metaphor: An evidence from design of the creation model. *CSSHS Quarterly Journal*, 1(2), 18 - 29.
- Ibrahim, M. H. (1993). Object-orientated natural language processing systems. In N. G. Bourbakis (Ed.), *Artificial Intelligence* (pp. 270-295). London, New Jersey, Shanghai, Hong Kong, Taiwan, India and Singapore: World Scientific.
- Jackendoff, R. (1972). *Semantic interpretation in generative Grammar*. Cambridge/Mass: The MIT Press.
- Janks, H. (1997). Critical discourse analysis as a research tool. *Discourse: studies in the cultural politics of education*, 18(3), 329-342.
- Janks, H., & Ivanič, R. (1992). CLA and emancipatory discourse. In N. Fairclough (Ed.), *Critical language awareness*. (pp. 305-330.). London: Longman.
- Jennings, S. (1995). *Theatre, ritual and transformation: The Senoi Temiars*. London, New York: Routledge.
- Jule, A. (2005). "We don't like to ask questions": Using Linguistic space to understand gender roles in an Evangelic Christian College. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Junkes, T. K. (1998). Produção escrita: Um estudo da coesão e coerência textuais. In L. G. Cabral & E. Gorski (Eds.), *Linguística e ensino. Reflexões para a prática pedagógica da lingual materna* (pp. 51-72). Florianópolis: Insular.

- Kent, R., & Kent, K. (Eds.). (1996). *Encyclopedia of computer science and technology*. New York: Marcel Dekker.
- Kirkpatrick, E. M., & Schwarz, C. M. (Eds.). (1993). *The Wordsworth dictionary of idioms*. Ware, Hertfordshire: Wordsworth Editions Ltd.
- Kittay, E. F. (1990). *Metaphor*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Knowles, M., & Moon, R. (2006). *Introducing metaphor*. London: Routledge (UK).
- Koller, V. (2005). *CEOs and "working gals": The textual representation and cognitive conceptualization of businesswomen in different discourse communities*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Konar, A. (1999). *Artificial Intelligence and soft computing*: CRC Press.
- Kosetzi, K. (2005). *Harnessing a critical discourse analysis of gender and fictional television*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Kress, G., & van Leeuwen, T. (1996). *Reading images: The Grammar of visual design*. London and New York and Canada: Routledge.
- Lakemeyer, G., & Nebel, B. (2003). *Exploring Artificial Intelligence in the new millennium*. San Diego, CA: Morgan Kaufmann Publishers.
- Lakoff, G., & Johnson, M. (1980). *Metaphors we live by*. London; Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Langendoen, T. (1968). *The London school of linguistics: A study of the Linguistic theories of B. Malinowski and J. R. Firth (research monograph 46)*. Unpublished manuscript, Cambridge, Massachusetts.
- Layder, D. (2004). *Emotion in social life: The lost heart of society*. London: SAGE.
- Leech, G. N. (1981). *Semantics*. Middlesex, England: Penguin books.
- _____ (1983). *Principles of pragmatics*. London: Longman.
- Leeuwen, T. v. (2005). *'multimodality and globalisation: Challenges on research'*. Paper presented at the BAAL Multimodality SIG Meeting: 'Directions in Multimodality Research', University of Birmingham.
- Littlemore, J., & Shortall, T. (2005). *Corpus and cognitive linguistics: Irreconcilable paradigms?* Paper presented at the English Language Research (ELR) Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Longacre, R. E. (1996). *The Grammar of discourse*. New York: Springer.

- Louw, J. P., & Nida, E. A. (Eds.). (1989). *Greek-English lexicon of the new testament based on semantic domains: Introductions and domains* (Vol. 1). New York: United Bible Societies.
- Louw, W. (1993). Irony in the text or insincerity in the writer? The diagnostic potential of semantic prosodies. In M. Baker, Francis, G. & E. Tognini-Bonelli (Eds.), *Text and technology* (pp. 157-176). Amsterdam: John Benjamins
- _____ (2004). Irony in the text or insincerity in the writer? The diagnostic potential of semantic prosodies. Reprinted. In G. Sampson & D. McCarthy (Eds.), *Corpus linguistics: Readings in a widening discipline* (pp. 229-241). London: Continuum.
- Lukes, S. (1974). *Power: A radical view*. London: Macmillan.
- _____ (2005). *Power: A radical view* (2 ed.). Basingstoke; New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
- MacKinnon, N. J. (1994). *Symbolic interactionism as affect control*. Albany: SUNY Press.
- Maddick, H. (1963). *Democracy, decentralisation and development*. New York: Asia Pub. House.
- Malinowski, B. (1935). *Coral gardens and their magic, a study of the methods of tilling the soil and of agricultural rites in the trobriand islands*. (Vol. 2, The Language of Magic and Gardening). London: Allen and Unwin.
- Malmkjaer, K. (Ed.). (2004). *The linguistics encyclopedia*. London and New York: Routledge (UK).
- Masterman, M. (2005). *Language, cohesion and form*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Mayr, A. (2005a). Learning the hard way: CDA in a prison educational context. Seminar, 14th November, 2005, University of Aston.
- _____ (2005b). *Learning the hard way: CDA in a prison educational context*. Paper presented at the Postgraduate and Research Methods Seminar, University of Aston, Birmingham.
- McCawley, J. D. (1968). The role of semantics in a grammar. In E. Bach & R. T. Harms (Eds.), *Universals in Linguistic theory* (pp. 125-170). New York/London: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.
- McCoy, A. M. (1969). *A case grammar classification of Spanish verbs*. Unpublished Ph.D thesis. University of Michigan.
- McLaughlin, S. F. (1998). *Introduction to language development*. New York: Thomson Delmar Learning.

- McLoughlin, L. (2005). *Can the analysis of the dissemination and reception of texts improve CDA as a methodology*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Merriam-webster's unabridged dictionary. (2000). Springfield, MA: Merriam-Webster Inc.
- Meurer, J. L. (2000). O conhecimento de gêneros textuais e a formação do profissional da linguagem. In M. B. Fortkamp & L. M. B. Tomitch (Eds.), *Aspectos da lingüística aplicada*. (pp. 149 - 166.). Florianópolis: Editora Insular.
- _____ (2001). *Análise do Discurso Escrito*. University Course: UFSC. Florianópolis.
- _____ (2002). *Identidades, práticas sociais e estrutura social: Uma base tri-dimensional para a conscientização discursiva do profissional da linguagem*. Paper presented at the VI Congresso Brasileiro de Lingüística Aplicada, Belo Horizonte.
- _____ (2004). Role prescriptions, social practices, and social structures: A sociological basis for the contextualisation of analysis in SFG and CDA. In L. Y. a. C. Harrison (Ed.), *Systemic functional linguistics and critical discourse analysis. Studies in social change*. (pp. 85-89.). London/New York: Continuum.
- Middleton, T. (1999). *Women beware women and other plays*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Miller, G. A., & Leacock, C. (2000). Lexical representations for sentence processing. In Y. Ravin & C. Leacock (Eds.), *Polysemy*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Mills, S. (1997). *Discourse*. London: Routledge.
- _____ (2005). *Contextualised analysis of gender and language*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Minker, W., & Bennacef, S. (2004). *Speech and human-machine dialog*. New York: Springer.
- Moita-Lopes, L. P. (2000). *Discourse as a site for investigating social identities: Socio-constructivism, discourse as a social cultural instrument and ethnography*. Paper presented at the III Conference for sociocultural research, Campinas, São Paulo, Brazil.
- Moskey, S. T. (1979). *Semantic structures and relations in Dutch. An introduction to Case Grammar*. Washington, D.C.: Georgetown University Press.
- Moura, H. M. d. M. (1988). *A passiva e o problema da relação sintaxe-semântica*. Unpublished MA, Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.

- Muthukrishna, N. (2006). Inclusion and exclusion in school. Experiences of children labelled 'ADHD' in South Africa. In G. Lloyd, J. Stead & D. Cohen (Eds.), *Critical new perspectives on ADHD* (pp. 96-114). London: Routledge.
- Neighbors, J. M. (1998). *Domain analysis and generative implementation* (Technical report No. ICSR5). have to check on internet: Bayfront Technologies, Inc.
- Nicolacópulos, A. T. (1981). *A semantic analysis of portuguese predications – an introduction to Case Grammar*. Unpublished PhD thesis. Georgetown University, Georgetown, Washington, D. C.
- _____ (1992). *The holistic Case – an introduction to case grammar*. Unpublished manuscript, Florianópolis: UFSC.
- _____ (2002). *Semântica da língua inglesa*. University Course: UFSC. Florianópolis.
- _____ (2003). *T. E. Língua: Polysemy and the intended sense*. University Course: UFSC. Florianópolis.
- _____ (2006). E-mail, 9th November.
- Nicolacópulos, A. T., & Conceição, S. (2002). *Causativação de predicadores estáticos e processuais no português brasileiro*. Unpublished manuscript, Florianópolis.
- Nicolacópulos, A. T., Nassib Olímpio, L. M., Oliveira, A. d., Oliveira, M. d. G. d., & Zucco, B. (1995). *O modelo casual da UFSC*. Paper presented at the 1º Encontro do CelSul, Florianópolis. p. 203 - 224.
- Nietzsche, F. W. (1899). *A genealogy of morals; (and) poems*. London: T. Fisher Unwin.
- O'Donnell, M. (1999). Context in dynamic modelling. In M. Ghadessy (Ed.), *Text and context in functional linguistics*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- _____ (2005a). Moderator at the paper presentation for Steele Weickert (2005b, 2nd August). *European Systemic Functional Linguistics Conference & Workshop 2005*. <http://www.isfla.org/Conferences/ESW05/WorkshopAbstracts.rtf>. London.
- _____ (2005b). Difficult process workshop, *European Systemic Functional Linguistics Conference & Workshop 2005*. <http://www.isfla.org/Conferences/ESW05/WorkshopAbstracts.rtf>. London.
- O'Neill, M. (2006). "The all-sustaining air": Yeats, Stevens, Rich, Bishop – responses to romantic poetry. In D. W. Davies & R. M. Turley (Eds.), *The monstrous debt: Modalities of romantic influence in twentieth-century literature* (pp. 143-162). Detroit, Mich: Wayne State University Press.
- Oliveira, A. T. C. d. (1999). *Cenas benefactivas e movimentos semânticos no contexto da linguagem jornalística*. Unpublished PhD thesis. UFSC, Florianópolis, SC, Brazil.

- Oliveira, M. d. G. A. d. (1989). *Dar: O verbo mais polissemico da lingua portuguesa*. Unpublished MA, Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina.
- _____ (1995). *Predicações polissêmicas e metafóricas – uma abordagem semântico –pragmática*. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis. UFSC, Florianópolis.
- _____ (2003). Predicações polissêmicas e metafóricas. *Revista Univille*, 8(1).
- Oliveira, R. P. d. (1998). Os caminhos do 'onde': Uma contribuição da semântica ao ensino de língua materna. In L. G. Cabral & E. Gorski (Eds.), *Linguística e ensino: Reflexões para a pratica pedagógica da língua materna*. Florianópolis: Insular.
- Olsen, M. E. (Ed.). (1970). *Power in societies*. London: Collier-Macmillan.
- Paes de Almeida Filho, J. C. (2004). *T. E. L. A.: Research methods in applied linguistics*. University Course: UFSC. Florianópolis.
- Palmer, F. R. (Ed.). (1968). *Selected papers of J. R. Firth 1952-59*. London/ Harlow.
- Payne, T. E. (1997). *Describing morphosyntax*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Pearson, P. D. (1990). The comprehension revolution: A twenty-year history of process related to reading comprehension. In B. Mayor (Ed.), *Language, communication, and education* (pp. 443-457). London and New York: Routledge (UK).
- Pichler, P. (2005). *Gender and ethnicity in spontaneous talk and ethnographic-style interviews: Balancing perspectives of researcher and researched*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Pinker, S. (1999). *Words and rules, the ingredients of language*. New York: Basic Books.
- Pitts, A. W. (2006). Semantic domain theory: An introduction to the use of the low-nida lexicon in the opentext.Org project. Retrieved 13th May, 2006, from <http://www.opentext.org/resources/articles/a10.html>
- Platt, J. T. (1971). *Principal grammatical form and grammatical meaning; a tagmemic view of fillmore's deep structure case*. Amsterdam: North-Holland Publishing.
- Pörn, I. (1970). *The logic of power*. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.
- Prandi, M. (2004). *Building blocks of Meaning*. Amsterdam and Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Company.

- Purvis, T., & Hunt, A. (1993). Discourse, ideology, discourse, ideology, discourse, ideology.... *The British Journal of Sociology*, 44(3), 473-499.
- PWAG. (2005). Pig welfare advisory group. Retrieved 01/09/2005, from <http://www.defra.gov.uk/animalh/welfare/farmed/pigs/pwag/pb3083/pwag1008.htm>.
- Richardson, J. E. (2004). *(Mis)representing Islam. The racism and rhetoric of British broadsheet newspapers*. Amsterdam; Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Rocha, S. A. Dias de Oliveira da (1998). *A emergência de enunciados temporais em textos jornalísticos*. Unpublished MA dissertation. UFSC, Florianópolis.
- Rocha, S. A. Dias de Oliveira da (2003). *Os movimentos semânticos e as nuances de companhia que emergem da linguagem na mídia impressa*. Unpublished PhD thesis. UFSC, Florianópolis.
- Rodrigues, M. (unpublished). *The Locative as a source of semantic moves in journalistic texts*. PPGI, UFSC, Florianópolis.
- Ross, K. L. (2000). Book review: Words and rules, the ingredients of language by Steven Pinker. *The Proceedings of the Friesian School, Fourth Series* Retrieved 17th May, 2006 from: <http://www.friesian.com/wittgen.htm>
- Roth, G., & Wittich, C. (Eds.). (1968). *Max Weber: Economy and society* (Vol. 2, 3). New York: Bedminster.
- Rudanko, M. J. (1989). *Complementation and case grammar: A syntactic and semantic study of selected patterns of complementation in present-day English*. Albany: State University of New York Press.
- Saeed, J. I. (1997). *Semantics* (Vol. 2). Oxford: Blackwell.
- Salomon, B. (1979). *Critical analyses in renaissance drama*. Bowling Green, Ohio: Bowling Green University Popular Press.
- Samlowski, W. (1976). Case grammar. In E. Chamiak & Y. Wilks (Eds.), *Computational semantics*. Amsterdam, The Netherlands: North-Holland.
- Sandywell, B. (1996). *Logological investigations: Presocratic reflexivity: The construction of philosophical discourse c. 600-450 bc* (Vol. 3). London: Routledge (UK).
- Schäffner, C. (2005). *Introduction to the debate on global terror and BBC monitoring*. Paper presented at the Global Terror. A debate, University of Aston, Birmingham.
- Schiffrin, D. (1987). *Discourse markers*. Cambridge, New York and Melbourne: CUP.
- _____ (1994). *Approaches to discourse*. Cambridge, Mass: Blackwell
- Scott, J. (2001). *Power*. Cambridge; Oxford; Malden, MA: Polity Press.

- _____ ([1994] 1996). *Power critical concepts* (Vol. II & III). London & N.Y.: Routledge.
- Scott, M. (2004). *Wordsmith tools version 4*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Sealey, A. (2005). *Corpus data and the problem of agency*. Paper presented at the English Language Research (ELR) Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Sealey, A., & Carter, B. (2004). *Applied linguistics as social science*. London: Continuum.
- Searle, J. R. (1969). *Speech acts: An essay in the philosophy of language*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- _____ (1976). Indirect speech acts. In P. Cole & J. L. Morgan (Eds.), *Syntax and semantics* (Vol. 3, pp. 59-82). New York, San Francisco and London: Academic Press.
- Seppänen, J. (1998). System and ideology in human and social sciences. In G. Altmann & W. A. Koch (Eds.), *Systems: New paradigms for the human sciences* (pp. 180-302). Berlin & New York: Walter de Gruyter.
- Shaddock, J. M. (1975). The soft, interpretive underbelly of generative semantics. In P. Cole & J. L. Morgan (Eds.), *Syntax and semantics* (Vol. 3, pp. 383-396). New York, San Francisco and London: Academic Press.
- Shapiro, I. (2003). *The state of democratic theory*. Princetown, NJ: Princetown University Press.
- Sheth, M., Arpinar, I. B., & Kashyap, V. (2002). *Relationships at the heart of semantic web: Modeling, discovering, and exploiting complex semantic relationships* (Technical report No. Athens GA 30622). Georgia: LSDIS Lab, Computer Science, University of Georgia.
- Silva, A. S. d. (2002). *Predicadores quase-benefactivos: Uma abordagem semântico-pragmática*. Unpublished Master dissertation. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- Silva, J. (unpublished). *Experiential movements in Dear Abby*. Unpublished Master dissertation in progress. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- Simpson, P. (1993). *Language, ideology and point of view*. London: Routledge.
- Sinclair, J. (1995). The search for units of Meaning, *Barcelona conference*: Transcribed by Laura Paredes.
- _____ (2005). *Talk on 'corpus linguistics' in connection with the sinclair lecture*. Seminar. University of Birmingham.
- Sinclair, J., & Moon, R. (Eds.). (1995 [1989]). *Collins COBUILD dictionary of phrasal verbs* (2nd ed.). London: Harper Collins.

- Somers, H. L. (1982). The use of verb features in arriving at a "meaning representation". *Linguistics*, 20, 237-265.
- _____ (2006). E-mail. Manchester, UK.
- Somers, H. L., & Johnson, R. L. (1979). Ptosys: An interactive system for "understanding" texts using a dynamic strategy for creating and updating dictionary entries. In M. MacCafferty & K. Gray (Eds.), *The analysis of meaning: Informatics* (Vol. 5, pp. 85-103). London: Aslib.
- Souza Schissatti, L. C., & Nicolacópulos, A. T. (2002a). Um estudo do sub-campo semântica 'quase-benefactivo' em Italiano, *5º Encontro do CelSul*. Curitiba/PR., Brasil.
- _____ (2002b). Um estudo do sub-campo semântico quase-benefactivo em Italiano, *V GEL*. Curitiba: UFPR.
- Souza Schissatti, L. C. (2004). *Interrogativas - wh no dialeto trentino de rodeio. Unpublished Ph.D thesis*. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- Staley, L. (2005). *Languages of power in the age of Richard II*. University Park, Pennsylvania: Pennsylvania State University Press.
- Stampe, D. W. (1975). Meaning and truth in the theory of speech acts. In P. Cole & J. L. Morgan (Eds.), *Syntax and semantics* (Vol. 3, pp. 1-39). New York, San Francisco and London: Academic Press.
- Steele G. Weickert, A. E. R. (2005). *Linguistic marks of power: Metaphors at the clause level of representation*. Paper presented at the University of Birmingham English Language Research Postgraduate (BELP) Conference, University of Birmingham. <http://www.english.bham.ac.uk/research/archive/2005-2006/belp05.htm>.
- _____ (2007). *A Study of Power Microscenes in Journalistic text*. Unpublished PhD thesis. UFSC, Florianópolis.
- _____ (unpublished). Predicators as linguistic marks of power in (i) news reports and (ii) texts from the BNC.
- Steele G. Weickert, A. E. R., & Nicolacópulos, A. T. (2003, April 8th). *The traffic of the notion of power in a journalistic text on 'war and terrorism'*. Paper presented at the XVII ENPULI - Encontro Nacional De Professores Universitários De Língua Inglesa. "A Interculturalidade no Ensino de Inglês", Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- _____ (2005a). The representation of the notion of power in a journalistic text on war. In L. M. B. Tomitch, M. H. V. Abrahão, C. Daghlían & D. I. Ristoff (Eds.), *A interculturalidade no ensino de inglês*. (pp. 35 - 58). Florianópolis, SC, Brazil: Abrapui/PGI-UFSC.

-
- _____ (2005b, 2nd August). *Linguistic marks of power at the clause level of representation*. Paper presented at the The 17th European Systemic-Functional Linguistics Conference & Workshop, King's College London. <http://www.isfla.org/Conferences/ESW05/Abstracts.rtf>.
-
- _____ (2006). *Linguistic marks of power*. Paper presented at the 33rd International Systemic Functional Conference, São Paulo, Brazil.
-
- _____ (2007). Linguistic marks of power in two genres: Newsreports and a Harry Potter novel. from http://www3.unisul.br/paginas/ensino/pos/linguagem/siget/progra/coord_15.htm, SIGET conference programme
- Stephanidis, C., Akoumianakis, D., Antona, M., & Bannon, L. (2001). *User interfaces for all: Concepts, methods, and tools*. Mahwah, New Jersey: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Stones, R. (2005). *Structuration theory*. Basingstoke and New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Stubbs, M. (2001). *Words and phrases: Corpus studies of lexical semantics*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Talbot, M., Atkinson, K., & Atkinson, D. (2003). *Language and power in the modern world*. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.
- Teubert, W. (2001). Corpus linguistics and lexicography. *International Journal of Corpus Linguistics*, 6(Special Issue), 125-153.
- _____ (2005a). My version of corpus linguistics. Personal communication. Seminar 16th to 19th August. University of Birmingham. UK.
- _____ (2005b). My version of corpus linguistics. *International Journal of Corpus linguistics*, 10(1), 1-13.
- _____ (2005c). *Corpus, meaning and intertextuality*. University course. University of Birmingham.
- Thompson, G. (1996). *Introducing functional Grammar*. London/ New York: Arnold.
- Thornborrow, J. (2002). *Power talk: Language and interaction in institutional discourse*. London: Pearson Education Ltd.
- Tomaselli, K., & Louw, P. E. (1991). The struggle for legitimacy: State pressures on the media, 1950-1991. In P. E. Louw & K. Tomaselli (Eds.), *Studies on the south African media: The alternative press in South Africa*. (pp. 77 - 92). Bellville, South Africa: Anthropos.
- van Dijk, T. A. (1986). News schemata. In S. Greenbaum & C. Cooper (Eds.), *Studying writing. Linguistic approaches* (pp. 155-185). Beverly Hills: Sage.

- _____ (1996). Discourse, power and access. In C. R. Caldas-Coulthard & M. Coulthard (Eds.), *Texts and practices: Readings in critical discourse analysis* (pp. 84-103). London: Routledge.
- _____ (1997a). The study of discourse. In *Discourse as structure and process* (Vol. 1). London, Thousand Oaks. New Delhi.: Sage publications.
- _____ (1997b). Discourse as structure and process. In T. A. van Dijk (Ed.), *Discourse studies: A multidisciplinary introduction* (Vol. 2). London: Sage Ltd.
- _____ (1997c). Discourse as interaction in society. In T. A. v. Dijk (Ed.), *A multidisciplinary introduction. Discourse as social interaction* (Vol. 2, pp. 1-37). London: Sage.
- _____ (2001a). Critical discourse analysis. In D. Schiffrin, D. Tannen & H. E. Hamilton (Eds.), *The handbook of discourse analysis* (pp. 352-371). Malden, Mass: Blackwell.
- _____ (2001b). Text and context of parliamentary debate. Retrieved 22nd April, 2005, from <http://www.discourse-in-society.org/Txt&ContParlDebates.htm>
- van Leeuwen, T. (1996). The representation of social actors. In C. R. Caldas-Coulthard & M. Coulthard (Eds.), *Texts and practices: Readings in critical discourse analysis*. London: Routledge.
- Vasconcellos, M. L. B. (2000). *Translation studies*. University course. UFSC. Florianópolis.
- _____ (2004). Translation in the global culture economy: Asymmetries, difference and identity. *Cadernos de tradução*, XIII (2004/1), 45-54.
- Ventola, E. (1987). *The structure of social interaction. A systemic approach to the semiotics of service encounters*. London: Francis Pinter.
- Violi, P. (2001). *Meaning and experience*. Bloomington and Indianapolis: Indiana University Press.
- Viviani, Z. A. (1987). *Polissemia do verbo ficar: Introdução a gramática de caso*. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- Vogelenzang, L., & Vuyst, J. d. (1991). Towards an evaluation tool for natural language interfaces. In H. Schnelle (Ed.), *Die natur der sprache* (pp. 322-339). Berlin, New York: Walter de Gruyter.
- Wallman, J. (1992). *Aping language*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Wardhaugh, R. (2006). *An introduction to sociolinguistics*. Malden, Mass., USA: Blackwell Pub.
- Wartenberg, T. E. (1990). *The forms of power: From domination to transformation*. Philadelphia: Temple University Press.

- Wenden, A. L., & Schäffner, C. (Eds.). (1995). *Language and peace*. Aldershot, USA, Sydney: Dartmouth Publishing Company.
- Wharton, S. (2005). *Representations and implications: CDA and the textual construction of the family*. Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Winter, C. D. G. (1973). *The power motive*.
- Wittgenstein, L. (1958). *Preliminary studies for the "philosophical investigations" generally known*. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.
- Wodak, R. (1996). *Disorders of discourse*. London; New York: SAGE.
- _____ (2005). *Feminist critical discourse analysis: Performing success?* Paper presented at the Theoretical and Methodological Approaches to Gender and Language Study. BAAL / Cambridge University Press Seminar, University of Birmingham.
- Wright, R. A. (1975). Meaning and conversational implicature. In P. Cole & J. L. Morgan (Eds.), *Syntax and semantics* (Vol. 3, pp. 362-382). New York, San Francisco and London: Academic Press.
- Yule, G. (1996). *Pragmatics*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Zarri, G. P. (1998). Natural language processing associated with expert systems. In J. Liebowitz (Ed.), *The handbook of applied expert systems* (pp. 19-11 – 19-41). London: CRC Press.
- Zucco, B. (1992). *Introdução ao estudo do objeto: Uma análise casual*. Unpublished Master dissertation. Universidade Federal de Santa Catarina, Florianópolis.
- _____ (1994). Do objeto (i): Consideração teóricas: Do objeto (II): Uma análise casual. *Revista UNIMAR*, 16(1), 33-70.

APPENDICES

APPENDIX 1 Twenty news reports composing the PhD corpus

ASW0001T Telegraph 04-01-2005 Howard vows to **BACK** (1) workers failed by Labour
<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml?xml=/news/2005/01/04/ntory04.xml>

Last Updated: 2:04pm GMT 04/01/2005

By Andrew Sparrow, Political Correspondent
 (Filed: 04/01/2005)

Michael Howard pledged to **STAND (2) UP FOR** Britain's "forgotten majority "yesterday as he published the first instalment of the Conservative Party's general election manifesto.

The Tory leader said his policies would reward people who worked hard, **RESPECTED (3)** the law, and **TOOK (4)** responsibility for their families.

Michael Howard: five main policy commitments in the manifesto
 He claimed that such people had been **LET (5) DOWN** by Labour.

In his introduction to the manifesto, Mr Howard said: "Trusting free enterprise; promoting individual responsibility; cherishing a sense of nationhood; rewarding hard work; admiring excellence; encouraging ambition – these are the right values.

"They are Conservative values. And they are the values of the forgotten majority, the people who make up the backbone of our country.

"They have been forgotten, neglected and taken for granted by Blair."

Parties normally publish their manifestos a few weeks before polling day. In a break with tradition, the Tories will release theirs in instalments, with the next section coming later this month.

Yesterday's introduction did not contain any new policy announcements.

But Mr Howard gave a clear sign that he will put cutting taxes right at the heart of his election campaign. Identifying three areas in which Britain needed to change direction, Mr Howard said his first priority was to **DEAL (6) WITH** the tax burden.

"We cannot continue down the path of ever-rising taxes," he said.

"Government is too big – it is spending too much, wasting too much and **TAXING (7)** too much. This threatens our economic stability."

The Tory leaders said his second priority was to "GIVE (8) power BACK to the people" by DECENTRALISING (9) services such as health and education. His third priority would be to RESTORE (10) order.

"The decline of responsibility and the proliferation of so-called 'human rights' have left us in a moral quagmire, unable to GET (11-idiom) A GRIP ON rising crime and disorder.

"In an age of global terrorism we have **LOST (12)** control of our borders. We have no idea who is coming into or leaving our country. This POSES (13) a real potential risk to our nation."

Mr Howard said that coming instalments of the manifesto would explain how the party would DEAL (14) WITH its five main policy commitments: lower taxes, cleaner hospitals, school discipline, controlled immigration and more police.

Alan Milburn, Labour's general election co-ordinator, said: "The first sentence of any Tory manifesto should be an apology to Britain's hard-working families for the Tory failed past of boom and bust, mortgage misery and cuts to schools, hospitals and the police."

ASW0002T Telegraph 05-01-2005 Howard vows to REMAIN (15) leader even if the Conservatives LOSE (16)

<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml?xml=/news/2005/01/05/ntory05.xml>

Last Updated: 1:09am GMT 05/01/2005

By Brendan Carlin, Political Correspondent

(Filed: 05/01/2005)

Michael Howard announced yesterday that he would STAY (17) ON as Tory leader even if his party SUFFERED (18) a third successive general election defeat.

He took the risk of openly discussing a possible Conservative loss to indicate that, unlike John Major and William Hague before him, he would **CARRY (19) ON** rather than **QUIT (20)** the day after a general election defeat.

Michael Howard observes a minute's silence during a visit to Wellingborough, Northants, yesterday

"If my party want me to DO (i) that and I think I can continue to make a contribution, yes, I will," Mr Howard told BBC Radio 4's Today programme.

The move, already suggested by senior Tories in November, would spare the party from being PLUNGED (21) straight INTO another leadership contest.

However, Mr Howard immediately went on to insist he was "working very hard to **WIN (22)** this election "and that "it's a victory that I believe we can **ACHIEVE (23)**".

Speaking as he launched the first part of the Tories' general election manifesto, Mr Howard dismissed rumours that, as Tory leader, he had a "wobble" last November over his failure to DENT (24) Labour's opinion poll lead.

"Of course I didn't," said Mr Howard, who dismissed as "nonsense" Labour's claims to HAVE (25-conceptual) A MOLE in Tory headquarters.

Later, Conservative Campaign Headquarters sought to underline the Tories' determination to WIN (26) by announcing the start of the traditional pre-election talks between Tory shadow ministers and the Civil Service about how to IMPLEMENT (27) Conservative policies in the event of a Tory victory.

Mr Howard yesterday gave no indication as to whether he would STAY (28) ON for a few months or for a year if the Tories LOST (29).

But senior Tories have told The Telegraph that Mr Howard is grooming David Cameron, 38, the shadow cabinet member [who IS] [BE] **(30) IN CHARGE** of policy co-ordination, to TAKE (31) OVER from him next year if the Tories LOST (32) the election, which is expected in May.

Yesterday, a spokesman for Mr Howard stressed that the Tory leader had always made clear that it was arrogant of politicians to take elections for granted.

But his decision to countenance the possibility of defeat yesterday surprised some of his MPs. One senior frontbencher said that AVOIDING (33) another leadership contest immediately after an election defeat was sensible.

"But it all depends on the scale of such a defeat," said the frontbencher.

Both Labour and the Conservatives are beginning the New Year in election mode. Labour is poised to launch a nationwide poster campaign, rumoured to cost almost £1 million and taking up almost 2,000 poster sites across the country.

The Tories are about to start a mailshot to millions of households and will unveil their general election manifesto in instalments.

Yesterday, in the introduction to the document, Mr Howard reaffirmed the party's tax-cutting instincts but stopped short of firm commitments.

"We cannot continue down the path of ever-rising taxes," said the Tory leader during a tour of four Conservative target constituencies HELD (34) by Labour – Bedford, Kettering, Wellingborough and Northampton North.

So far, the Conservatives have raised the possibility of **ABOLISHING (35)** or reducing inheritance tax, capital gains tax and stamp duty.

Yesterday, Mr Howard restricted himself to saying: "When we can, we will LOWER (36) taxes."

But he said that the party's review on cutting government waste - a vital prelude to how much tax would be able to be CUT (37) - would be ready "quite soon".

Mr Howard sought to tap into disillusionment with Labour by ESPOUSING (38) the "values of the forgotten majority" of British people neglected by Tony Blair.

ASW0003T Telegraph 9-01-05 Blair plots to SMASH (39) Brown's Treasury powerbase
<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml?xml=/news/2005/01/02/nblur02.xml>

Last Updated: 12:05am GMT 02/01/2005

By Patrick Hennessy, Political Editor
 (Filed: 02/01/2005)

Tony Blair is to REDUCE (40) drastically the power of Gordon Brown, the Chancellor, by halving the size of the Treasury following a Labour election victory. The Telegraph has learnt.

Mr Blair IS [BE] (41) UNDER PRESSURE from some ministers to **REIN (42) IN Mr Brown**.

The Prime Minister is backing a proposal by Lord Birt, his increasingly influential special adviser, which would see more than 500 of the Treasury's 1,000 civil servants moved to other departments in the most direct challenge to Mr Brown's authority since Labour CAME (43) to power. Alan Milburn, Labour's general election supremo and a political foe of the Chancellor, is helping Lord Birt, the former BBC director-general, to draw up the plan, which would result in a sweeping transformation of Whitehall. One senior Whitehall official said: "The Prime Minister is determined to CUT (44) Gordon Brown DOWN TO SIZE."

Mr Blair IS [BE] (45) UNDER PRESSURE from some ministers to REIN (46) IN Mr Brown by REMOVING (47) him as Chancellor if Labour WINS (48) the election. Some MPs want him to offer Mr Brown the job of Foreign Secretary instead. Mr Blair, however, is understood to favour the option of **DISMANTLING (49) Mr Brown's power base**.

The Birt plan would see the Treasury officials who DEAL (50) WITH public spending and public services moved to an expanded Cabinet Office, [will] possibly [BE] (51) UNDER THE CONTROL OF Mr Milburn. The five Treasury ministers would be reduced to perhaps two.

Another key function of the Treasury, the Financial Services directorate, would be **MOVED (52)** to the Department of Trade and Industry. The Treasury's only remaining responsibility would be taxation. The scheme could also **THREATEN (53)** the Chancellor's authority over the five economic tests for Britain to join the euro.

The plan has echoes of Harold Wilson's disastrous attempt to **CURB (54) Treasury power** by SETTING (55) UP a Department of Economic Affairs, [which WAS] [BE] (56) **UNDER George Brown** in the 1960s

ASW0004T Telegraph 9-01-05 Palestinians go to the polls to CHOOSE (57) Arafats successor

<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml;sessionid=YLU5RYDRU3FM5QFIQMGCM5OAVCBQUJVC?xml=/news/2005/01/09/unpale.xml&sSheet=/portal/2005/01/09/ixportaltop.html&secureRefresh=true&requestid=17071>

Last Updated: 12:51am GMT 10/01/2005

Voting has been extended by two hours in the Palestinian Authority presidential poll because some voters have been **HELD (58) UP** by Israeli army checkpoints, election officials said.

Polls in the West Bank, Gaza Strip and East Jerusalem, were to be kept open until 9pm (1900 GMT), a member of the Central Election Committee said.

Presidential hopeful Mahmoud Abbas leaves a polling station Bahr- al-Bakr said some military checkpoints had not been REMOVED (59) "in violation of understandings we reached with the Israeli state ".

A steady stream of voters had been CASTING (60) their ballot during the day for a successor to Yasser Arafat, with Mahmoud Abbas the favourite.

Mr Abbas, who favours talks with Israel and an end to the four year intifada, has to SECURE (61) a large mandate to OVERCOME (62) opposition to his plans by militant groups.

Groups such as Hamas have **BOYCOTTED (63)** the Palestinian Authority presidential polls, and Palestinian militants **FIRE (64)** at least two rockets into Israel from the Gaza Strip as a show of strength today.

The Lebanese Hizbollah group also ATTACKED (65) an Israeli patrol in a disputed area of the Israel-Lebanon border. Al-Jazeera television said an Israeli officer was **KILLED** (66) and three soldiers were **WOUNDED** (67). Israeli security sources said two soldiers were **HURT** (68).

A French UN officer was **KILLED** (69) during the shelling in southern Lebanon.

Mr Abbas, 69, **TOOK** (70) **OVER** as leader of the Palestinian Liberation Organisation (PLO) after Mr Arafat died on Nov 11.

Mr Abbas said the turnout has been high. "The elections are going very well and this proves that the Palestinian people are **MOVING (71) TOWARDS** democracy. There are obstacles but the determination of the people is stronger," he said.

To **BUILD (72)** a popular mandate for talks with Israel, Mr Abbas needs at least 60 per cent of the vote and a large turnout among the 1.8 million eligible voters.

Jimmy Carter, the former American president, who WAS [BE] (73) AN **INTERNATIONAL MONITOR** of the first Palestinian presidential election since 1996, said Israel seemed to be keeping its promise to EASE (74) the passage of Palestinians at military checkpoints.

"There is no intimidation I have seen," he said after visiting checkpoints near Arab East Jerusalem, where observers reported some Palestinians complained their names were not on voter lists," he said.

Six other candidates are **FIGHTING (75)** the election including a Marxist PLO official and a professor [who IS] [BE] (76) **UNDER HOUSE ARREST** in the US.

ASW0005T Telegraph 9-01-05 Man [is] **WANTED (77) FOR** student's murder found dead

<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml?xml=/news/2005/01/09/usally1.xml&sSheet=/portal/2005/01/09/ixportaltop.html>

Last Updated: 12:51am GMT 10/01/2005

A soldier [who is wanted for] **WANTED (78) FOR** questioning in connection with the murder of Sally Geeson on New Year's Day has been found dead outside a hotel after he apparently jumped from an upper floor, detectives have said.

Lance Corporal David Atkinson, 31, who was based at Waterbeach Barracks near Cambridge, is believed to have committed suicide early this morning.

Waterbeach Barracks, where Lance Corporal Atkinson was based.

Police said forensic tests were being carried out in an attempt to confirm that the man who died in the incident was Lance Corporal Atkinson and that the investigation into Miss Geeson's murder was continuing.

Miss Geeson, 22, who was due to start her final examinations at Anglia Polytechnic University this week, disappeared after celebrating the New Year in The Avery pub in Cambridge.

Her naked body was formally identified by her father yesterday after it had been discovered in woodland three miles from the centre of Cambridge.

As scenes of crime officers and forensic scientists continued to COMB (79) the site in Madingley for clues, 350 miles away police were linking the apparent suicide with Sally's murder.

A spokesman for Strathclyde police said today: "At 4.30am yesterday a man died after apparently jumping from an upper floor window of a hotel in Argyle Street, Glasgow.

"Inquiries are ongoing into the death which at this stage appears to be a suicide."

ASW0006T Telegraph 9-01-05 Falconer insists there will BE [BE] (80) SAFEGUARDS on secrecy veto
<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml?xml=/news/2005/01/01/nfalc01.xml>

Last Updated: 12:05am GMT 02/01/2005

By Ben Fenton
 (Filed: 01/01/2005)

The Government's last-ditch veto to **PREVENT (81)** secrets being disclosed under the Freedom of Information Act will only be USED (82) with the full agreement of the Cabinet, the Lord Chancellor said yesterday.

The wording of the Act, which COMES (83) into force today, states that individual Cabinet ministers can **VETO (84)** decisions by lower tribunals that information should be disclosed.

The veto: "The whole Cabinet must AGREE (85) before it [the veto] is USED (86)"
 But in an interview with The Telegraph, Lord Falconer said: "The whole Cabinet, we have **DECIDED (87)**, must AGREE (88) before it [the veto] is USED (89).

"Where it [the veto] is USED (90), detailed reasons have to be given to Parliament and those reasons and the use of the veto ARE [BE] (91) SUSCEPTIBLE TO JUDICIAL REVIEW. It would be very exceptional."

But the Department for Constitutional Affairs, which the Lord Chancellor **HEADS (92)**, has not EMENDED (93) the FoI Act to **ENSHRINE (94)** the need for a collective Cabinet decision, saying that it is not possible for technical reasons.

So Lord Falconer's pledge will BE [BE] (95) the only SAFEGUARD against flagrant use of the veto as the public tests what information can be TEASED (96) OUT OF the Government's grasp.

Campaigners point out that the New Zealand act, which was studied by the DCA before the British Act was drawn up, originally had a ministerial veto to be USED (97) only in exceptional circumstances.

But after 14 vetoes in four years, it was AMENDED (98) to **INSIST (99) ON** collective agreement. That was 17 years ago and the veto has not been USED (100) again.

The Tories called the information commissioner, Richard Thomas, a "Government lap-dog" yesterday and **URGED (101)** him to consider QUITTING (102).

Mr Thomas had said there was "no hard evidence" that sensitive Government files were being SHREDDDED (103) before the new Act [CAME INTO FORCE] (α -ellipsis), but the Conservatives insisted thousands had been DESTROYED (104).

ASW0007T Telegraph 9-01-05 Iraq's election officials **RESIGN (105)** fearing reprisals
<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml?xml=/news/2005/01/02/wirq02.xml>

Last Updated: 12:05am GMT 02/01/2005

By Aqeel Hussein in Baghdad and Colin Freeman
 (Filed: 02/01/2005)

Majid Dawood felt justifiably happy as he toured Baghdad's al-Baya'a district delivering voter registration papers. He got no payment for the work, but the prospect of helping his neighbours to choose their political future for the first time was reward enough.

That, however, was before a paper dropped through his own letterbox just days later, offering a choice of much starker terms – QUIT (106) now, or be KILLED (107).

The election is only weeks away

"It said, 'The sword has BECOME (108-conceptual) very NEAR to your neck – LEAVE (109) any work that relates to the elections and STAY (110) safe,' " said Mr Dawood." Then it said, 'You ARE [BE] (111) FREE to make the choice yourself, but we have WARNED (112) you."

In Mr Dawood's case, the decision did not take long. After HANDING (113) the letter IN to his local police station, he then HANDED (114) his notice IN to local election officials. "I found many people have DONE (ii) like me, because they are afraid that we'll be KILLED (115)," he said.

Mr Dawood is among a growing number of election workers who are QUITTING (116) their posts after threats from insurgent's intent on **FORCING (117)** Iraq's January 30 poll into chaos.

As a member of one of the capital's new neighbourhood councils, he is no stranger to intimidation – such councillors have endured a year and a half of murders, threats and car bombs after being FINGERED (118) as "collaborators".

But three days after he QUIT (119) his job on December 17, any lingering doubts about whether he had made the right choice disappeared when four election workers were DRAGGED (120) from their car and **SHOT (121)** [DOWN] dead in broad daylight in Baghdad's Haifa Street district.

Horrifying images of the attack, which showed one of the men **KNEELING (122)** before being **MURDERED (123)**, were broadcast on television and served as a grim confirmation to any election officials still wondering whether the threats WERE [BE] (124) **REAL**.

Concern is now growing that an intensified campaign of intimidation over coming weeks could spectacularly **DERAIL (125)** Iraq's electoral commission's efforts to get enough of the country's 14 million adult population registered in time to give the vote credibility.

About 6,000 Iraqis have been trained in how to **CONDUCT (126)** elections, and 130,000 will **STAFF (127)** polling stations. But unlike in Afghanistan, where fears of Taliban and al-Qaeda plans to **DISRUPT (128)** October's elections proved largely unfounded, no one doubts the Iraqi insurgents' willingness or capability to **CARRY (129) OUT** their promises.

In many insurgent-dominated cities in the Sunni Triangle north of Baghdad, the threat of violence is already so great that neither election workers nor political parties have felt it safe to **OPERATE (130)**.

Last Monday, that prompted the Iraqi Islamic Party, a moderate and influential Sunni Muslim group, to **JOIN (131)** the already widespread Sunni boycott of the election, saying that the polls should not go ahead if people in their heartlands could not **VOTE (132)**.

A widespread boycott by Sunnis – who represent 30 per cent of the population – could **LEAD (133) TO** a government overwhelmingly **DOMINATED (134)** by Shi'ite muslim parties.

Iraqi officials admitted that nine election workers had so far been **KILLED (135)**, but were unable to say how many had **QUIT (136)** their jobs. However, it is feared that officials are reluctant to be completely frank on either figure for fear of frightening other workers.

The Telegraph has learnt, for example, that on December 17 – the same day that Mr Dawood received the threatening letter through his door, six other election workers were **KILLED (137)** in Baghdad's al-Yarmuk neighbourhood.

However, Dr Ayad Ayar, a spokesman for Iraq's electoral commission, revealed that he knew of the deaths only after a Sunday Telegraph reporter told him that they had been confirmed by al-Yarmuk's police chief.

Dr Ayar insisted that the killings would not **PREVENT (138)** the elections going ahead. "We'll never retreat from our main principle of **HOLDING (139)** an election to **BUILD (140)** a safe and free Iraq," he said.

In another case, Naser al-Obeidi, a Baghdad election worker, was **KILLED (141)** within three days after ignoring a written threat, according to his eldest son, Tahseen: "We begged our father to **LEAVE (142)** this work especially after we found the threats thrown in the garden. But he didn't agree."

On Friday, radical groups in Iraq **WARNED (143)** that voters could also expect violence. "Those who **PARTICIPATE (144-conceptual)** in this dirty farce will not be **SHELTERED (145)** from the blows of the mujahideen," said the al-Qaeda-linked Ansar al-Sunna group.

ASW0008T Telegraph 9-01-05 Prime Minister accused of 'obscene' power struggle
<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml?xml=/news/2005/01/03/nblair03.xml>

Last Updated: 1:01am GMT 03/01/2005

By Andrew Sparrow, Political Correspondent
 (Filed: 03/01/2005)

Tony Blair was accused of ENGAGING (146) IN an "obscene" power struggle with Gordon Brown yesterday after it emerged that he may CURB (147) the powers of his Chancellor of the Exchequer.

Downing Street is looking at plans for the Treasury's responsibilities for the financial services industry to be **TRANSFERRED (148)** to the Department for Trade and Industry.

Tony Blair: plans would STRIP (149) the Treasury of most of its powers
Sir Andrew Turnbull, the Cabinet Secretary, is said to be CHAIRING (150) a committee examining the proposal, which would not happen until after the general election.

Such a move would REDUCE (151) the standing of the Treasury – and Mr Brown, if he WERE [BE] (152) still CHANCELLOR at the time – in the eyes of the City.

There is also speculation in Whitehall that Mr Blair is considering a second reform that would **EMASCULATE (153)** the Treasury even more brutally.

According to a report in The Telegraph yesterday, Lord Birt, the former BBC director general who now ACTS (154) as an adviser to Mr Blair, is drawing up plans for the Cabinet Office to TAKE (155) OVER the job of OVERSEEING (156) spending on public services.

Under this proposal, the Treasury civil servants [who ARE] [BE] (157) **RESPONSIBLE** for MONITORING (158) departmental spending plans would MOVE (159) to the Cabinet Office, where Alan Milburn, one of Mr Brown's arch rivals, IS [BE] (160) currently IN CHARGE.

Such a radical reform would turn the Treasury into a department [that IS] [BE] (161) **RESPONSIBLE** for little more than taxation.

Yesterday a Downing Street spokesman said: "There is no truth in the suggestion that a recommendation to CUT (162) the size of the Treasury has been put forward."

A Treasury spokesman said: "We are not going to comment on Westminster rumours.

"No such proposals have yet been put to Treasury ministers."

But Liam Fox, the Conservative co-chairman, said the story demonstrated the extent of divisions at the heart of government.

"At a time of unfolding international crisis, Labour's fixation with their internal power struggle is bordering on the obscene," he said.

ASW0009T Telegraph 9-01-05 Two suicide bombers KILL (163) 20 Iraqis
<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml?xml=/news/2005/01/03/wirq03.xml>

Last Updated: 1:02am GMT 03/01/2005

By Jim Muir in Baghdad
(Filed: 03/01/2005)

Insurgents in Iraq yesterday DEALT (164) one of their deadliest blows yet to government forces meant to be SECURING (165) the country's controversial general elections, now less than four weeks away.

Iraqi men mourn for those KILLED (166) in the Balad suicide bombing. At least 20 people died, including 18 members of the Iraqi National Guard, when two suicide bombers DETONATED (167) a 4x4 vehicle packed with explosives alongside a busload of guardsmen in Balad, north of Baghdad.

The blast came as US military officials confirmed that several thousand more US troops have been SENT (168) to Mosul to SECURE (169) it for the Jan 30 elections which the insurgents are trying to SABOTAGE (170).

Iraq's third city, with a Sunni-majority population of around two million, Mosul is one of the main centres of insurgent activity and there is no sign of election campaigning going on there at all.

Every day, smaller numbers of police, national guards, municipal officials and drivers CONNECTED (171) with the government or the Americans are **ABDUCTED** (172) or **ASSASSINATED** (173).

The decapitated corpses of two lorry drivers were found in Baghdad at the weekend.

ASW0010T Telegraph 9-01-05 Family's fury as couple left to die in hit-and-run
<http://www.Telegraph.co.uk/news/main.jhtml?xml=/news/2005/01/03/nwhyn03.xml>

Last Updated: 1:01am GMT 03/01/2005

By Nigel Bunyan

The family of a couple left to die after a hit-and-run car accident voiced their anger at Britain's "lawless" society yesterday.

They said it was vital that the thieves who ran away while Pearl and Keith Whyne lay dying in their car were BROUGHT (174) to justice.

Pearl and Keith Whyne

The couple died on New Year's Eve when their Ford Fiesta was struck by a black Mercedes sports car speeding through Birmingham.

The collision happened three quarters of a mile from the City Hospital, Birmingham, where Mrs Whyne, 59, a nurse, was due to begin a night shift.

Her husband's car was shunted 10 feet down the street by the impact.

Police said the two occupants of the Mercedes, which had been stolen from a supermarket 20 minutes earlier, climbed out of the wreckage and unloaded belongings from the boot. They made no attempt either to go to their victims' aid or to call an ambulance.

Both Mrs Whyne and her husband, [who WAS] [BE] (175) a former SECURITY GUARD with the Royal Mail, died from internal injuries.

Yesterday one of the couple's nine children, Ken, told a press conference at West Midlands Police headquarters in Birmingham: "These people have to be BROUGHT (176) to justice. Ordinary people need to go back on the streets. The lawlessness has got to **STOP (177)**; it can't GO (178) ON any more."

Flanked by his sister, Rachel, and another brother, Tony, both 28, Mr Whyne, 43, went on: "We are here to talk about wasted lives. Our parents had a combination of 70 years service for the Post Office and the NHS.

"They served this community and brought up nine children, all of us [ARE] [BE] (179) LAW-ABIDING and clean-living. The whole thing has been wiped out in a matter of seconds by people who are so callous, with such scant disregard for life, that they walked away. People just need to TAKE (180) RESPONSIBILITY for what they do and for their actions."

Rachel said the family felt "shaken and destroyed". She added: "I am appealing to the two people who did this to do the right thing and HAND (181) themselves IN. "The Whynes, of Bordesley Green, Birmingham, had just spent Christmas with their children, their 15 grandchildren and three great-grandchildren.

They were turning off a busy dual carriageway when the Mercedes CLK slammed into the side of their car.

Mr Whyne was pronounced dead at the scene. His wife was taken to the hospital where she had worked since 1975. Colleagues tried in vain to save her life.

Appealing to the public to help FIND (182) the Mercedes driver and his accomplice, Ken Whyne said: "This could have been anybody. It was New Year's Eve; it could have been any one of your families out there.

"It has just devastated us. The whole situation is unbelievable and the chilling thing is this can happen to anybody at any time." Tony Whyne added: "We want justice. We want our parents to HAVE (183-idiom) JUSTICE because they were great people."

Sgt Paul Bennett, of West Midlands Police, described the two fugitives as "frankly, despicable".

He said: "By running away from the scene, and thus failing to help their victims, they had committed an act that was "callous beyond words".

ASW 0011B BBC 9-01-05 Bush 'will RE-ENGAGE (184) on Mid-East'
http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/uk_politics/4159381.stm

Last Updated: Sunday, 9 January, 2005, 14:35 GMT

Tony Blair recently met Israeli Prime Minister Ariel Sharon in Jerusalem
Tony Blair has predicted that George Bush will RE-ENGAGE (185) in Middle East peace efforts if the ground is PREPARED (186) for a viable Palestinian state.
 The US president was committed to SECURING (187) peace between Israel and the Palestinians, the prime minister said.

If Britain helped the Palestinians **DEVELOP (188)** the "basic infrastructure of a viable state", then President Bush would MAKE (189) it viable territorially.

The work would begin at a London-based peace conference in March, he said.

Security

However, the Israeli government has already said it will not be attending the summit.

"If we can GET (190-idiom) that conference successfully MOVING AHEAD and then the Israelis DISENGAGE (191) from part of the occupied territories, then I believe that President Bush will be willing in those circumstances to GET (192-conceptual) BACK INTO the roadmap and **GET (193) BACK INTO** the conferences that can LEAD (194) to a proper final status resolution," Mr Blair said.

Mr Blair has repeatedly highlighted the importance of RESOLVING (195) the Palestinian question to the security of the Middle East and the wider world.

He told BBC1's Breakfast With Frost: "In my view... a settlement of the Palestinian issues, democratic elections in Iraq, democracy in Afghanistan are central parts, not just of security out there in that part of the world, but security here in this country."

He said: "For the first time in a long time we have got the possibility of progress here.

Oslo

"We HAVE (196) GOT a new Israeli government that is COMMITTED (197) to **REINVIGORATING (198)** the peace process and we' VE (199) GOT a new Palestinian leadership that is COMMITTED (200) to the same thing."

The comments come as Palestinians head to the polls to **ELECT (201)** a successor to their deceased president Yasser Arafat.

Palestinian Liberation Organisation chairman Mahmoud Abbas IS [BE] (202-conceptual) THE FRONT-RUNNER in the race to **SUCCEED (203)** Mr Arafat.

He is widely considered to have been the main architect of the Oslo Peace Accord which came close to RESOLVING (204) the conflict in the early 1990s.

ASW0012B BBC 9-01-05 Brown in appeal for Labour unity
http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/uk_politics/4159657.stm

Last Updated: Sunday, 9 January, 2005, 17:24 GMT

Rumours of problems between the two men have been constant
Gordon Brown has made an appeal for unity after reports claimed Mr Blair went back on a pledge to STAND (205) DOWN before the next general election.
 The chancellor would not comment on the reports, but insisted he would not be "diverted or distracted" from TACKLING (206) the challenges faced by the country.

His only "motivation" was to ensure Labour was RE-ELECTED (207), he insisted.

Mr Blair earlier dismissed the claim he had reneged on a promise to STAND (208) ASIDE for Gordon Brown as old news.

According to a new book, Brown's Britain by Sunday Telegraph journalist Robert Peston, Mr Blair went back on a pledge to MAKE (209-idiom) WAY FOR Mr Brown after Cabinet allies INTERVENED (210) in June 2004.

In an interview with BBC One's Breakfast with Frost, Mr Blair said: "I've dealt with this six months ago. I said then you don't do deals over jobs like this - you don't.

My understanding is that they are not nearly as close or as friendly as they once were

Robert Peston

"What both of us are actually concentrating on are the issues that concern the country."

In a separate interview with BBC Political Editor Andrew Marr, Mr Brown said: "It's very important that we all do what we can in a unified way to ENSURE (211) the election of a Labour government.

"I think it is very important to stress that that is the motivation that I have.

"That is my purpose in politics, and that is what every day I seek to do. And I am not going to be diverted or distracted, nor is Tony Blair, by newspaper stories or books or rumours or gossip.

"The only reason why we ARE [BE] (212) IN GOVERNMENT is to GET (213) ON with the job in a unified way to DEAL (214) WITH the challenges facing this country."

Mr Brown also said he had discussed the general election campaign with the prime minister on Saturday and pledged to PLAY (215) his part as he had been asked to DO (iii).

When you GET (216) TO the top in politics you get this huge swell around you. All sorts of people make all sorts of claims and counter-claims

Tony Blair

But Mr Preston said the pair had "mutual animosity and contempt" for each other and that Mr Blair had decided in November 2003 he would QUIT (217) because he felt he had LOST (218) voters' trust because of the Iraq war.

But he then changed his mind in June 2004, following intervention from allies in the Cabinet and the suspicion that the chancellor was deliberately **MANOEUVRING (219)** against him, according to the book.

There has been fresh speculation of a rift recently, following their separate responses to the Asian tsunami.

These rumours were fuelled by Mr Blair's decision to HOLD (220) his monthly media conference at the same time as a long-planned speech by Mr Brown on UK plans to TACKLE (221) global poverty with a new "Marshall Plan" for Africa.

There was speculation the pair were trying to outdo each other's response to the disaster.

But the prime minister said he had discussed these claims with the chancellor and dismissed them as a "load of nonsense".

No denial

Tory leader Michael Howard accused the prime minister and Mr Brown of "squabbling like schoolboys".

Liberal Democrat parliamentary chairman Matthew Taylor said the personal ambition of Mr Blair and Mr Brown was "GETTING (222-idiom) IN THE WAY of good government".

BBC Political Correspondent Carole Walker said this was a "real attempt" to end what both men realised was a "damaging squabble".

But it was significant that neither man had denied the story, she said.

"They appear to be trying to demonstrate unity - let's see if it actually emerges."

ASW0013B BBC 11-01-2005 Guantanamo Britons [WILL BE] (223) FREE in weeks
<http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/uk/4163641.stm>

Last Updated: Tuesday, 11 January, 2005, 18:22 GMT

Almost 550 detainees from around 40 countries are HELD (224) at the base
 All four Britons HELD (225) by the US in Guantanamo Bay will be RETURNED (226)
 to the UK within weeks, Foreign Secretary Jack Straw told the Commons on Tuesday.
Moazzam Begg, from Birmingham, and Martin Mubanga, Richard Belmar and Feroz
Abbasi, from London, have been HELD (227) by the US for almost three years.

They were DETAINED (228) in the Cuban camp as part of the US-led "war on terror".

Mr Straw said the US had agreed to **RELEASE (229)** the four after "intensive and
 complex discussions" over security.

He said the government had been **NEGOTIATING (230)** the return of the detainees
 since 2003.

All four families have been informed of their return and have been involved in regular
 discussions with the government, Mr Straw said.

The detention of these men VIOLATED (231) all legal principle

Liberal Democrats foreign affairs spokesman Sir Menzies Campbell

A gesture from Bush to Blair?

But he added: "Once they are back in the UK, the police will consider whether to
ARREST (232) them under the Terrorism Act 2000 for **QUESTIONING (233)** in
 connection with possible terrorist activity."

The shadow foreign secretary, Michael Ancram, welcomed the return of the four
detainees.

But he said there were still "serious questions" both over the possible threat the four
 POSE (234) to the UK, and the treatment they RECEIVED (235) while DETAINED
 (236).

Liberal Democrats foreign affairs spokesman Sir Menzies Campbell said the four had
 been RESCUED (237) from a "legal no-man's land".

"Their civil rights were systematically and deliberately ABUSED (238) and they were
DENIED (239) due process."

I was SUBJECTED (240) to pernicious threats of torture, actual vindictive torture and
death threats

Moazzam Begg

Letter 'reveals torture'

Azmat Begg, father of Moazzam, thanked his lawyers and the British people for the support he had received while CAMPAIGNING (241) for his son's release.

He added: "If they have done something wrong, of course they should be **PUNISHED (242)**, but if they haven't, they shouldn't HAVE BEEN [BE] (243) THERE [Guantanamo Bay]."

Lawyer Louise Christian, who **REPRESENTS (244)** Mr Abbasi and Mr Mubanga, said the government should have **ACTED (245)** sooner.

She said: "They should at the outset have said quite clearly to the American government that they were BEHAVING (246) in breach of international law and that the British government wanted no part of it and wanted Guantanamo Bay SHUT (247) DOWN.

"They didn't DO (iv) that. They COLLUDED (248) with it."

Moazzam Begg's Labour MP Roger Godsiff welcomed his release, but said questions remained unanswered, particularly about charges.

Asked about possible damages Mr Begg and the other detainees could bring against the US, Mr Godsiff said: "People get **RELEASED (249)** from prison when it's found that their prosecution WAS [BE] (250) **UNSUSTAINABLE** and they are quite rightly awarded sizeable sums of money.

"I don't see any difference in this case."

Human rights campaigners have been outraged at the treatment of the detainees in Cuba.

Amnesty International has called Camp Delta a "major human-rights scandal" and an "icon of lawlessness".

Both Amnesty and the lobby group Guantanamo Human Rights Commission described the release as "long overdue".

Civil rights group Liberty said it was "delighted" but called on the government to **RELEASE (251)** men indefinitely **DETAINED (252)** in the UK without charge or trial.

Belmarsh call

Director Shami Chakrabarti called on the government to "PRACTISE (253) what it preaches" and either **FREE (254)** or **CHARGE (255)** 12 detainees at Belmarsh and Woodhill prisons.

Law Lords **RULED (256)** last month that the 12 were being **HELD (257)** in contravention of human rights laws but they **ARE [BE] (258-conceptual)** still **BEHIND BARS**.

The US has also announced that 48-year-old Australian Mamdouh Habib, previously ACCUSED (259) of terrorist offences, will be RELEASED (260) without charge from Camp Delta.

Five British detainees RELEASED (261) from Guantanamo in March last year were QUESTIONED (262) by UK police before being RELEASED (263) without charge.

ASW0014B BBC 11-01-2005 [There will BE] (264) 'NO ELECTION' for parts of Iraq
http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/middle_east/4166587.stm

Last Updated: Tuesday, 11 January, 2005, 22:04 GMT

Officers saw their colleagues **KILLED** (265) in Tikrit
Iraqi Prime Minister Iyad Allawi has admitted for the first time that violence will
PREVENT (266) some parts of Iraq **VOTING** (267) in this month's election.
 "There are some pockets that will not **PARTICIPATE** (268) in the election, but they are
 not large," he said.

He spoke on a day when at least 15 people were **KILLED** (269) across the country.

At least six police officers died in Tikrit, seven Iraqis were **KILLED** (270) in a roadside
attack south of Baghdad, and at least two died in a bomb in Samarra.

Iraq's interim government has announced it has set aside \$2.2bn of this year's budget to
STRENGTHEN (271) the security forces, who will **BE** [BE] (272) **RESPONSIBLE** for
MAINTAINING (273) order on polling day, 30 January.

'New weaponry'

Mr Allawi said it would fund an increase in the number of Iraqi troops from about
 100,000 to 150,000.

"We need to **EQUIP** (274) the police and army with the new modern weaponry that will
ENABLE (275) them to **PROTECT** (276) the country," he added.

INSURGENT VIOLENCE MOUNTS

11 Jan: 15 Iraqis **KILLED** (277) in separate attacks across the country

10 Jan: Baghdad deputy police chief and son **SHOT** (278) [DOWN] **DEAD**

7 Jan: Seven US soldiers **KILLED** (279) in Baghdad bomb attack

6 Jan: Bodies of 18 Iraqis contracted to work at US base found outside Mosul

5 Jan: At least 25 Iraqis **KILLED** (280) in three attacks in central Iraq

4 Jan: Governor of Baghdad, 14 Iraqis and five US soldiers **KILLED** (281) in separate
attacks

3 Jan: More than 20 people **KILLED** (282) across Iraq

2 Jan: At least 23 Iraqi soldiers **KILLED** (283) by a car bomb in Balad

The blast in Tikrit happened in the north of the town at about 0930 (0630 GMT), the US
military said. A dozen people were **WOUNDED** (284), police said.

The city, Saddam Hussein's home town - 165km (100 miles) north-west of Baghdad - is
 one of the centres of the Sunni insurgency in Iraq.

Seven people died in Yussifiya, 15km (9 miles) south of Baghdad.

According to one account, a roadside bomb missed a passing US military convoy and
 hit a passing minibus instead.

Another report said gunmen OPENED (285) FIRE on the vehicle.

Two Iraqis were KILLED (286) in an attack on a joint US-Iraqi patrol in the city of Samarra, about 95km (60 miles) north of Baghdad.

In other developments:

The United Nations refugee agency says only about 8,500 of 85,000 residents who have returned to the city of Falluja since a US assault last year, have chosen to stay in their homes

About 300 lorry drivers - mostly Syrians - are being DETAINED (287) by US forces in Iraq near the border with Syria. The US has made no comment, but has said in the past that Syria is not doing enough to **PROVIDE (288)** security on its border with Iraq.

ASW0015B BBC 12-01-2005 Abu Ghraib inmates recall torture
<http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/americas/4165627.stm>

Last Updated: Wednesday, 12 January, 2005, 01:53 GMT

Spc Charles Graner was ACCUSED (289) of BEING [BE] (290) 'primary TORTURER'
 Two Muslim detainees at Iraq's Abu Ghraib prison have told a court martial that they
 were TORTURED (291) and **HUMILIATED (292)** by a US soldier on trial for abuse.
 A Syrian witness described Specialist Charles Graner as Abu Ghraib's "primary
torturer", and said he was FORCE-FED (293) pork and alcohol, against Islamic law.

Another inmate, FORCED (294) to masturbate in public, said US troops TORTURED
 (295) Iraqis "like it was theatre for them".

Spc Graner, who denies all charges, FACES (296) up to 17 years in jail.

He is the first soldier to FACE (297) court martial over the images of prisoner abuse at
 the Baghdad jail that caused worldwide outrage.

Spc Graner denies charges of assault and conspiracy to MISTREAT (298) prisoners.

His court martial is being HELD (299) at a military base in Fort Hood, Texas.

'Laughing and whistling'

Hussein Mutar, an Iraqi **SENT (300)** to Abu Ghraib for stealing a car, was FORCED
 (301) to masturbate in public and PILED (302) onto a pyramid of naked men.

Mr Mutar, who struggled throughout his video testimony, compared his jailers to the
deposed Iraqi dictator Saddam Hussein.

ABU GHRAIB SCANDAL

[those who have been] **CONVICTED (303):**

Pte Jeremy Sivits

Sgt Ivan Frederick

Specialist Megan Ambuhl

[those who are] **FACING (304) trial:**

Pte Lynndie England

Specialist Charles Graner

Sgt Javal Davies

Specialist Sabrina Harman

"This changed the perspective on all Americans. [Even] Saddam did not do this to us,"
 he said.

"I couldn't believe in the beginning that this could happen, but I wished I could **KILL**
 (305) myself because no one was there to **STOP (306)** it.

"They were **TORTURING (307)** us as though it was theatre for them."

Syrian fighter Amin al-Sheikh, in a video deposition recorded last month in Iraq, admitted going to the country in 2003 to fight US-led forces, and being INVOLVED (308) in a shootout with guards at Abu Ghraib after being given a gun by an Iraqi guard.

After being INJURED (309) in the gun fight, he said, he was **TAKEN (310) BACK** to his cell, where Spc Graner **JUMPED (311)** on his wounded leg and HIT (312) his wounds with a metal baton.

He said the military policeman MADE (313) him eat pork and drink alcohol, VIOLATING (314) his religion, and MADE (315) him insult the Islamic faith.

He said a Yemeni detainee had told him that Spc Graner MADE (316) him "eat from the toilet".

Asked if the defendant appeared to enjoy ABUSING (317) prisoners, Mr Sheikh said: "He was laughing, he was whistling, he was singing."

'Face of the enemy'

The soldier's defence argues that the abuse was SANCTIONED (318) by his superiors, and defence lawyer Guy Womack said Mr Sheikh's testimony helped Spc Graner.

"It was the face of the enemy. It's very clear that he hates America," he said.

The defence is due to begin its case on Wednesday, when Spc Graner is scheduled to TESTIFY (319).

Three guards from Spc Graner's 372nd Military Police Company have PLEADED (320) **GUILTY** to abuse charges.

Three others, including Private Lynndie England, who also features in photos from Abu Ghraib and with whom Spc Graner has since had a child, are AWAITING (321) trial.

ASW0016B BBC 12-11-2004 Murder accused [man] 'lost the plot'
<http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/uk/4008521.stm>

Last Updated: Friday, 12 November, 2004, 22:54 GMT

Charlene and Latisha were KILLED (322) outside a salon in 2003
 A man CHARGED (323) with the murders of two teenaged girls "lost the plot" when [he was] **CONFRONTED (324)** by police with a piece of evidence, a court has been told.
 Nathan Martin snatched mobile phone packaging which allegedly linked him the killings, a jury at Leicester Crown Court heard on Friday.

Mr Martin is one of five men CHARGED (325) with KILLING (326) Charlene Ellis and Letisha Shakespeare in Birmingham last year.

All five deny the murder charges and three counts of attempted murder.

Some would say that, for a moment, it's an occasion that one of these defendants lost the plot

Timothy Raggatt QC
Prosecutor

Charlene and Letisha were KILLED (327) in a burst of gunfire outside the Uniseven hairdresser's salon, in Aston, Birmingham, in the early hours of 2 January 2003.

Charlene's twin sister Sophie and their cousin Cheryl Shaw were both INJURED (328) in the attack. Leon Harris was also **SHOT (329)** at [by a shooter], but escaped injury.

Mr Martin, Charlene's half-brother Marcus Ellis, 24, Michael Gregory, 22, Rodrigo Simms, 20, and a 22-year-old who cannot be named for legal reasons, were CHARGED (330) over the attack.

A sixth man, Jermaine Carty, is ACCUSED (331) of FIRING (332) BACK at the attackers. He denies two counts of POSSESSING (333) a firearm with intent.

Phone evidence

The court had previously heard the shootings WERE [BE] **(334) A "BOTCHED" ACT OF REVENGE** by one street gang on another.

Police **INTERVIEWED (335)** the suspects, including Mr Martin, on 11 November last year, having found mobile phone packaging on top of a wardrobe in his bedroom, the jury heard.

The court was told that phone could place him at the purchase of the car allegedly used in the shootings.

Timothy Raggatt QC, prosecuting, said Mr Martin snapped and GRABBED (336) the packaging from interviewing officers.

He told the jury: "For a significant moment, Mr Martin's guard dropped.

The mothers of the shot girls are attending the trial
"He GRABBED (337) the exhibit and the interview became disorderly. His solicitor had to RESTRICT (338) him because there was a real fear he may DO (v) something unfortunate to the exhibit itself.

"Some would say that, for a moment, it's an occasion that one of these defendants lost the plot. You may think not just what he said but his reaction to this confrontation is particularly telling.

'Calmed down'

"It got as such that the interview had to be broken off while everything calmed down.

"You will have to **JUDGE (339)** if that represents the actions of an innocent man who had nothing to do with these things," he told the jury.

The other five REFUSED (340) to answer questions during the interview, but all have denied involvement in the killings.

The trial CONTINUES (341).

ASW0017B BBC 11-01-2005 Frenchmen told of Iraq 'holy war'
<http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/world/europe/4164337.stm>

Last Updated: Tuesday, 11 January, 2005, 14:05 GMT

The journalists say they "tried to understand the logic of resistance"

The two French journalists RELEASED (342) by kidnappers in Iraq last month have told the BBC that their captors supported the goals of Osama Bin Laden.

"We realised they HAD (343) a jihadist [Islamic holy war] agenda," said one of the ex-hostages, Georges Malbrunot.

Speaking on the BBC's Hardtalk programme, he said one gunman had told him: "We have to BRING (344) the fight to Europe... ... we'RE [BE] (345) IN 60 COUNTRIES now".

They were HELD (346) by a group called the Islamic Army in Iraq (IAI).

'Dogs'

Mr Malbrunot's colleague, journalist Christian Chesnot, said one of the "ihadists" had told them that the IAI was "very close" to al-Qaeda leader Osama Bin Laden.

There WAS [BE] (347) a "**DIVISION OF THE WORK**" between the IAI and other insurgent groups, including that LED (348) by Islamic militant Abu Musab al-Zarqawi, the militant was quoted as saying. Zarqawi's al-Qaeda-linked group has CLAIMED (349) responsibility for many bombings and hostage killings in Iraq. It would be crazy for us to go back to Iraq

Georges Malbrunot

Video: Ex-hostages' interview

Boost for French pride

"When Zarqawi is in danger we SEND (350) some troops [to help him]," the militant continued, adding that the IAI's aim was to OVERTHROW (351) the rulers of Egypt and Saudi Arabia.

Mr Chesnot, 37, and Mr Malbrunot, 41, were ABDUCTED (352) in August while driving to the city of Najaf with their Syrian driver, Mohammed al-Jundi, who was later found during the US-led assault on Falluja.

The former hostages said they believed their French nationality had SAVED (353) their lives.

"You ARE [BE] (354-conceptual) A POLITICAL CARD," they were told.

When they asked the kidnappers how they treated US or British hostages they were told: "They are dogs, we KILL (355) them".

Mr Malbrunot said he thought the kidnappers were Iraqis, but "some, they told us, were from Yemen, Saudi Arabia".

'Deal' suspicions

The former hostages said the kidnappers were happy that US troops WERE [BE] (356) IN AFGHANISTAN AND IRAQ because that gave the ihadists an opportunity to FIGHT (357) them.

The French journalists said they had both feared for their lives at times.

French officials have denied that a ransom was paid.

Mr Malbrunot said simply "we guess there was a deal".

But he admitted France had not MADE (358) concessions on three issues that the kidnappers had **VOICED (359)** opposition to: the ban on Muslim headscarves in French schools, France's military contingent in Afghanistan and France's position on Darfur.

Explaining how they had survived their ordeal, Mr Chesnot said it had been "extremely helpful to be together".

"We spoke Arabic with the kidnappers," he added, saying that that had improved communication.

ASW0018B BBC 16-01-2005 BBC Shah of Iran FLEES (360) into exile 1979:
http://news.bbc.co.uk/onthisday/hi/dates/stories/january/16/newsid_2530000/2530475.stm

The Shah of Iran has FLED (361) the country following months of increasingly violent protests against his regime.

Shah Mohammed Reza Pahlevi and his wife, Empress Farah, LEFT (362) Tehran and FLEW (363) to Aswan in Egypt.

The couple's three youngest children were flown to the United States yesterday.

Official reports say the Shah has LEFT (364) for a "vacation" and medical treatment. In fact, he was ASKED (365) to LEAVE (366) by the man he APPOINTED (367) prime minister earlier this month.

Over the past few months, there HAVE BEEN [BE] (368) an increasing number of VIOLENT CLASHES between security forces and anti-Shah demonstrators.

Opposition to the Shah has BECOME (369) united behind the Muslim traditionalist movement LED (370) by Iran's main spiritual leader, Ayatollah Ruholla Khomeini, from exile in France.

Celebrations

There have been calls for the Ayatollah's return - and news of the Shah's departure was greeted with mass celebrations across Iran.

British and United States' ex-patriates living in Iran - regarded as symbols of westernization - have been the frequent target of attacks. Thousands have left the country.

Martial law was DECLARED (371) in many cities on 8 September. But later that month, industrial action by thousands of Iranian workers CULMINATED (372) in a mass strike by employees in the oil industry.

The strike SPARKED (373) riots and rallies across the country in support of the Ayatollah.

Western governments, like the US, UK and West Germany, have continued to EXPRESS (374) support for the Shah.

The Shah APPOINTED (375) a new military government in early November. But it FAILED (376) to STEM (377-conceptual) the rising tide of support for the Ayatollah.

Earlier this month he APPOINTED (378) a new prime minister, Dr Shapur Bahktiar. When, on 13 January, the Ayatollah DECLARED (379) a revolutionary Islamic council to REPLACE (380) what he called the "illegal government" of Iran, Dr Bahktiar PERSUADED (381) the Shah it was time to LEAVE (382).

Your Memories?

Write your account of the events.

The Shah and his wife FLEW (383) to Egypt

Simon Dring on the celebrations in Iran following the Shah's departure

Tim Llewellyn "[It WAS] [BE] (384-conceptual) One of the most significant ROYAL EXITS in history"

In Context

The Shah never RETURNED (385) to Iran. He died in exile in Egypt in 1980. Ayatollah Khomeini RETURNED (386) to Iran on 1 February after 14-years exile in France.

He THREW (387) OUT Dr Bahktiar's government on 11 February and, after a referendum, DECLARED (388) an Islamic Republic on 1 April.

Khomeini GUIDED (389) his country's revolutionary social, legal, and political development until his death in 1989.

He **PRESIDED (390) OVER** the country during the Iran/Iraq war only reluctantly agreeing a ceasefire.

He also ISSUED (391) the fatwa against the British author Salman Rushdie.

Ayatollah Khomeini's death LED (392) to the outbreak of a power struggle within the regime, which was ultimately WON (393) by the moderate, Akbar Hashemi Rafsanjani.

ASW0019B BBC 16-01-2005 ON THIS DAY 1970 Gaddafi **TAKES (394) OVER** as Libya's premier
http://news.bbc.co.uk/onthisday/hi/dates/stories/january/16/newsid_3359000/3359461.stm

Last Updated: Saturday, 15 January, 2005, 23:42 GMT

Colonel Muammar Gaddafi has **TAKEN (395)** direct control of Libya four months after a bloodless coup that **BROUGHT (396)** an end to the monarchy under King Idris. Since the military coup of 1 September **LED (397)** by Gaddafi's "Free Unionist Officers", the country has been **RUN (398)** by civilian ministers.

But they were **OBLIGED (399)** to **REFER (400) TO** the so-called Revolutionary Command Council on matters of state and twice threatened to **RESIGN (401)**.

Now the 28-year-old colonel has **TAKEN (402)** the title of prime minister and **APPOINTED (403)** four members of his council to his new 12-member Cabinet.

British bases **FORCED (404)** to **CLOSE (405)**.

Last month Col Gaddafi **THWARTED (406)** an attempted coup by his Defence and Interior Ministers and **TOOK (407)** charge of the main ministries single-handedly.

Now he can **DELEGATE (408)** to ministers he feels he can trust.

An outspoken Arab nationalist, Col Gaddafi **SET (409) ABOUT FREEING (410)** Libya from what he regards as colonialism by **ORDERING (411)** Britain to **ABANDON (412)** its military bases in the country.

But in an exclusive interview with the Times newspaper, he denied that defence contracts with the West would be **TERMINATED (413)** and said Libya was still interested in buying nearly 200 British Chieftain tanks.

However he would not be **DRAWN (414) ON** whether they would be **SENT (415)** to the Egyptian border - along with 50 Mirage aircraft already **ORDERED (416)** - to be **USED (417)** against Israel.

"Until now there has not been any decision that war is to be the only solution to the Middle East conflict," he said. "Therefore since this question has not arisen yet, there is no need to answer it."

Egypt's President Abdel Nasser has been a great influence on the new leader and he has already **STRENGTHENED (418)** ties with his Arab neighbour.

He and his young followers have expressed his hope for a future where all Arab nations would be **UNITED (419)** under Islam.

Soon after the coup [TOOK PLACE] (β-ellipsis), he **BEGAN (420)** a process of Libyanisation" of commerce and industry. Non-Libyans were **FORCED (421)** out of

influential positions and even Latin characters were removed from street signs in the capital, Tripoli, and in Benghazi.

This has had a damaging effect on the economy with skilled expatriates FORCED (422) to leave the country to look for work elsewhere.

However Libya's oil industry continues to thrive and she **REMAINS (423)** the fourth largest oil producer in the world.

Col Gaddafi BROUGHT (424) an end to the monarchy in a coup last September

BBC's Bernard Falk visits Libya for the first time since Gaddafi CAME (425) to power

In Context

Col Gaddafi made a name for himself as one of the world's most unpredictable and autocratic heads of state.

His vision of a socialist Islamic Libya LED (426) to the nationalisation of all businesses and expulsion of foreigners in his one-party state.

For decades Col Gaddafi tried to portray himself as leader of the Arab world, but after attempts to JOIN (427) forces with Egypt, Tunisia and Syria FAILED (428) he TOOK (429) UP a mission of uniting Africa.

He has supported various militant groups including the IRA and the Palestine Liberation Organisation. Alleged Libyan involvement in attacks in Europe in 1986 LED (430) to US military strikes against Tripoli.

In 1988 Libya was ISOLATED (431) by much of the international community after the bombing of a Pan Am plane above the Scottish town of Lockerbie. But it formally accepted blame for the incident in August 2003.

The move, part of a deal to compensate families of the 270 victims, PAVED (432-idiom) THE WAY for the lifting of UN sanctions.

In December 2003, Libya announced it would abandon its attempts to DEVELOP (433) weapons of mass destruction.

ASW0020B BBC 15-01-2005 Americas Colombia 'ready to END (434) crisis'
<http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/americas/4178389.stm>

Last Updated: Saturday, 15 January, 2005, 23:42 GMT

Chavez has **DEMANDED (435)** an apology from Uribe
Colombia's president is ready to meet his Venezuelan counterpart to try to END (436) a
diplomatic row between the two countries, an aide has said.
Venezuela **FROZE (437)** diplomatic and trade links with Colombia on Friday, after
Colombia **HIRED (438)** mercenaries to **CAPTURE (439)** a guerrilla chief on
Venezuelan soil.

Venezuela accused Colombia of **VIOLATING (440)** its national sovereignty.

An aide to President Alvaro Uribe said the Colombian leader would discuss the crisis at
a regional summit.

President Uribe "is willing to discuss the subject with [Venezuelan] President [Hugo]
Chavez face-to-face," Ricardo Galan told the AP news agency.

He said Mr Uribe wanted the meeting to be held in public and in front of other
presidents.

Venezuela said business dealings with Bogota will be **FROZEN (441)** until it has
apologised for the kidnap of Rodrigo Granda, [who IS] [BE] (442) A COMMANDER in
Colombia's largest left-wing rebel group, the Revolutionary Armed Forces of Colombia
(Farc).

Colombia paid mercenaries to **CAPTURE (443)** Granda
President Chavez told parliament on Friday that he had "**ORDERED (444)** all
agreements and business with Colombia to be **PARALYSED (445)**".

He said a \$200m natural gas pipeline project between the two countries would be
SUSPENDED (446).

The two countries **AGREED (447)** last year to start work on the pipeline, which would
eventually allow Venezuelan fuel access to the Pacific coast and to markets in Asia and
the western US.

Oil-producing Venezuela is Colombia's second-largest export market.

Bounty hunters

On Thursday, Venezuela **WITHDREW (448)** its ambassador from Bogota - a gesture
not **RECIPROCATED (449)** by Colombia.

Colombian Vice-President Francisco Santos said earlier on Friday that relations with
Venezuela remained "very good".

He also DEFENDED (450) the operation that LED (451) to the capture of Mr Granda, who **APPEARED (452)** in Colombian custody in December after DISAPPEARING (453) from the Venezuelan capital, Caracas.

Colombia initially denied claims it had ABDUCTED (454) him from foreign soil but later admitted paying bounty hunters to SECURE (455) his capture.

APPENDIX 2 List of contents of the Telegraph newsreports

Telegraph corpus. The first 10 Telegraph newsreports downloaded.		
File name	Numbering of predicators	Original name, showing content of each newsreport
ASW0001T	1 - 14	Telegraph 04-01-2005 Howard vows to back workers failed by Labour
ASW0002T	15 - 38	Telegraph 05-01-2005 Howard vows to remain leader even if the Conservatives lose
ASW0003T	39 - 56	Telegraph 9-01-05 Blair plots to smash Brown's Treasury powerbase Jan 9th 2005
ASW0004T	57 - 76	Telegraph 9-01-05 Palestinians go to the polls to choose Arafats successor
ASW0005T	77 - 79	Telegraph 9-01-05 Man wanted for student's murder found dead
ASW0006T	80 - 104	Telegraph 9-01-05 Falconer insists there will be safeguards on secrecy veto
ASW0007T	105 - 145	Telegraph 9-01-05 Iraq's election officials resign fearing reprisals
ASW0008T	146 - 162	Telegraph 9-01-05 Prime Minister accused of 'obscene' power struggle
ASW0009T	163 - 173	Telegraph 9-01-05 Two suicide bombers kill 20 Iraqis
ASW0010T	174 - 183	Telegraph 9-01-05 Family's fury as couple left to die in hit-and-run

APPENDIX 3 List of contents of the BBC newsreports

BBC corpus. The first 10 BBC newsreports downloaded.		
File name	Numbering of predicators	Original name, showing content of each newsreport
ASW0011B	184 - 204	BBC 9-01-05 Bush 'will re-engage on Mid-East'
ASW0012B	205 - 222	BBC 9-01-05 Brown in appeal for Labour unity
ASW0013B	223 - 263	BBC 11-01-2005 Guantanamo Britons free in weeks
ASW0014B	264 - 288	BBC 11-01-2005 'No election' for parts of Iraq
ASW0015B	289 - 321	BBC 12-01-2005 Abu Ghraib inmates recall torture
ASW0016B	322 - 341	BBC 12-11-2004 Murder accused 'lost the plot'
ASW0017B	342 - 359	BBC 11-01-2005 Frenchmen told of Iraq 'holy war'
ASW0018B	360 - 393	BBC 16-01-2005 1979 Shah of Iran flees into exile
ASW0019B	394 - 433	BBC 16-01-2005 ON THIS DAY 1970 Gaddafi takes over as Libya's premier
ASW0020B	434 - 455	BBC 15-01-2005 Americas Colombia 'ready to end crisis'

APPENDIX 4 Semantic-pragmatic analysis

of the newsreport: London beats Paris to 2012 Games

Colour code for the semantic roles:

(Agt) (Obj) (Exp) (Ben) (qBen) (Loc) (Tim) (Com) (Hol)

http://news.bbc.co.uk/sport1/hi/front_page/4655555.stm

Last Updated: Wednesday, 6 July, 2005, 11:49 GMT 12:49 UK

London (Ben) BEATS Paris (Obj) to 2012 Games / Live Olympics reporters' log. /

The 2012 Olympic Games (Obj) will be HELD in London (Loc), (Agt-del), /

2a) the International Olympic Committee (Agt) has ANNOUNCED (Exp-del), (Obj-del). /

3) London (Ben) WON a two-way fight with Paris (Obj) by 54 votes to 50 at the IOC meeting in Singapore, / 3a) after bids from Moscow, New York and Madrid (qBen),

(Obj-del) were ELIMINATED (Agt-del). /

Paris (Obj) had BEEN favourite (Obj) throughout the campaign but / 4a) London's hopes

(Exp) were RAISED (Agt-del) (Obj-del) / 4b) after an impressive presentation [GIVEN]

(Obj) by Lord Coe (Agt), the bid chairman (Exp-del).

Prime Minister Tony Blair (Agt = Exp) CALLED the win "a momentous day" (Obj) for Britain /

IOC president Jacques Rogge (Agt) MADE the dramatic announcement (Obj) (Exp-del)

at 1249 BST. /

It (Obj) will BE the first time (Tim) / 7a) the Olympics (Obj) has been HELD in Britain

(Loc) since 1948 (Agt-del). /

Coe (Agt) SAID (Exp-del): "This is just the most fantastic opportunity to do everything

we ever dreamed of in British sport" (Obj). / 8a) "This (Obj_s) IS just the most fantastic

opportunity (Obj_s) / 8b) (Agt-del) to DO everything we ever dreamed of in British sport
(Obj) /

8c) we (Exp) ever DREAMED OF (Obj-del) in British sport /
HOW VOTE (Obj) UNFOLDED /

9a) Round 1: Moscow (qBen) out / 9b) Round 2: New York (qBen) out; /

10) Madrid (Ben) LEAD in tight poll /

10a) Round 3: Madrid (qBen) out / 10b) Round 4: London (Ben) 54-50 Paris
(Obj) /

After the announcement, it (Obj) EMERGED (Exp-del) London were ahead in every
round of voting except the second round when Madrid polled the most votes (Obj). /

11a) London (Ben) WERE ahead (Obj-del) in every round of voting except the second
round / 11b) when Madrid (Ben) POLLED the most votes (Obj). /

News of London's victory (Agt = Obj) DELIGHTED flag-waving supporters (Exp)

12a) who (Agt = Obj) had GATHERED (Com -del) in Trafalgar Square. / 13) But
raindrops (Obj) began FALLING on disappointed Parisians (Exp) outside the Hotel de
Ville in the French capital shortly after the result. /

This (Obj_s) IS how the decision was made by the IOC (Obj_s) in Singapore on
Wednesday: /

14a) how the decision (Obj) was MADE by the IOC (Agt = Exp) ... /

14b) All five bidding cities (Agt) GAVE final 45-minute presentations (Obj) to the IOC
members (Exp) / 14c) before the vote (Obj) BEGAN. / 15) The electronic ballot (Obj)
STARTED at 1126 BST (Tim). / 15a) Moscow, New York and Madrid (qBen-pass) were

ELIMINATED from the race (Obj) (Agt-del) in the first, second and third rounds of voting. / The final round of voting (Obj) FINISHED at about 1145 BST (Tim), / 16a) with the Committee (Agt = Obj) RECONVENING (Com-del) at 1230 BST for the official announcement. / 17) IOC president Jacques Rogge (Agt) REVEALED the winner (Obj) (Exp-del) after a nerve-wracking wait at 1249 BST. /

Wednesday's decision (Agt) BRINGS to an end (Obj) the 18-month race (Obj) / 18a) (Agt = Ben-del) to WIN the host contract (Obj) for the 2012 Games. / 19) And it (Obj) WAS the most keenly-fought bidding contest (Obj) in recent years /

Paris (Obj-pass) was CONSIDERED the front-runner (Obj) for much of the campaign (Exp-del), and was highly rated in the initial evaluation and also by the inspectors after their visits earlier in the year. /

20a) Paris (Obj-pass) ... and was highly RATED in the initial evaluation (Agt = Exp-del) and also / 20b) Paris (Obj-pass) ... was highly RATED by the inspectors (Agt = Exp) after their visits earlier in the year. /

But it (Obj-pass) was widely RECOGNISED (Exp-del) that bid leader Lord Coe, a high-profile personality within the IOC and other governing bodies, hauled London closer to the French capital as the vote approached (Obj)

21a) bid leader Lord Coe, (Agt) a high-profile personality within the IOC and other governing bodies, HAULED London (Ben) closer to the French capital (Obj) / as 21b) the vote [=voting time] (Tim) APPROACHED. /

Madrid (Obj-pass) was SEEN as a consistent but not outstanding candidate (Obj) (Exp-del), / 22a) while New York's bid (Obj) was DOGGED by problems (Agt) over their

proposed stadium, and / 22a) Moscow (Obj-pass) was always SEEN as the rank outsider (Obj), (Exp-del).

Once attention (Obj), (Exp-del) MOVED to Singapore (Obj), / 23a) the bidding cities (Agt) CALLED ON political and sporting heavyweights (Exp), (Obj-del) / 23b) to CHAMPION (Agt-del), (Obj-lex) their causes (Ben). / 24) And the spotlight (Obj), (E-del) inevitably FOCUSED on Paris and London (Obj) / in the days (Obj) LEADING UP TO the vote [=voting time] (Tim) /

The two cities (Ben) HAD President Chirac and Prime Minister Blair (Obj) respectively in their corners

Mr Chirac (Agt) actually TOOK PART in the French capital's final presentation (Obj), (Exp-del) on Wednesday, / 26a) while Mr Blair (Agt = Exp) OPTED to lobby alongside the London bid team in Singapore before flying back to Britain to host the G8 summit (Obj). / 26b) (*Mr Blair*) (Agt-del) to LOBBY (Exp-del), (Obj-del) [for the choice] alongside the London bid team in Singapore / 26c) before (Agt = Obj-del) FLYING BACK to Britain (Loc) / 26d) to HOST (Agt = Com-del) the G8 summit (Obj). /

London (Agt) also CALLED ON England captain David Beckham and a galaxy of Olympic and Paralympic medallists (Exp) as ambassadors (Obj), / 27a) while footballers Laurent Blanc and Zinedine Zidane (Obj) WERE among those backing the Paris bid (Hol), /

27b) *those* (Agt-del) BACKING the Paris bid (Ben).

APPENDIX 5 COBUILD concordance lines for 'is power'

darkest power there is. **Power from the Void...**" Please...
 really want to do is show that **age is power**. It's like having a rank on
 comes from emotion. Their **ambition is power**. Nobody but Mr Hurd is
 Charismatic **authority is power** based on devotion inspired
 of Paglia's core belief: **Beauty is Power**. Paglia pauses, a rarity for her
 periphery of my vision: **Celibacy is power**." An agoraphobe, a depressive,
 for bringing about **social control is power**, a central feature of most
 proposing that the key dimension is power, specifically **power of decision**
 their hands and in tennis, **elitism is power**. The power struggles continue.
 is encountered also in **Faith Is Power** by the Reverend Dr. Daniel A.
 certain goals. You realise **fame is power**, and can be abused. But it does
 And food is a weapon; **food is power** and food is wealth. It's all there
Where famine reigns, food is power. Its distribution is job number
 forgiveness of sins. This **gospel is power** (Rom. 1:16). As an instrument of
 in a careful way. In a way, **grain is power** in the Soviet Union. If you are
 In Baidoa, where food or **the gun is power**, aid workers drive food aid convoys
 and he himself says that **'honesty is power'**. The key to his success is his
 firm beliefs at all # **His ideology is power**. He has no nationalist or communist
 Inside Eastern Europe: **IMF is power behind throne** of former eastern
 a chance to show that **influence is power**". But Mr Johnson has already
 up in a society where **information is power** and secrecy is a way of life. But
Bacon's assertion that **knowledge is power**. He himself embodied the life of
Barrow wrote (1846:20 # **Knowledge is Power**." To the contemporary observer,
 Robin Tolmach **Lakoff Language is power; and those who control it rule**.
Mute power is impossible. Language is power. Language alone. EIGHT days to
Knowledge of foreign languages is power in international markets." It
 And power over **access to a medium is power over the medium itself**. That is
 where much is at stake. **Money is power**. Russia has half the Soviet Union's
 And Venetian women, coos: **'Passion is power'**. Unless you desperately want
 As always, however, **patience is power** and steady, patient and persevering
 different ways. **Positional power is power** that officially stems from the
power. But the other **protagonist is power** itself. I wanted people to think
 should gain by **seeing a psychic is power over oneself**, and a sense of
 constantly discovered, **reputation is power**. Four years ago, England went to
 employed?" **Knowledge-Sharing Is Power** Over the years, people have
 services. The Government's slogan is **'power to the professionals'**,
 Smith and the theme of the speech is **Power to the people**. I'm not sure what
 of Justice); the **Holy Spirit is Power** Morpher (the magical coin that
 of the Church of England. If there is **power in the Church** it is to be found in
 is tangible proof that there is **power to be found in prayer** partnership.
 his left-wing politics, like There is **Power in a Union, Ideology and Which Side**
 have a similar effect. There is **power in our thoughts**. We create our own
 madman and an effective tyrant is **power and will**. Ellel's vision of herself
 methods that many **parents use is power assertion**, consisting of punitive
 being as important as land. **'Water is power here'**," he says. Nowadays some
 expediency". He observes: **'Wealth is power. Super-wealth is super-power**.
 censorship of information -- which is power itself. The theft of artifacts,
 any leader who **is power** for eleven and a half years does
 the **temptation of power**, the own, and it is politics

APPENDIX 6 Letter to the Editor of BBC

3, Monarch House,
314, Pound Rd,
Oldbury,
West Midlands,
B68 8NQ,
England

The Chief Editor,
BBC Online,
Room E400,
BBC TV Centre,
Wood Lane,
London, W12 7RJ.

13th September, 2005

Dear Chief Editor,

I am a PhD student at UFSC, the Federal University of Santa Catarina, a southern state in Brazil and an active member of NUPdiscurso, a registered research group there. At present I am in the UK as a visiting research fellow at Birmingham University, made possible by a grant provided by CAPES – Coordenação de Aperfeiçoamento de Pessoal de Nível Superior, the Ministry of Education, Brazil. My research is investigating linguistic marks of power at the clause level. My corpus is taken from online newsreports on war, politics and law enforcement. As my supervisor took his PhD in Georgetown I originally collected data from the Washington Post online. However, as I am now in England I have collected the rest of my data from, in alphabetical order, BBC online and the Telegraph online. I am now writing to the Chief Editor of the three primary sources of my data and would like to ask you sir/ madam, as one of the representatives, for permission to make reference to and submit information downloaded from your site as part of my PhD dissertation. Secondly, I request permission to use the same data in any publications that might be accepted in the future. I shall be very grateful for your written permission.

If you would be interested in knowing more about my work I am more than willing to send you an abstract. I have enclosed a stamped addressed envelope for your convenience.

Thank you so much for your attention,

yours,

Alyson Steele Weickert.

Mrs. Alyson E. R. Steele G. Weickert.
Email: alysonsgw@gmail.com

Similar letters were sent to:

Richard Preston - News Editor
Press Office
Telegraph Group Limited
1 Canada Square
Canary Wharf
London E14 5DT

Mr. Eric Grant,
Director of Public Relations and Contributions,
The Washington Post
1150 15th Street, NW
Washington, DC 20071
202.334.6000

APPENDIX 7 Eight patterns of semantic representations

reinvigorate	[----- *Agt, *pBen, *Obj / Agt=pBen-del, Obj-lex]	{Exp→pBen}
	1	
question	[----- *Agt, *pBen, *Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del, Obj-del]	{Exp→pBen}
	1	
abduct	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
arrest	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
assassinate	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
build	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Basic→pBen}
capture	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
carry out	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Exp→pBen}
conduct	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
convict	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
declare	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Exp→pBen}
express	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Exp→pBen}
free	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
insist on	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
judge	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
punish	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
rein in	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
release	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
shoot down	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
shrine	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Loc→pBen}
shut down	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Basic→pBen}
stand up for	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
win	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Ben→pBen}
	21	
deny	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Exp→pBen}
force	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
hold up	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Ben→pBen}
prevent	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{pBen}
provide	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Ben→pBen}
take back	[----- *Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{Loc→pBen}
	6	
resign	[----- *Agt, *pBen _{neg} , *Obj / Agt=pBen _{neg} , Obj-del]	{pBen _{neg} }
	1	
curb	[----- *Agt, *pBen _{neg} , Obj / Agt-del, pBen _{neg} -del]	{pBen _{neg} }
	1	
abolish	[----- *Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=pBen-del]	{qpBen}
	1	
be wanted for	[----- *Agt, *qpBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=qpBen-del]	{qpBen}
	1	
send	[----- *Agt, pBen, *Obj / Agt-del, Obj-del]	{Loc→pBen}
stand aside	[----- *Agt, pBen, *Obj / Agt-del, Obj-del]	{Loc→pBen}
	2	
strengthen	[----- *Agt, pBen, *Obj / Agt-del, Obj-lex]	{Basic→pBen}
	1	
elect	[----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del]	{pBen}
equip	[----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del]	{Ben→pBen}
move	[----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del]	{Loc→pBen}
transfer	[----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del]	{Loc→pBen}

refer to	[----- *Agt, pBen, Obj / Agt-del]	{Exp→pBen}
	5	
dismantle	[----- *Agt, pBen _{neg} , Obj / Agt-del]	{Hol→pBen _{neg} }
	1	
act	[----- Agt, *pBen / Agt=pBen]	{Basic→pBen}
stop	[----- Agt, *pBen / Agt=pBen]	{Basic→pBen}
	2	
carry on	[----- Agt, *pBen, *Obj / Agt=pBen, Obj-del]	{Basic→pBen}
quit	[----- Agt, *pBen, *Obj / Agt=pBen, Obj-del]	{Ben→pBen}
	2	
decide	[----- Agt, *pBen, *Obj / Agt=pBen, Obj-lex]	{Exp→pBen}
	1	
kneel	[----- Agt, *pBen, *Obj / pBen-del, Obj-lex]	{Loc→pBen}
	1	
begin	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{Basic→pBen}
deal with	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{Exp→pBen}
demand	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{pBen}
humiliate	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{pBen}
interview	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{Exp→pBen}
jump	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{Loc→pBen}
take over	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{pBen}
tax	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{pBen}
thwart	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{pBen}
develop	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{Basic→pBen}
freeze	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{Basic→pBen}
veto	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{pBen}
vote	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{Ben→pBen}
	13	
negotiate	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj / pBen-del]	{Exp→pBen}
	1	
ask	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{Exp→pBen}
persuade	[----- Agt, *pBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{Exp→pBen}
	2	
leave	[----- Agt, *pBen _{neg} , *Obj / Agt=pBen _{neg} , Obj-del]	{Loc→pBen _{neg} }
	1	
fly	[----- Agt, *pBen _{neg} , Obj / Agt=pBen _{neg}]	{Loc→pBen _{neg} }
	1	
confront	[----- Agt, *qpBen, *Obj, Obj / Agt=qpBen, Obj-del]	{qpBen}
	1	
threaten	[----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=pBen]	{qpBen}
	1	
shoot	[----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=qpBen, Obj-del]	{qpBen}
	1	
boycott	[----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=qpBen]	{qpBen}
fight	[----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=qpBen]	{qpBen}
get back into	[----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj / Agt=qpBen]	{Basic→qpBen}
	3	
fire	[----- Agt, *qpBen, Obj, Obj / Agt=qpBen]	{Basic→qpBen}
	1	
respect	[----- Agt, pBen, *Obj / Obj-lex]	{Exp→pBen}
	1	
urge	[----- Agt, pBen, Obj]	{Exp→qpBen}

	1	
emasculate	[----- Agt, pBen _{neg} , *Obj / Obj-lex]	{pBen _{neg} }
	1	
manoeuvre	[----- Agt, qpBen, *Obj / Obj-del]	{Loc→qpBen}
	1	
voice	[----- Agt, qpBen, Obj]	{Exp→qpBen}
	1	
lead to	[----- Agt, qpBen]	{Basic→qpBen}
move towards	[----- Agt, qpBen]	{Exp→qpBen}
	2	
appear	[----- Obj, pBen]	{Loc→pBen}
	1	
be under house arrest	[-----Obj _s , *pBen / pBen-del]	{pBen}
	1	
be (an act of) revenge	[-----Obj _s , pBen]	{pBen}
	1	
come	[----- pBen, Obj]	{Loc→pBen}
succeed	[----- pBen, Obj]	{pBen}
remain	[----- pBen, Obj]	{Loc→pBen}
	3	
be a monitor	[----- pBen, Obj _s , Obj _s]	{pBen}
	1	
be a "division of work"	[----- pBen, Obj _s]	{Basic→pBen}
head	[----- pBen, Obj _s]	{pBen}
in charge of	[----- pBen, Obj _s]	{pBen}
preside over	[----- pBen, Obj _s]	{pBen}
represent	[----- pBen, Obj _s]	{Basic→pBen}
be responsible for	[----- pBen, Obj _s]	{pBen}
be under	[----- pBen, Obj _s]	{Loc→pBen}
hold	[----- pBen, Obj _s]	{Ben→pBen}
	8	
be unsustainable	[----- pBen]	{Basic→pBen}
	1	
fail	[----- pBen _{neg} , Obj]	{Ben _{neg} →pBen _{neg} }
lose	[----- pBen _{neg} , Obj]	{Ben _{neg} →pBen _{neg} }
	2	
be real	[----- qpBen, * Obj _s / Obj _s -del]	{Basic→qpBen}
	1	
achieve	[----- qpBen, Obj]	{Ben→qpBen}
	1	
	100	